



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

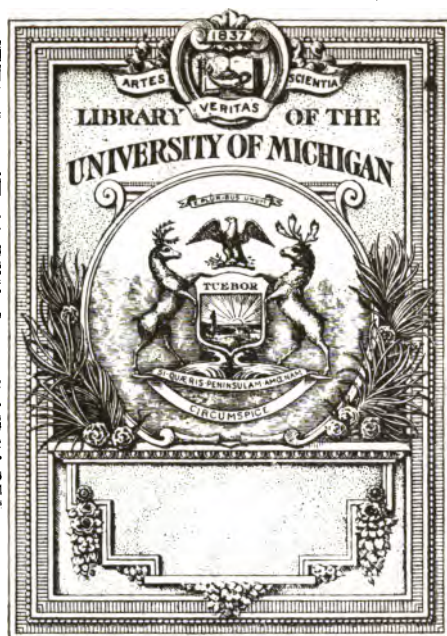
B 454230

Monographs on Biochemistry

SOIL CONDITIONS
AND
PLANT GROWTH

BY

EDWARD J. RUSSELL, D.Sc. (LOND.)



S
585
R962
1917

MONOGRAPHS ON BIOCHEMISTRY

EDITED BY

R. H. A. PLIMMER, D.Sc.

AND

F. G. HOPKINS, M.A., M.B., D.Sc., F.R.S.

GENERAL PREFACE.

THE subject of Physiological Chemistry, or Biochemistry, is enlarging its borders to such an extent at the present time, that no single text-book upon the subject, without being cumbrous, can adequately deal with it as a whole, so as to give both a general and a detailed account of its present position. It is, moreover, difficult, in the case of the larger text-books, to keep abreast of so rapidly growing a science by means of new editions, and such volumes are therefore issued when much of their contents has become obsolete.

For this reason, an attempt is being made to place this branch of science in a more accessible position by issuing a series of monographs upon the various chapters of the subject, each independent of and yet dependent upon the others, so that from time to time, as new material and the demand therefor necessitate, a new edition of each monograph can be issued without re-issuing the whole series. In this way, both the expenses of publication and the expense to the purchaser will be diminished, and by a moderate outlay it will be possible to obtain a full account of any particular subject as nearly current as possible.

The editors of these monographs have kept two objects in view: firstly, that each author should be himself working at the subject with which he deals; and, secondly, that a *Bibliography*, as complete as possible, should be included, in order to avoid cross references, which are apt to be wrongly cited, and in order that each monograph may yield full and independent information of the work which has been done upon the subject.

It has been decided as a general scheme that the volumes first issued shall deal with the pure chemistry of physiological products and with certain general aspects of the subject. Subsequent monographs will be devoted to such questions as the chemistry of special tissues and particular aspects of metabolism. So the series, if continued, will proceed from physiological chemistry to what may be now more properly termed chemical physiology. This will depend upon the success which the first series achieves, and upon the divisions of the subject which may be of interest at the time.

R. H. A. P.
F. G. H.

MONOGRAPHS ON BIOCHEMISTRY.

ROYAL 8vo.

THE NATURE OF ENZYME ACTION. By W. M. BAYLISS, D.Sc., F.R.S. Third Edition. 5s. net.

THE CHEMICAL CONSTITUTION OF THE PROTEINS. By R. H. A. PLIMMER, D.Sc.

Part I.—Analysis.

Part II.—Synthesis, etc. Second Edition, Revised and Enlarged. 3s. 6d. net.

THE VEGETABLE PROTEINS. By THOMAS B. OSBORNE, Ph.D. New Impression. 3s. 6d. net.

THE SIMPLE CARBOHYDRATES AND THE GLUCOSIDES. By E. FRANKLAND ARMSTRONG, D.Sc., Ph.D. Second Edition, Revised and Enlarged. 5s. net.

THE FATS. By J. B. LEATHES, F.R.S., M.A., M.B., F.R.C.S.

ALCOHOLIC FERMENTATION. By A. HARDEN, Ph.D., D.Sc., F.R.S. Second Edition. 4s. net.

THE PHYSIOLOGY OF PROTEIN METABOLISM. By E. P. CATHCART, M.D., D.Sc.

SOIL CONDITIONS AND PLANT GROWTH. By E. J. RUSSELL, D.Sc., F.R.S. Third Edition. 6s. 6d. net.

OXIDATIONS AND REDUCTIONS IN THE ANIMAL BODY. By H. D. DAKIN, D.Sc., F.R.S. 4s. net.

THE SIMPLER NATURAL BASES. By G. BARGER, M.A., D.Sc. 6s. net.

NUCLEIC ACIDS. THEIR CHEMICAL PROPERTIES AND PHYSIOLOGICAL CONDUCT. By WALTER JONES, Ph.D. 3s. 6d. net.

THE RESPIRATORY EXCHANGE OF ANIMALS AND MAN. By AUGUST KROGH, Ph.D. 6s. net.

The following are in preparation :—

THE DEVELOPMENT AND PRESENT POSITION OF BIOLOGICAL CHEMISTRY. By F. GOWLAND HOPKINS, M.A., M.B., D.Sc., F.R.S.

THE POLYSACCHARIDES. By ARTHUR R. LING, F.I.C.

COLLOIDS. By W. B. HARDY, M.A., F.R.S.

PHYSICAL METHODS USED IN BIOLOGICAL CHEMISTRY. By G. S. WALPOLE, D.Sc.

PROTAMINES AND HISTONES. By A. KOSSEL, Ph.D.

LECITHIN AND ALLIED SUBSTANCES. By H. MACLEAN, M.D., D.Sc.

THE ORNAMENTAL PLANT PIGMENTS. By A. G. PERKIN, F.R.S.

CHLOROPHYLL AND HÆMOGLOBIN. By H. J. PAGE, B.Sc.

LONGMANS, GREEN AND CO.,

LONDON, NEW YORK, BOMBAY, CALCUTTA, AND MADRAS.

SOIL CONDITIONS AND PLANT GROWTH

BY

EDWARD J. RUSSELL, D.Sc. (Lond.), F.R.S.

DIRECTOR OF THE ROTHAMSTED EXPERIMENTAL STATION, HARPENDEN



WITH DIAGRAMS

THIRD EDITION

LONGMANS, GREEN AND CO.

39 PATERNOSTER ROW, LONDON

FOURTH AVENUE & 30TH STREET, NEW YORK

BOMBAY, CALCUTTA, AND MADRAS

1917

BIBLIOGRAPHICAL NOTE.

First Edition	.	.	.	.	.	June,	1912
New Impression	.	.	.	.	.	April,	1913
New Edition	.	.	.	.	.	February,	1915
Third Edition	.	.	.	.	.	June,	1917

H 169a 18 m. m.

PREFACE TO THE THIRD EDITION.

CONSIDERABLE alterations have been made in the text and a new chapter has been added discussing the colloidal properties of the soil. It is abundantly clear that the soil investigator of the future will have to be thoroughly familiar with the ways of colloids, and I fully expect that much of the older work will require careful re-examination in the light of what has been done in this direction by chemists and physicists.

Although the volume has necessarily expanded I have tried to keep it as a monograph: I have not attempted to turn it into an extended card index by referring to every paper published on the subject since the first edition came out. Many papers have been omitted: the guiding principle has been to include only those that brought in some new idea or profoundly modified an old one. Some of the papers omitted from the last edition have been included in this because they now fall into their place, while before they did not. Doubtless this will happen again.

Continued progress is being made. Since the book was first begun two Journals have sprung up devoted entirely to soil: *Soil Science*, under the editorship of the indefatigable J. G. Lipman, and the *International Mitteilungen für Bodenkunde*. Another Journal, the *Journal of Ecology*, has also arisen and is vigorously developing another aspect of the same subject, while the older agricultural journals are finding more and more of their space taken up by soil papers. The subject now only lacks a name, and though many have been proposed—pedology, agrogeology, edaphology, etc.—I have not felt drawn to any of them.

I am indebted to many friends for calling my attention to omissions from the last edition and for much useful criticism; and, above all, I have to thank Miss Helen Adam and Miss Ruth Gimingham, who have been good enough to read all the proofs and to help in verifying references.

HARPENDEN, 1917.

PREFACE.

I HAVE endeavoured in the following pages to give a concise account of our present knowledge of the soil as a medium for plant life. At first sight the subject appears very simple ; in reality it is highly complex and trenches on several different subjects with which no one individual can claim to have any adequate knowledge, and, what is perhaps a greater disadvantage, it has grown up very unsystematically. Chemists, botanists, bacteriologists, geologists, and agriculturists have all contributed something, but usually in connection with their own special problems and not with the idea of developing a new subject. It has usually been reckoned part of the somewhat vague mixture known as agricultural chemistry, and has often been considered more suitable for farmers' lectures than for pursuit for its own sake.

As a result of its history the subject is now in a rather confused state. Suggestions thrown out by men eminent in some other branch of science have been accepted without much serious examination ; illustrations used in farmers' lectures to drive home some important point to an audience before whom lucidity is above all things necessary, have acquired the force of established facts ; whilst statements, and sometimes even substances, have come to be believed in for no better reason than that people have talked a great deal about them.

In recent years, however, its recognition as a basis of national wealth has given the soil a high degree of technical importance, whilst the remarkable constitution it appears to possess, the variety of its microscopic inhabitants and their close connection with plant life, all impart to its study unusual scientific interest. The time, therefore, seems ripe for a critical examination of the foundations for our beliefs, and this task is rendered easier by the advances made of late years on the Continent, in America and in this country. As the foreign literature is not generally available for English readers I have given the evidence in some detail, so that my fellow agricultural chemists may see it for themselves and the student of pure science may be able to tell us how far we are justified in using the data as we do.

E. J. R.

HARPENDEN, *January*, 1912.

PREFACE TO THE NEW EDITION.

THE second impression of this book was called for so soon after the first was published that there seemed no occasion to make any alterations beyond the correction of a few misprints, but now that a third is required the opportunity is taken of adding a new chapter on the relationship between the micro-organic population of the soil and the growth of plants, and also numerous sections dealing with recent developments of other parts of the subject. It is satisfactory to be able to record that continued progress has been made, and that some of the difficulties that obstructed the way when the book was first written have now been overcome.

In this revision I have been greatly helped by Dr. Hans Brehm, who translated the first edition into German, and who very kindly placed at my disposal his complete and critical knowledge of the continental work on the subject.

ROTHAMSTED EXPERIMENTAL STATION,
HARPENDEN, 1915.

CONTENTS.

CHAPTER	PAGE
I. HISTORICAL AND INTRODUCTORY - - - - -	I
II. THE REQUIREMENTS OF PLANTS - - - - -	19
III. THE COMPOSITION OF THE SOIL - - - - -	56
IV. THE COLLOIDAL PROPERTIES OF SOIL - - - - -	83
V. THE CARBON AND NITROGEN CYCLES IN THE SOIL - - -	107
VI. THE BIOLOGICAL CONDITIONS IN THE SOIL - - - -	138
VII. THE RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN THE MICRO-ORGANIC POPULATION OF THE SOIL AND THE GROWTH OF PLANTS - - - -	154
VIII. THE SOIL IN RELATION TO PLANT GROWTH - - - -	183
IX. SOIL ANALYSIS AND ITS INTERPRETATION - - - -	199
APPENDIX—METHODS OF SOIL ANALYSIS - - - - -	217
A SELECTED BIBLIOGRAPHY OF PAPERS ON SOIL CONDITIONS AND PLANT GROWTH - - - - -	223
INDEX - - - - -	241

CHAPTER I.

HISTORICAL AND INTRODUCTORY.

IN all ages the growth of plants has interested thoughtful men. The mystery of the change of an apparently lifeless seed to a vigorous growing plant never loses its freshness, and constitutes, indeed, no small part of the charm of gardening. The economic problems are of vital importance, and become more and more urgent as time goes on and populations increase and their needs become more complex.

There was an extensive literature on agriculture in Roman times which maintained a pre-eminent position until comparatively recently. In this we find collected many of the facts which it has subsequently been the business of agricultural chemists to classify and explain. We find also both here and in the much smaller literature of mediaeval times, certain ingenious speculations that have been justified by later work. Such for instance is Palissy's remarkable statement in 1563 (222)¹: "You will admit that when you bring dung into the field it is to return to the soil something that has been taken away. . . . When a plant is burned it is reduced to a salty ash called alcaly by apothecaries and philosophers. . . . Every sort of plant without exception contains some kind of salt. Have you not seen certain labourers when sowing a field with wheat for the second year in succession, burn the unused wheat straw which had been taken from the field? In the ashes will be found the salt that the straw took out of the soil; if this is put back the soil is improved. Being burnt on the ground it serves as manure because it returns to the soil those substances that had been taken away." But for every speculation that has been confirmed will be found many that have not, and the beginnings of agricultural chemistry must be sought later when men had learnt the necessity for carrying on experiments.

The Search for the "Principle" of Vegetation, 1630-1750.

The earlier investigators sought for a "principle" of vegetation to account for the phenomena of soil fertility and plant growth. Van

¹ The numbers in brackets refer to the Bibliography at the end of the book.

Helmont considered he had found it in water, and his son thus records his famous Brussels experiment (131). "I took an earthen vessel in which I put 200 pounds of soil dried in an oven, then I moistened with rain water and pressed hard into it a shoot of willow weighing 5 pounds. After exactly five years the tree that had grown up, weighed 169 pounds and about 3 ounces. But the vessel had never received anything but rain water or distilled water to moisten the soil when this was necessary, and it remained full of soil which was still tightly packed, and, lest any dust from outside should get into the soil, it was covered with a sheet of iron coated with tin but perforated with many holes. I did not take the weight of the leaves that fell in the autumn. In the end I dried the soil once more and got the same 200 pounds that I started with, less about two ounces. Therefore the 164 pounds of wood, bark, and root, arose from the water alone."

The experiment is simple and convincing, and satisfied Boyle (50) who repeated it with "squash, a kind of Indian pompon" and obtained similar results. Boyle further distilled the plants and concluded, quite justifiably from his premises, that the products obtained, "salt, spirit, earth and even oil (though that be thought of all bodies the most opposite to water) may be produced out of water". Nevertheless the conclusion is incorrect, because two factors had escaped Van Helmont's notice—the parts played by the air and by the missing two ounces of soil. But the history of this experiment is thoroughly typical of experiments in agricultural chemistry generally: in no other subject is it so easy to overlook a vital factor and draw from good experiments a conclusion that appears to be absolutely sound, but is in reality entirely wrong.

Some years later—about 1650—Glauber (107) set up the hypothesis that saltpetre is the "principle" of vegetation. Having obtained saltpetre from the earth cleared out from cattle sheds, he argued that it must have come from the urine or droppings of the animals, and must, therefore, be contained in the animal's food, *i.e.*, in plants. He also found that additions of saltpetre to the soil produced enormous increases in crop. He connected these two observations and supposed that saltpetre is the essential principle of vegetation. The fertility of the soil and the value of manures (he mentions dung, feathers, hair, horn, bones, cloth cuttings) are entirely due to saltpetre.

This view was generally accepted by later writers. Mayow (195) studied the amounts of nitre in the soil at different times of the year, and showed that it occurs in greatest quantity in spring when plants are just beginning to grow, but is not to be found "in soil on which

plants grow abundantly, the reason being that all the nitre of the soil is sucked out by the plants". Külbel (quoted in 293), on the other hand, regarded a *magma unguinosum* obtainable from humus as the "principle" sought for.

In his celebrated text-book of chemistry Boerhaave (41) taught that plants absorb the juices of the earth and then work them up into food. The raw material, the "prime radical juice of vegetables, is a compound from all the three kingdoms, *viz.*, *fossil* bodies and putrified parts of *animals* and *vegetables*". This "we look upon as the *chyle of the plant* ; being chiefly found in the first order of vessels, *viz.*, in the roots and the body of the plant, which answers to the stomach and intestines of an animal".

For many years no such outstanding work as that of Glauber was published, if we except Hales' *Vegetable Staticks* (116), the interest of which is physiological rather than agricultural. Advances were, however, being made in agricultural practice. One of the most important was the introduction of the drill and the horse hoe by Jethro Tull (286), an Oxford man of a strongly practical turn of mind, who insisted on the vital importance of getting the soil into a fine crumbly state for plant growth. Tull was more than an inventor ; he discussed in most picturesque language the sources of fertility in the soil. In his view it was not the juices of the earth, but the very minute particles of soil loosened by the action of moisture, that constituted the "proper pabulum" of plants. The pressure caused by the swelling of the growing roots forced these particles into the "lacteal mouths of the roots," where they entered the circulatory system. All plants lived on these particles, *i.e.*, on the same kind of food ; it was incorrect to assert, as some had done, that different kinds of plants fed as differently as horses and dogs, each taking its appropriate food and no other. Plants will take in anything that comes their way, good or bad. A rotation of crops is not a necessity, but only a convenience. Conversely, any soil will nourish any plant if the temperature and water supply are properly regulated. Hoeing increased the surface of the soil or the "pasture of the plant," and also enabled the soil better to absorb the nutritious vapours condensed from the air. Dung acted in the same way, but was more costly and less efficient.

So much were Tull's writings esteemed, Cobbett tells us, that they were "plundered by English writers not a few and by Scotch in whole bandittis".

The position at the end of this period cannot better be summed up than in Tull's own words : "It is agreed that all the following materials

4 SOIL CONDITIONS AND PLANT GROWTH

contribute in some manner to the increase of plants, but it is disputed which of them is that very increase or food: (1) nitre, (2) water, (3) air, (4) fire, (5) earth".

The Search for Plant Nutrients.

1. *The Phlogistic Period, 1750-1800.*

Great interest was taken in agriculture in this country during the latter half of the eighteenth century. "The farming tribe," writes Arthur Young during this period, "is now made up of all ranks, from a duke to an apprentice." Many experiments were conducted, facts were accumulated, books written, and societies formed for promoting agriculture. The Edinburgh Society, established in 1755 for the improvement of arts and manufactures, induced Francis Home (138) "to try how far chymistry will go in settling the principles of agriculture". The whole art of agriculture, he says, centres in one point: the nourishing of plants. Investigation of fertile soils showed that they contain oil, which is therefore a food of plants. But when a soil has been exhausted by cropping, it recovers its fertility on exposure to air,¹ which therefore supplies another food. Home made pot experiments to ascertain the effect of various substances on plant growth. "The more they (*i.e.* farmers) know of the effects of different bodies on plants, the greater chance they have to discover the nourishment of plants, at least this is the only road." Saltpetre, Epsom salt, vitriolated tartar (*i.e.* potassium sulphate) all lead to increased plant growth, yet they are three distinct salts. Olive oil was also useful. It is thus clear that plant food is not one thing only, but several; he enumerates six: air, water, earth, salts of different kinds, oil, and fire in a fixed state. As further proof he shows that "all vegetables and vegetable juices afford those very principles, and no other, by all the chymical experiments which have yet been made on them with or without fire".

The book is a great advance on anything that had gone before it, not only because it recognises that plant nutrition depends on several factors, but because it indicates so clearly the two methods to be followed in studying the problem—pot cultures and plant analysis. Subsequent investigators, Wallerius (293), the Earl of Dundonald (90), and Kirwan (149) added new details but no new principles. The problem indeed was carried as far as was possible until further advances were made in plant physiology and in chemistry. The writers just

¹ Recorded by most early writers, *e.g.* Evelyn (*Terra*, 1674) (96).

mentioned are, however, too important to be passed over completely. Wallerius, in 1761, professor of chemistry at Upsala, after analysing plants to discover the materials on which they live, and arguing that *Nutritio non fieri potest a rebus heterogeneis, sed homogeneis*, concludes that humus, being *homogeneis*, is the source of their food—the *nutritiva*—while the other soil constituents are *instrumentalia*, making the proper food mixture, dissolving and attenuating it, till it can enter the plant root. Thus chalk and probably salts help in dissolving the “fatness” of the humus. Clay helps to retain the “fatness” and prevent it being washed away by rain: sand keeps the soil open and pervious to air. The Earl of Dundonald, in 1795, adds alkaline phosphates to the list of nutritive salts, but he attaches chief importance to humus as plant food. The “oxygenation” process going on in the soil makes the organic matter insoluble and therefore useless for the plant; lime, “alkalis and other saline substances” dissolve it and change it to plant food; hence these substances should be used alternately with dung as manure. Manures were thus divided, as by Wallerius, into two classes: those that afford plant food, and those that have some indirect effect.

Throughout this period it was believed that plants could generate alkalies. “Alkalies,” wrote Kirwan in 1796, “seem to be the product of the vegetable process, for either none, or scarce any, is found in the soils, or in rain water.” In like manner Lampadius thought he had proved that plants could generate silica. The theory that plants agreed in all essentials with animals was still accepted by many men of science; some interesting developments were made by Erasmus Darwin in 1803 (76).

Between 1770 and 1800 work was done on the effects of vegetation on air that was destined to revolutionise the ideas of the function of plants in the economy of Nature, but its agricultural significance was not recognised until later. In 1771 Priestley (229), knowing that the atmosphere becomes vitiated by animal respiration, combustion, putrefaction, etc., and realising that some natural purification must go on, or life would not longer be possible, was led to try the effect of sprigs of living mint on vitiated air. He found that the mint made the air purer, and concludes “that plants instead of affecting the air in the same manner with animal respiration, reverse the effects of breathing, and tend to keep the atmosphere pure and wholesome, when it is become noxious in consequence of animals either living, or breathing, or dying, and putrefying in it”. But he had not yet discovered oxygen, and so could not give precision to his discovery: and when, later on, he did discover oxygen and learn how to estimate it, he

unfortunately failed to confirm his earlier results because he overlooked a vital factor, the necessity of light. He was therefore unable to answer Scheele, who had insisted that plants, like animals, vitiate the air. It was Ingen-Housz (142) who reconciled both views and showed that purification goes on in light only, whilst vitiation takes place in the darkness. Jean Senebier at Geneva had also arrived at the same result. He also studied the converse problem—the effect of air on the plant, and in 1782 argued (262) that the increased weight of the tree in Van Helmont's experiment (p. 2) came from the fixed air. "Si donc l'air fixe, dissous dans l'eau de l'atmosphère, se combine dans la parenchyme avec la lumière et tous les autres élémens de la plante; si le phlogistique de cet air fixe est sûrement précipité dans les organes de la plante, si ce précipité reste, comme on le voit, puisque cet air fixe sort des plantes sous la forme d'air déphlogistiqué, il est clair que l'air fixe, combiné dans la plante avec la lumière, y laisse une matière qui n'y seroit pas, et mes expériences sur l'étiollement suffisent pour le démontrer." Later on Senebier translated his work into the modern terms of Lavoisier's system.

2. *The Modern Period, 1800-1860.*

We have seen that Home in 1756 pushed his inquiries as far as the methods in vogue would permit, and in consequence no marked advance was made for forty years. A new method was wanted before further progress could be made, or before the new idea introduced by Senebier could be developed. Fortunately this was soon forthcoming. To Théodore de Saussure, in 1804 (243), son of the well-known de Saussure of Geneva, is due the quantitative statistical method which more than anything else has made modern agricultural chemistry possible: which formed the basis of subsequent work by Boussingault, Liebig, Lawes and Gilbert, and indeed still remains our safest method of investigation. Senebier tells us that the elder de Saussure was well acquainted with his work, and it is therefore not surprising that the son attacked two problems that Senebier had also studied—the effect of air on plants and the nature and origin of salts in plants. De Saussure grew plants in air or in known mixtures of air and carbon dioxide, and measured the gas changes by eudiometric analysis and the changes in the plant by "carbonisation". He was thus able to demonstrate the central fact of plant respiration—the absorption of oxygen and the evolution of carbon dioxide, and further to show the decomposition of carbon dioxide and evolution of oxygen in light. Car-

bon dioxide in small quantities was a vital necessity for plants, and they perished if it was artificially removed from the air. It furnished them not only with carbon, but also with some oxygen. Water is also decomposed and fixed by plants. On comparing the amount of dry matter gained from these sources with the amount of material that can enter through the roots even under the most favourable conditions, he concludes that the soil furnished only a very small part of the plant food. Small as it is, however, this part is indispensable: it supplies nitrogen—*une partie essentielle des végétaux*—which, as he had shown, was not assimilated direct from the air; and also ash constituents, *qui peuvent contribuer à former, comme dans les animaux, leur parties solides ou osseuses*. Further he shows that the root is not a mere filter allowing any and every liquid to enter the plant; it has a special action and takes in water more readily than dissolved matter, thus effecting a concentration of the solution surrounding it; different salts, also, are absorbed to a different extent. Passing next to the composition of the plant ash, he shows that it is not constant, but varies with the nature of the soil and the age of the plant; it consists mainly, however, of alkalis and phosphates. All the constituents of the ash occur in humus. If a plant is grown from seed in water there is no gain in ash: the amount found at the end of the plant's growth is the same as was present in the seed excepting for a relatively small amount falling on the plant as dust. Thus he disposes finally of the idea that the plant generated potash.

After the somewhat lengthy and often wearisome works of the earlier writers it is very refreshing to turn to de Saussure's concise and logical arguments and the ample verification he gives at every stage. But for years his teachings were not accepted, nor were his methods followed.

Between 1802 and 1812 Davy gave annually some lectures on agricultural chemistry, which were published in 1813 (79), and form the earliest text-book of the modern period. Whilst no great advance was made by Davy himself (indeed his views are distinctly behind those of de Saussure) he carefully sifted the facts and hypotheses of previous writers, and gives us an account, which, however defective in places, represents the best accepted knowledge of the time, set out in the new chemical language. He does not accept de Saussure's conclusion that plants obtain their carbon chiefly from the carbonic acid of the air: some plants, he says, appear to be supplied with carbon chiefly from this source, but in general he supposes the carbon to be taken in through the roots. Oils are good manures because of the carbon and

hydrogen they contain; soot is valuable, because its carbon is "in a state in which it is capable of being rendered soluble by the action of oxygen and water". Lime is useful because it dissolves hard vegetable matter. Once the organic matter has dissolved there is no advantage in letting it decompose further, putrid urine is less useful as manure than fresh urine, whilst to make the soil conditions approach those of a nitre bed, as Home had suggested, is quite wrong. All these ideas have long been given up, and indeed there never was any sound experimental evidence to support them. It is even arguable that they would not have persisted so long as they did had it not been for Davy's high reputation. His insistence on the importance of the physical properties of soils—their relationship to heat and to water—was more fortunate and marks the beginning of soil physics, afterwards developed considerably by Schübler (254). On the Continent, to an even greater extent than in England, it was held that plants drew their carbon from the soil and lived on humus, a view supported by the very high authority of Berzelius (36).

Hitherto experiments had been conducted either in the laboratory or in small pots: about 1834, however, Boussingault, who was already known as an adventurous traveller in South America, began a series of field experiments on his farm at Bechelbronn in Alsace. He reintroduced the quantitative methods of de Saussure, weighed and analysed the manures used and the crops obtained, and at the end of the rotation drew up a balance sheet, showing how far the manure had satisfied the needs of the crop and how far other sources of supply—air, rain, and soil—had been drawn upon. The results of one experiment are given in Table I. on the opposite page. At the end of the period the soil had returned to its original state of productiveness, hence the dry matter, carbon, hydrogen, and oxygen not accounted for by the manure must have been supplied by the air and rain, and not by the soil. On the other hand, the manure afforded more mineral matter than the crop took off, the balance remaining in the soil. Other things being equal, he argued that the best rotation is one which yields the greatest amount of organic matter over and above what is present in the manure. No fewer than five rotations were studied, but it will suffice to set out only the nitrogen statistics (Table II. on the opposite page) which show a marked gain of nitrogen when the newer rotations are adopted, but not where wheat only is grown.

Now the rotation has not impoverished the soil, hence he concludes that "*l'azote peut entrer directement dans l'organisme des plantes, si*

HISTORICAL AND INTRODUCTORY

9

TABLE I.—STATISTICS OF A ROTATION. BOUSSINGAULT (46).

	Weight in kilograms per hectare of					
	Dry Matter.	Carbon.	Hydrogen.	Oxygen.	Nitrogen.	Mineral Matter.
1. Beets	3172	1357.7	184.0	1376.7	53.9	199.8
2. Wheat	3006	1431.6	164.4	1214.9	31.3	163.8
3. Clover hay	4029	1909.7	201.5	1523.0	84.6	310.2
4. Wheat	4208	2004.2	230.0	1700.7	43.8	229.3
Turnips (catch crop)	716	307.2	39.3	302.9	12.2	54.4
5. Oats	2347	1182.3	137.3	890.9	28.4	108.0
Total during rotation .	17478	8192.7	956.5	7009.0	254.2	1065.5
Added in manure . .	10161	3637.6	426.8	2621.5	203.2	3271.9
Difference not accounted for, taken from air, rain, or soil.	+ 7317	+ 4555.1	+ 529.7	+ 4387.5	+ 51.0	- 2206.4

1000 kilograms per hectare = 16 cwt. per acre.

TABLE II.—NITROGEN STATISTICS OF VARIOUS ROTATIONS. BOUSSINGAULT (46).

Rotation.	Kilograms per hectare.			
	Nitrogen in Manure.	Nitrogen in Crop.	Excess in Crop over that supplied in Manure.	
			Per Rotation.	Per Annum.
(1) Potatoes, (2) wheat, (3) clover, (4) wheat, turnips, ¹ (5) oats	203.2	250.7	47.5	9.5
(1) Beets, (2) wheat, (3) clover, (4) wheat, turnips, ¹ (5) oats	203.2	254.2	51.0	10.2
(1) Potatoes, (2) wheat, (3) clover, (4) wheat, turnips, ¹ (5) peas, (6) rye . .	243.8	353.6	109.8	18.3
Jerusalem artichokes, two years . .	188.2	274.2	86.0	43.0 ²
(1) Dunged fallow, (2) wheat, (3) wheat .	82.8	87.4	4.6	1.5
Lucerne, five years	224.0	1078.0	854	170.8

leurs parties vertes sont aptes à le fixer". Boussingault's work covers the whole range of agriculture and deals with the composition of crops at different stages of their growth, with soils and with problems in animal nutrition. Some of his work was summarised by Dumas in a very striking essay (88, see also 47) that has been curiously overlooked by agricultural chemists.

During this period (1830 to 1840) Carl Sprengel was studying the ash constituents of plants, which he considered were probably essential

¹ Catch crop, *i.e.* taken in autumn after the wheat.

² This crop does not belong to the leguminosæ, but it is possible that the nitrogen came from the soil, and that impoverishment was going on.

to nutrition (270). Schübler was working at soil physics (254), and a good deal of other work was quietly being done. No particularly important discoveries were being made, no controversies were going on, and no great amount of interest was taken in the subject.

But all this was changed in 1840 when Liebig's famous report to the British Association upon the state of organic chemistry, afterwards published as *Chemistry in its Application to Agriculture and Physiology* (173), came like a thunderbolt upon the world of science. With polished invective and a fine sarcasm he holds up to scorn the plant physiologists of his day for their continued adhesion, in spite of accumulated evidence, to the view that plants derive their carbon from the soil and not from the carbonic acid of the air. "All explanations of chemists must remain without fruit, and useless, because, even to the great leaders in physiology, carbonic acid, ammonia, acids, and bases, are sounds without meaning, words without sense, terms of an unknown language, which awake no thoughts and no associations." The experiments quoted by the physiologists in support of their view are all "valueless for the decision of any question". "These experiments are considered by them as convincing proofs, whilst they are fitted only to awake pity." Liebig's ridicule did what neither de Saussure's nor Boussingault's logic had done: it finally killed the humus theory. Only the boldest would have ventured after this to assert that plants derive their carbon from any source than carbon dioxide, although it must be admitted that we have no proof that plants really do obtain all their carbon in this way. Thirty years later, in fact, Grandeau (112) adduced evidence that humus may, after all, contribute something to the carbon supply, and his view still finds acceptance in France;¹ for this also, however, convincing proof is lacking. But for the time carbon dioxide was considered to be the sole source of the carbon of plants. Hydrogen and oxygen came from water, and nitrogen from ammonia. Certain mineral substances were essential: alkalies were needed for neutralization of the acids made by plants in the course of their vital processes, phosphates were necessary for seed formation, and potassium silicates for the development of grasses and cereals. The evidence lay in the composition of the ash: plants might absorb anything soluble from the soil, but they excreted from their roots whatever was non-essential. The fact of a substance being present was therefore sufficient proof of its necessity.

Plants, Liebig argued, have an inexhaustible supply of carbonic acid in the air. But time is saved in the early stages of plant growth if

¹ See e.g. L. Cailletet (65) and Jules Lefèvre (169).

carbonic acid is being generated in the soil, for it enters the plant root and affords extra nutriment over and above what the small leaves are taking in. Hence a supply of humus, which continuously yields carbonic acid, is advantageous. Further, the carbonic acid attacks and dissolves some of the alkali compounds of the soil and thus increases the mineral food supply. The true function of humus is to evolve carbonic acid.

The alkali compounds of the soil are not all equally soluble. A weathering process has to go on, which is facilitated by liming and cultivation, whereby the comparatively insoluble compounds are broken down to a more soluble state. The final solution is effected by acetic acid excreted by the plant root, and the dissolved material now enters the root.

The nitrogen is taken up as ammonia, which may come from the soil, from added manure, or from the air. In order that a soil may remain fertile it is necessary and sufficient to return in the form of manure the mineral constituents and the nitrogen that have been taken away. When sufficient crop analyses have been made it will be possible to draw up tables showing the farmer precisely what he must add in any particular case.

An artificial manure known as Liebig's patent manure was made up on these lines and placed on the market.

Liebig's book was meant to attract attention to the subject, and it did; it rapidly went through several editions, and as time went on Liebig developed his thesis, and gave it a quantitative form: "The crops on a field diminish or increase in exact proportion to the diminution or increase of the mineral substances conveyed to it in manure". He further adds what afterwards became known as the Law of the Minimum,¹ "by the deficiency or absence of *one* necessary constituent, all the others being present, the soil is rendered barren for all those crops to the life of which *that one* constituent is indispensable". These and other amplifications in the third edition, 1843, gave rise to much controversy. So much did Liebig insist, and quite rightly, on the necessity for alkalis and phosphates, and so impressed was he by the gain of nitrogen in meadow land supplied with alkalis and phosphates alone, and by the continued fertility of some of the fields of Virginia and Hungary and the meadows of Holland, that he began more and more to regard the atmosphere as the source of nitrogen for plants. Some of the passages of the first and second editions urging the neces-

¹ The underlying principle was not discovered by Liebig, having already been enunciated by political economists of the Malthus School. He was, however, the first to apply it to plant nutrition.

sity of ammoniacal manures were deleted from the third and later editions. "If the soil be suitable, if it contains a sufficient quantity of alkalis, phosphates, and sulphates, nothing will be wanting. The plants will derive their ammonia from the atmosphere as they do carbonic acid," he writes in the *Farmer's Magazine*. Ash analysis led him to consider the turnip as one of the plants "which contain the least amount of phosphates and therefore require the smallest quantity for their development". These and other practical deductions were seized upon and shown to be erroneous by Lawes (160-162) who had for some years been conducting vegetation experiments. Lawes does not discuss the theory as such, but tests the deductions Liebig himself draws and finds them wrong. Further trouble was in store for Liebig; his patent manure when tried in practice *had failed*. This was unfortunate, and the impression in England at any rate, was, in Philip Pusey's words: "The mineral theory, too hastily adopted by Liebig, namely, that crops rise and fall in direct proportion to the quantity of mineral substances present in the soil, or to the addition or abstraction of these substances which are added in the manure, has received its death-blow from the experiments of Mr. Lawes".

And yet the failure of the patent manure was not entirely the fault of the theory, but only affords further proof of the numerous pitfalls of the subject. The manure was sound in that it contained potassium compounds and phosphates (it ought of course to have contained nitrogen compounds), but it was unfortunately rendered insoluble by fusion with lime and calcium phosphate so that it should not too readily wash out in the drainage water. Not till Way had shown in 1850 that *soil precipitates soluble salts of ammonium, potassium and phosphates* was the futility of the fusion process discovered, and Liebig saw the error he had made (173b).

Meanwhile he continued to defend his position in the controversy with Lawes and Gilbert. It is not possible in this short sketch to go into details, but by 1855 the following points were settled by the experiments made at Rothamsted to test the various points raised:—

(1) Crops require phosphates and salts of the alkalis, but the composition of the ash does not afford reliable information as to the amounts of each constituent needed, *e.g.* turnips require large amounts of phosphates, although only little is present in their ash.

(2) Non-leguminous crops require a supply of some nitrogenous compounds, nitrates and ammonium salts being almost equally good. Without an adequate supply no increases of growth are obtained, even when ash constituents are added. The amount of ammonia obtainable from the atmosphere is insufficient for the needs of crops. Leguminous crops behaved abnormally.

(3) Soil fertility may be maintained for some years at least by means of artificial manures.

(4) The beneficial effect of fallowing lies in the increase brought about in the available nitrogen compounds in the soil.

Although many of Liebig's statements were shown to be wrong, the main outline of his theory as first enunciated stands. It is no detraction that de Saussure had earlier published a somewhat similar, but less definite view of nutrition : Liebig had brought matters to a head and made men look at their cherished, but unexamined, convictions. The effect of the stimulus he gave can hardly be over-estimated, and before he had finished, the essential facts of plant nutrition were settled and the lines were laid down along which scientific manuring was to be developed. The water cultures of Knop and other plant physiologists showed conclusively that potassium, magnesium, calcium, iron, phosphorus, along with sulphur, carbon, nitrogen, hydrogen, and oxygen are all necessary for plant life. The list differs from Liebig's only in the addition of iron and the withdrawal of silica ; but even silica, although not strictly essential, is advantageous to cereals.

In two directions, however, the controversies went on for many years. Farmers were slow to believe that "chemical manures" could ever do more than stimulate the crop, and declared they must ultimately exhaust the ground. The Rothamsted plots falsified this prediction ; manured year after year with the same substances and sown always with the same crops, they even now after sixty years of chemical manuring continue to produce good crops, although secondary effects have sometimes set in. In France the great missionary was Georges Ville, whose lectures were given at the experimental farm at Vincennes during 1867 and 1874-5 (287). He went even further than Lawes and Gilbert, and maintained that artificial manures were not only more remunerative than dung, but were the only way of keeping up fertility. In recommending mixtures of salts for manure he was not guided by ash analysis but by field trials. For each crop one of the four constituents, nitrogen compounds, phosphates, lime, and potassium compounds (he did not consider it necessary to add any others to his manures) was found by trial to be more wanted than the others and was therefore called the "dominant" constituent. Thus for wheat he obtained the following results, and therefore concluded that on his soil wheat required a good supply of nitrogen, less phosphate, and still less potassium :—

	Crop per acre. Bushels.
Normal manure	43
Manure without lime	41
" " potash	31
" " phosphate	26½
" " nitrogen	14
Soil without manure	12

Other experiments of the same kind showed that nitrogen was the dominant for all cereals and beetroot, potassium for potatoes and vines, phosphates for the sugar cane. An excess of the dominant constituent was always added to the crop manure. The composition of the soil had to be taken into account, but soil analysis was no good for the purpose. Instead he drew up a simple scheme of plot trials to enable farmers to determine for themselves just what nutrient was lacking in their soil. His method was thus essentially empirical, but it still remains the best we have; his view that chemical manures are always better and cheaper than dung is, however, too narrow and has not survived.

The second controversy dealt with the source of nitrogen in plants. Priestley had stated that a plant of *Epilobium hirsutum* placed in a small vessel absorbed during the course of the month seven-eighths of the air present. De Saussure, however, denied that plants assimilated gaseous nitrogen. Boussingault's pot-experiments showed that peas and clover could get nitrogen from the air while wheat could not (45) and his rotation experiments emphasised this distinction. He himself did not make as much of this discovery as he might have done, but Dumas (88) fully realised its importance.

Liebig, as we have seen, maintained that ammonia, but not gaseous nitrogen, was taken up by plants, a view confirmed by Lawes, Gilbert, and Pugh (164) in the most rigid demonstration that had yet been attempted. Plants of several natural orders, including the leguminosæ, were grown in surroundings free from ammonia or any other nitrogen compound. The soil was burnt to remove all trace of nitrogen compounds while the plants were kept throughout the experiment under glass shades, but supplied with washed and purified air and with pure water. In spite of the ample supply of mineral food the plants languished and died: the conclusion seemed irresistible that plants could not utilise gaseous nitrogen. For all non-leguminous crops this conclusion agreed with the results of field trials. But there remained the very troublesome fact that leguminous crops required no nitrogenous manure and yet they contained large quantities of nitrogen, and also enriched the soil considerably in this element. Where had the nitrogen come from? The amount of combined nitrogen brought

down by the rain was found to be far too small to account for the result. For years experiments were carried on, but the problem remained unsolved. Looking back over the papers¹ one can see how very close some of the older investigators were to the discovery of the cause of the mystery: in particular Lachmann (157*b*) in 1858 and Bretschneider (53) in 1861. Lachmann showed that the nodules invariably present on the roots contained "vibrionenartige" organisms while Bretschneider showed that the nitrogen fixation which occurred in normal soil did not take place in ignited soil. But these papers were both published in obscure journals and attracted little attention, and once again an investigation in agricultural chemistry had been brought to a standstill for want of new methods of attack.

The Beginnings of Soil Bacteriology.

It had been a maxim with the older agricultural chemists that "corruption is the mother of vegetation". Liebig had taught that nitrogenous organic matter decayed in the soil by a chemical process "eremacausis" with formation of ammonia, the essential nitrogenous food, a small part of which was further converted into nitric acid, which apparently also served as a plant nutrient (174). During the sixties and seventies great advances were being made in bacteriology and it was definitely established that bacteria bring about putrefaction, decomposition and other changes; it was therefore conceivable that they were the active agents in the soil and that the process of decomposition there taking place was not purely chemical as Liebig had asserted. Pasteur himself had expressed the opinion that nitrification—the curious change of ammonia to nitrate known to take place in soils—was a bacterial process. The new knowledge was first brought to bear on agricultural problems by Schloesing and Müntz (244) in 1877 during a study of the purification of sewage water by land filters. A continuous stream of sewage was allowed to trickle down a column of sand and limestone so slowly that it took eight days to pass. For the first twenty days the ammonia in the sewage was not affected, then it began to be converted into nitrate; finally all the ammonia was converted during its passage through the column and nitrates alone were found in the issuing liquid. Why, asked the authors, was there a delay of twenty days before nitrification began? If the process were simply chemical, oxidation should begin at once. They therefore examined the possibility of bacterial action and found that the process was entirely stopped by

¹ A good summary of the voluminous literature is contained in Löhnis' *Handbuch der Landw. Bakteriologie*, pp. 646 *et seq.*

a little chloroform vapour, but could be started again after the chloroform was removed by adding a little turbid extract of dry soil. Nitrification was thus shown to be due to micro-organisms—"organised ferments" to use their own expression.

Warington (295-6) had been investigating the nitrates in the Rothamsted soils, and at once applied the new discovery to soil processes. He showed that nitrification in the soil is stopped by chloroform and carbon disulphide; further, that solutions of ammonium salts could be nitrified by adding a trace of soil. By a careful series of experiments described in his four papers to the Chemical Society he found that there were two stages in the process and two distinct organisms: the ammonia was first converted into nitrite and then to nitrate. But he failed altogether to obtain the organisms in spite of some years of study by the gelatin plate methods then in vogue. The reason was discovered later: the organisms will not grow in presence of nitrogenous organic matter. Not till 1890 did Winogradsky (311) succeed in isolating them, and thus complete the evidence.

Warington established definitely the fact that nitrogen compounds rapidly change to nitrates in the soil, so that whatever compound is supplied as manure plants get practically nothing but nitrate as food. This closed the long discussion as to the nitrogenous food of non-leguminous plants: in natural conditions they take up nitrates only (or at any rate chiefly), because the activities of the nitrifying organisms leave them no option. The view that plants assimilate gaseous nitrogen has from time to time been revived,¹ but has not been taken seriously.

TABLE III.—RELATION BETWEEN NITROGEN SUPPLY AND PLANT GROWTH.
HELLRIEGEL AND WILFARTH (130).

Nitrogen in the calcium nitrate supplied per pot, grams	none	·056	·112	·168	·224	·336
Weight of oats obtained (grain and straw)	{ ·3605 ·4191	{ 5·9024 5·8510 5·2867	{ 10·9814 10·9413	15·9974	{ 21·2732 21·4409	30·1750
Weight of peas obtained (grain and straw)	{ ·551 3·496 5·233	{ ·9776 1·3037 4·1283	{ 4·9146 9·7671 8·4969	5·6185	{ 9·7252 6·6458	11·3520

The apparently hopeless problem of the nitrogen nutrition of leguminous plants was soon to be solved. In a striking series of sand cultures Hellriegel and Wilfarth (130) showed that the growth of non-leguminous plants, barley, oats, etc., was directly proportional to the amount of nitrate supplied, the duplicate pots agreeing satisfac-

¹ e.g. see (224b).

torily; while in the case of leguminous plants no sort of relationship existed and duplicate pots failed to agree. After the seedling stage was passed the leguminous plants grown without nitrate made no further progress for a time, then some of them started to grow and did well, while others failed. This period of no growth was not seen where nitrate was supplied. Two of their experiments are given in Table III.

Analysis showed that the nitrogen contained in the oat crop and sand at the end of the experiment was always a little less than was originally supplied, but was distinctly greater in the case of peas; the gain in three cases amounted to .910, 1.242 and .789 grm. per pot respectively. They drew two conclusions: (1) the peas took their nitrogen from the air; (2) the process of nitrogen assimilation was conditioned by some factor that did not come into their experiment except by chance. In trying to frame an explanation they connected two facts that were already known. Berthelot (26) had made experiments to show that certain micro-organisms in the soil can assimilate gaseous nitrogen. It was known to botanists that the nodules on the roots of leguminosæ contained bacteria.¹ Hellriegel and Wilfarth, therefore, supposed that the bacteria in the nodules assimilated gaseous nitrogen, and then handed on some of the resulting nitrogenous compounds to the plant. This hypothesis was shown to be well founded by the following facts:—

1. In absence of nitrates peas made only small growth and developed no nodules in sterilised sand; when calcium nitrate was added they behaved like oats and barley, giving regular increases in crop for each increment of nitrates (the discordant results of Table II. were obtained on unsterilised sand).

2. They grew well and developed nodules in sterilised sand watered with an extract of arable soil.

3. They sometimes did well and sometimes failed when grown without soil extract and without nitrate in *unsterilised* sand, which might or might not contain the necessary organisms. An extract that worked well for peas might be without effect on lupins or serradella. In other words, the organism is specific.

Hellriegel and Wilfarth read their paper and exhibited some of their plants at the Naturforscher-Versammlung at Berlin in 1886. Gilbert was present at the meeting, and on returning to Rothamsted

¹ This had been demonstrated by Lachmann in 1858 (157b) and again by Woronin in 1866 (322). Eriksson in 1874 (Doctor's dissertation, abs. in *Botan. Ztg.*, 1874, 32, 381-384) made an admirable investigation, while Brunchorst in 1885 (64) gave the name "bacteroids".

repeated and confirmed the experiments (165). At a later date Schloesing fils and Laurent (247) showed that the weight of nitrogen absorbed from the air was approximately equal to the gain by the plant and the soil, and thus finally clinched the evidence.

	Control.	Peas.	Mustard.	Cress.	Spurge.
Nitrogen lost from the air, mgm.	1.0	134.6	- 2.6	- 3.8	- 2.4
Nitrogen gained by crop and soil, mgm.	4.0	142.4	- 2.5	2.0	3.2

The organism was isolated by Beijerinck (p. 123) and called *Bacterium radicola*.

Thus another great controversy came to an end, and the discrepancy between the field trials and the laboratory experiments of Lawes, Gilbert and Pugh was cleared up. The laboratory experiments gave the correct conclusion that leguminous plants, like non-leguminous plants, have themselves no power of assimilating gaseous nitrogen; this power belongs to the bacteria associated with them. But so carefully was all organic matter removed from the soil, the apparatus, and the air in endeavouring to exclude all trace of ammonia, that there was no chance of infection with the necessary bacteria. Hence no assimilation could go on. In the field trials the bacteria were active, and here there was a gain of nitrogen.

The general conclusion that bacteria are the real makers of plant food in the soil, and are, therefore, essential to the growth of all plants, was developed by Wollny (317) and Berthelot (28). It was supposed to be proved by Laurent's experiments (159, see also 87). He grew buckwheat on humus obtained from well-rotted dung, and found that plants grew well on the untreated humus, but only badly on the humus sterilised by heat. When, however, soil bacteria were added to the sterilised humus (by adding an aqueous extract of unsterilised soil) he got good growth again. The experiment looks convincing, but is really unsound. When a rich soil is heated some substance is formed toxic to plants. The failure of the plants on the sterilised humus was, therefore, not due to absence of bacteria, but to the presence of a toxin. No one has yet succeeded in carrying out this fundamental experiment of growing plants in two soils differing only in that one contains bacteria while the other does not.

The close connection between bacterial activity and the nutrition of plants is, however, fully justified by many experiments, and forms the basis of our modern conception of the soil as a producer of crops, as will appear in the following chapters.

CHAPTER II.

THE REQUIREMENTS OF PLANTS.

FOR a true understanding of our subject it is necessary at the outset to realise the conditions and factors influencing the growth of plants. We have to look upon the plant as a synthetic agent and accumulator of energy, taking up simple substances like carbon dioxide, water, nitrates, phosphates, potassium salts, etc., and manufacturing complex sugars, starch, cellulose, proteins, nucleo-proteins, essential oils, colouring matters and a host of other substances. The natural object of the processes is to produce seeds containing the embryo and a supply of food for the young plant to draw upon till such time as it can synthesise its own food. In agriculture, however, the stored up food material is taken at whatever stage is convenient and constitutes the food and energy supply of animals and of men.

As the processes of the plant are endothermic the energy of the sun's rays is indispensable to them. The transforming agent is chlorophyll, the ordinary green colouring matter of the leaf. Since the reactions have all to go at ordinary temperatures catalysts are necessary to accelerate changes that would otherwise be very slow; these are supplied by the protoplasm and the numerous enzymes. The whole cycle of changes collectively spoken of as plant growth represents the net gain from two opposite processes, (1) a constructive process of at least three stages: synthesis of complex material, translocation of the synthesised food to centres of growth, and building up of the food into plant tissues or reserves, (2) a respiratory process whereby carbohydrate material is broken down and carbon dioxide evolved. The synthesis is of two types: photosynthesis, in which sugar is produced; and another, not specifically named, giving rise to protein. Photosynthesis, as its name implies, takes place only in light and is restricted to the chlorophyll cells. The initial substances are carbon dioxide and water; in a very short time the apparent end products, starch and oxygen (equal in volume to the carbon dioxide), appear. It is shown, however, by the researches of Brown and others that the real end product is cane sugar, starch only being formed when

the concentration of the cell sap becomes high. Synthesis of protein, on the other hand, is not restricted to the chlorophyll cells nor is it directly dependent on light,¹ but it does not start as low down as carbohydrate synthesis, the initial substances being, apparently, sugar and nitrates.

For the translocation of food materials from one part of the plant to another they have to be changed, if necessary, into simpler soluble substances, starch being converted into sugars and protein into certain decomposition products; this change is effected by enzymes. For storage purposes it is usually necessary that the substances should be insoluble and they are therefore reconverted into complex bodies.

The destructive process, respiration, in which oxygen is absorbed, sugar oxidised and carbon dioxide evolved (in rather less volume than that of the oxygen) is a general property of protoplasm. It takes place throughout the whole life of the plant and in all the living cells; during the growing period it is of course on a smaller scale than the synthetic processes, but during both germination and ripening it is on a larger scale, consequently there is a loss of weight.

These separate processes—assimilation, translocation, metabolism, respiration—all seem to follow the ordinary laws of chemical reaction, the only modification necessary being the introduction of a time factor, since protoplasm will not indefinitely maintain its powers. For instance, in the classical experiments of Blackman and of Miss Matthaei (193), the effect of temperature on assimilation, *all other factors being eliminated*, was precisely that obtaining in an ordinary chemical reaction; so also for respiration. Miss Matthaei found that the amounts of carbon dioxide assimilated by a cherry laurel leaf per 50 sq. cms. (about 8 sq. ins.) per hour at various temperatures were:—

Temperature, degrees C.	- 6°	+ 8·8°	11·4°	15°	23·7°	30·5°	37·5°	40·5°	43° ²
Weight of CO ₂ assimilated, grams	·0002	·0038	·0048	·0070	·0102	·0157	·0238	·0149	·0102

By interpolation the values at 0°, 10°, 20° etc. can be found, and the rate of assimilation is thus seen to double, and more than double, for every increase of 10°, the usual order of increase in chemical reactions:—³

¹ Confirmed by Zaleski's recent experiments (323).

² The normal rates were only maintained for a short time at the higher temperatures.

³ A list of the papers dealing with the temperature coefficient for cell growth is given in *Science*, 6th November, 1908.

Temperature	0°	10°	20°	30°	37°
Amount of CO ₂ assimilated per hour	17.5	42	89	157	238
In reased rate for 10° C.	—	2.4	2.1	1.8	1.8

But, on the other hand, the effect of temperature on the *rate of growth* of a plant is in no wise like its effect in accelerating chemical change. Bialoblocki's (37) results with barley were as follows:—

Tem. erature	[0]	10°	20°	30°	40°
Dry matter formed, grams	[nil]	7.64	8.22	3.85	0.93

The two curves are shown in Fig. 1 ; the difference between them is

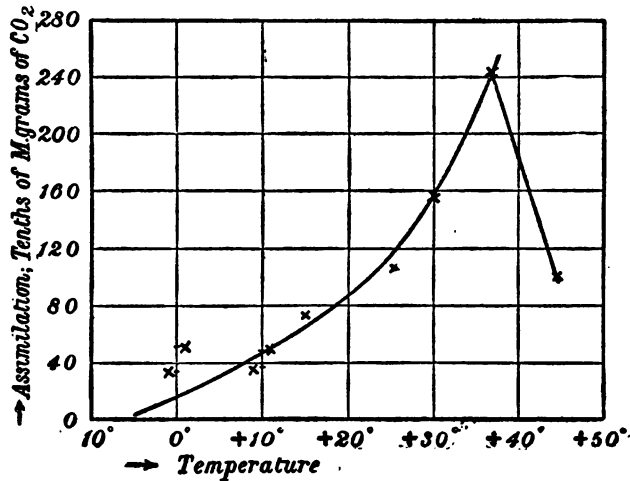


FIG. 1A.—Relation between Temperature and Assimilation. (Miss Matthaei.)

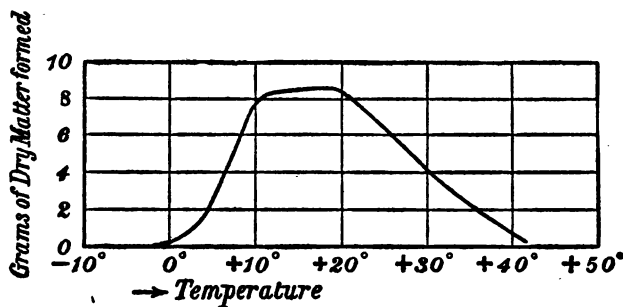


FIG. 1B.—Relation between Temperature and Plant Growth. (Bialoblocki.)

of fundamental importance to our subject and must be discussed in some detail.

Each of the separate processes—assimilation, respiration, etc.—gives, so far as is known, curves like Fig. 1*a* continuous over the whole

22 SOIL CONDITIONS AND PLANT GROWTH

range of temperature nearly up to the death point. At higher temperatures it is necessary to work for a short period only, so as to eliminate the element of fatigue, but there is no break in the curve.

For the growth of the plant, however, it is necessary that all the processes should work harmoniously together, and that the protoplasm should remain healthy and vigorous. Now the temperature range over which protoplasm lives and the somewhat delicate adjustment of the processes holds together, is very restricted; beyond a certain point, further temperature increases do not cause more growth, but throw the adjustment out of gear and act adversely on the protoplasm. Thus we get a bending over of the curve.

The distinction is well brought out in the work of Brown and Escombe (59) on the influence of varying partial pressures of carbon dioxide on photosynthesis. So long as photosynthesis *alone* was considered, and other factors eliminated, its amount was proportional to the partial pressure.

	Experiment 1.		Experiment 2.	
	a.	b.	a.	b.
Partial pressures of CO ₂ , parts per 10,000	2.22	14.82	2.25	9.95
Ratio	1	6.6	1	4.4
CO ₂ absorbed by leaf per sq. m. per hour, c.cs.	248.2	1802.8	309	1639
Ratio	1	7.2	1	5.3

But when *plants were grown* in atmospheres containing various amounts of carbon dioxide then a wholly different relationship was observed.¹

	Experiment 1.		Experiment 2.	
	a.	b.	a.	b.
Partial pressures of CO ₂ , parts per 10,000	2.9	5.4	2.9	12
Ratio	1	1.9	1	3
Dry weight of beans found after ten days, grams . . . . .	.856	.843	.872	.814
Ratio	1	1	1	0.9

Assimilation must have gone on at the accelerated rate in the beginning, but the other processes were unable to keep pace and so they set a limit to the speed of growth. A factor that thus proves

¹ The details of these experiments have been criticised by Demoussay (84), but the general conclusion is probably sound.

insufficient and stops what ought to be a continuous process is called a "limiting factor". Brown (59*a*) and Blackman (40) have both applied this conception to the phenomena of plant growth.

An instance of a limiting factor is afforded by Miss Matthaei's work on the rate of assimilation in cherry laurel leaves. Working with artificial light of low intensity she found that assimilation increased with the temperature to a certain point, but then remained constant; the light was insufficient for quicker photosynthesis. When the light was increased a higher speed of photosynthesis became possible, until with full light the ordinary logarithmic curve was obtained.

When all other factors are sufficiently supplied a limit is finally set by the inability of the protoplasm to do more than a certain amount of work.

We can now draw up our general curve showing the relationship between the supply of any particular factor and the amount of plant growth. It consists of either two or three parts (Fig. 2). In the first

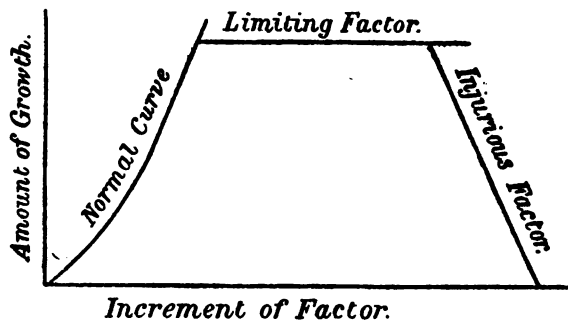


FIG. 2.—General Relation between any particular Factor and Plant Growth.

part all the processes in the plant are working harmoniously and the plant remains healthy; here an increase in the factor causes an increase in the amount of growth, and the curve is similar to that obtained for any single process considered separately. In the second part some limiting factor comes into play, such as an insufficiency of something essential, or an inability of some process to go any faster; the rate of growth cannot, therefore, show any further increase. It may happen that further increase of the factor even acts injuriously by bringing about a secondary adverse effect such as injury to the protoplasm or to the medium in which the plant is growing.

Mitscherlich has shown (201*a* and *b*) that in some cases, where the adverse effect is absent, the curves can be expressed by a simple equation. If all the conditions were ideal a certain maximum yield would be obtained, but in so far as any essential factor is deficient, there is a corresponding shortage in the yield. The yield rises if some

of the lacking factor is added, and goes up all the further, the lower it had previously fallen. Mitscherlich puts this as follows: the increase of crop produced by unit increment of the lacking factor is proportional to the decrement from the maximum. The advantage of this form is that it can be expressed mathematically:—

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = (A - y)k \text{ or } \log_e (A - y) = c - kx,$$

where y is the yield obtained when x = the amount of the factor present and A is the maximum yield obtainable if the factor were present in excess, this being calculated from the equation.¹

Mitscherlich's own experiments were made with oats grown in sand cultures supplied with excess of all nutrients excepting phosphate. This constituted the variable x : the yields actually attained when monocalcium phosphate was used and those calculated from the equation are shown in Table IV. (p. 25). It will be noticed that there is a kink in the curve at the point where 0.2 gramme of phosphate is supplied. This kink seems invariably to occur, and is dealt with on p. 34.

Experiments were also made with di- and tri-calcic phosphates and constants were calculated corresponding to k . The ratio of these constants $\frac{k_2 \text{ (di-calcic phosphate)}}{k_1 \text{ (mono-calcic phosphate)}}$ is a measure of the relative nutrient efficiency of the two salts: k is therefore called the efficiency value (*wirkungswert*). There are some very attractive possibilities about

¹ The method of calculation is as follows: Obtain two equations by substituting two of the numerical values of x and y obtained experimentally. Calling these numbers x_1, x_2 , etc., the equations are

$$\log_e (A - y_1) = c - kx_1 \quad \cdot \quad \cdot \quad \cdot \quad \cdot \quad (1)$$

$$\log_e (A - y_2) = c - kx_2 \quad \cdot \quad \cdot \quad \cdot \quad \cdot \quad (2)$$

$$\text{Then by subtraction } \log (A - y_1) - \log (A - y_2) = k(x_2 - x_1) \quad \cdot \quad \cdot \quad \cdot \quad (3)$$

Obtain another equation like (3) but select the numerical values so that

$$x_3 - x_2 = x_2 - x_1$$

$$\log_e (A - y_3) - \log_e (A - y_2) = k(x_2 - x_1) \quad \cdot \quad \cdot \quad \cdot \quad (4)$$

By subtracting (4) from (3) $\log_e (A - y_1) + \log_e (A - y_3) = 2 \log_e (A - y_2)$,

$$\text{i.e., } \frac{(A - y_3)(A - y_1)}{(A - y_2)^2} = 1.$$

Since y_1, y_2 , and y_3 are all numbers, the value of A is easily calculated.

The value of k is then found from equation (3)

$$k = \frac{\log (A - y_1) - \log_e (A - y_2)}{x_2 - x_1}.$$

As all the quantities on the right-hand side are numbers the value of k is readily obtained. This method is further discussed by Th. Pfeiffer, E. Blanck and M. Flügel, *Wasser und Licht als Vegetationsfactoren und ihre Beziehungen zum Gesetze von Minimum* (Landw. Versuchs-Stat., 1912, lxxvi., 169-236. See also 226 e.).

TABLE IV.—YIELD OF OATS WITH DIFFERENT DRESSINGS OF PHOSPHATES.
MITSCHERLICH (201b).

P ₂ O ₅ in Manure. Grams.	Dry Matter produced. Grams.	Crop calculated from formula. Grams.	Difference.	Difference × prob- able error.
0·00	9·8 ± 0·50	9·80		
0·05	19·3 ± 0·52	18·91	- 0·39	- 0·8
0·10	27·2 ± 2·00	26·64	- 0·56	- 0·3
0·20	41·0 ± 0·85	38·63	- 2·37	- 2·8
0·30	43·9 ± 1·12	47·12	+ 3·22	+ 2·9
0·50	54·9 ± 3·66	57·39	+ 2·49	+ 0·7
2·00	61·0 ± 2·24	67·64	+ 6·64	+ 3·0

this method of treatment since it gives a constant independent of the yield and having a definite mathematical meaning.¹

The various factors we shall have to study are: (1) oxygen supply, (2) light, (3) temperature, (4) water supply, (5) food supply, (6) harmful factors. We must also distinguish between their effect on the three stages of the plant's life, germination, active growth and maturation.

The first five factors must all be present, or growth will not go on; an insufficiency of any one will operate as a limiting factor and put an end to increased growth. Any injurious substance will act as shown in Fig. 2 (p. 23).

Oxygen.—The supply of oxygen to the leaves and stem is always sufficient under agricultural conditions, but the supply to the root and especially to the seed may often be inadequate. This is commonly brought about by the presence of too much water in the soil, by too compact a condition of the soil, or by excess of clay, whereby the perviousness is diminished. On the other hand, if the soil is too loose plants fail to get a proper root hold or a proper water supply. The Howards² have collected instances, in India of the marked effect of soil ventilation on crop growth.

Light.—H. T. Brown and Escombe (60) have shown that ordinary daylight is more than adequate for the purpose of assimilation, and can be reduced to one-twelfth without any ill effect. It thus appears that the plant is adapted to the worst light conditions it is likely to find. Whether, however, growth would be as good in this diminished illumination has not been shown; the experience of nurserymen indicates that it is not. Only those rays (chiefly red) absorbed by chlorophyll are effective. The light penetrating the smoky atmosphere of

¹ For an interesting application see *Zur Frage der Wurzelausscheidungen der Pflanze* (*Landw. Versuchs-Stat.*, 1913, 81, 467-474), in which Mitscherlich argues that the root excretions from clover cannot differ from those of oats.

² *Pusa Bull.*, 52, 1915.

towns appears to have lost much of its activity, whilst light that has passed through a green leaf is practically useless for vegetation. Thus one crop will not grow in the shade of another: a dense crop such as oats, wheat or maize shuts off the supply of light for smaller weeds, and effectually prevents their growth, "smothering them," in the language of the farmer. This is often the cheapest way of cleaning weedy land. A newly-mown lawn is yellowish if the grass has been allowed to grow rather long, while the interior of a compact tree like the beech is leafless. Forestry practices afford other illustrations: young woods are planted densely in order that the stems of the trees may be kept free from branches and the timber free from knots; later on, however, more light is desirable; heavy thinning of an oak, or beech, forest a few years before the final felling much increases the amount of growth. F. C. Schübeler (253) maintained that the extension of the hours of daylight during summer in northern latitudes more than counterbalanced the low temperatures, and actually shortened the time between sowing and harvest; Wille, however (309), has critically examined the evidence and finds nothing to support this view, all observed differences being readily explained by differences in variety of crop, or in local conditions of soil and climate.

Many years ago Siemens (265) pointed out the advantages of artificial light for greenhouse work, and Flammarion¹ has studied the effect of different coloured light on plants, but no method has yet come into practice.

Temperature.—Fig. 1*b* shows the general relationship between temperature and plant growth. The gradient of the curve is at first very steep, a slight temperature increase producing a marked increase of growth; above a certain temperature (which varies somewhat with the conditions) the rate of growth falls off; at higher temperatures the plant suffers, the various processes no longer work harmoniously, and the protoplasm loses efficiency till finally the plant dies.

For purposes of crop production the temperature range is limited by certain secondary effects. If the temperature is too low a purplish pigment appears in the leaf, and the plant grows so very slowly that it is liable in its early stages to succumb to insect pests, such as wireworms, and in its later stages to be cut down by autumn frosts before it has had time to ripen; if, on the other hand, the temperature is too high, the plant becomes taller than usual, less robust and, when much water is also supplied, liable to all the fungoid pests that give so much trouble in commercial greenhouses. Only over a comparatively

¹ *Bul. Mens. Off. Renseig. Agr.* [Paris], 1910, 9, 1261-1264.

restricted range of temperature is it possible to obtain the compact sturdy habit aimed at by the grower. This favourable range has not as yet been correlated with other properties of the plant and has to be discovered empirically; it is, on the whole, lower for the seedling than for the growing plant, but it is highest for the period of maturation. It varies for different crops: wheat requires a cool time for sowing but a hot time for ripening, barley requires a cool and oats a still cooler time throughout. It varies even for different varieties of the same crop; plant breeders are continually trying to evolve strains suited to particular temperature ranges, *e.g.*, wheats have been bred at Ottawa to ripen in the northern parts of Canada. During the course of the twenty-four hours the temperature may exceed the favourable limit for growth, even in our own climate. F. Darwin (77) has obtained some remarkable curves showing that the growth of vegetable marrows is often inversely proportional to the temperature. In hot, dry climates overheating is a very real danger, against which provision has to be made by transpiring water from the leaves. Other instances have been collected by forestry investigators: R. Hartig¹ has shown that defoliated spruces have a considerably higher temperature than normal spruces, and that loss of leaves may therefore prove very detrimental to the tree.

Water.—The relationship between the amount of growth and the supply of water is shown by Hellriegel's experiments (128, Table V.) with barley grown under favourable conditions in sand cultures.

TABLE V.—GROWTH OF BARLEY WITH VARYING SUPPLY OF WATER.
HELLRIEGEL (129a).

Amount of water . . .	5	10	20	30	40	60	80
Dry matter in grain, grams	nil	72	775	973	1051	996	877
Dry matter in straw, grams	12	180	550	820	964	1100	947
1 grain weighed, mgms.	—	23	35	36	34	32	32

100 represents the amount of water required to saturate the sand.

The yield rises as the water increases up to a certain point and then it falls off because the excess of water reduces the air supply for the roots. In natural soils a further complication sets in when too much water is present: certain reduction products are formed by bacteria in absence of air and have a direct toxic action on the plant.

¹ Tubeuf's *Forstlich Naturwiss. Zeitschrift*, 1892, p. 92.

Determinations have often been made of the so-called transpiration coefficients, *i.e.*, of the amount of water transpired for every unit of dry matter formed in the plant under particular conditions. It is not supposed that there is any direct causal relationship between the two quantities, nor is there any definite ratio, the amount of water transpired increasing with the temperature and to some extent with the water supply, but decreasing as the food supply increases. The relationship between food supply and water requirements is very interesting but not easily explained. The amount of soluble nutrient salts a plant takes up, and presumably also the concentration of the cell sap, increases with the concentration of these salts in the surrounding medium. It might be supposed that, as the concentration of the cell sap increases, so its vapour tension decreases and the amount of water lost by evaporation decreases also.¹ Drabble and Drabble's experiments, however, are against the view that transpiration is much influenced by the vapour pressure of the foliar cell sap [86].

Lawes at Rothamsted (163) found that about 250 units of water were transpired for every unit weight of dry matter formed; Hellriegel at Dham (129) obtained higher results, 300-350, Wollny at Munich still higher, 600-700 (318), and Leather at Pusa (167) the highest of all.² Briggs and Shantz (55*b*) working in Colorado find considerable variations not only between different crops, but between different varieties of the same crop. Grain crops had the lowest requirement, especially proso, millet, sorghum and maize. The late maturing sorts that make their best growth during the hottest and driest portion of the summer require on the whole less water than the earlier sorts, that grow during the earlier and cooler period of the year and ripen during midsummer. Sugar beet has almost as low a water requirement as corn, and next comes potatoes: grass and leguminous crops required most. Some of their results are given in Table VI.

Numerous determinations of transpiration coefficients are made at the Besentchuk Agricultural Experiment Station, Samara, Russia, situated in a district which suffers greatly from prolonged summer drought and excessive variations in crops. The coefficient is found to vary from year to year with the external meteorological conditions, being greatest in dry years and lowest in wet years; it is also higher

¹ Fitting (98) showed that the osmotic pressure of the sap of desert plants is extremely high; the vapour tension is therefore correspondingly low and the plant requires remarkably little water. A different result, however, was obtained by Livingstone (178).

² Some of Leather's figures exceed 1000. A review by Briggs of the extensive literature dealing with water requirements of plants will be found in Bul. 285, U.S. Dept. Agr. Bur. Plant Industry.

in wet soils than in dry ones. Toulai koff considers that it is these conditions rather than the biological character of the plant, that determine the magnitude of the coefficient (284).

Some of his results are:—

	1911.	1912.	1913.	1914.
Wheat, var. Poltawka	628.4	444.5	338.6	387.6
„ „ Bieloturka	756.3	475.9	316.5	397.1
Oats, „ Giant	655.1	510.3	347.4	369.9
Barley, „ Moravian	617.9	461.6	230.3	413.3

The year 1911 was excessively dry, 1913 was too rainy; 1912 was an average year and 1914 was rather dry (284).

TABLE VI.—TRANSPIRATION COEFFICIENTS, *i.e.*, AMOUNT OF WATER TRANSPIRED DURING THE PRODUCTION OF ONE PART OF DRY MATTER. BRIGGS AND SHANTZ (55*b*).

Crop.	Extreme Values for Different Varieties.	Mean Value for Genus.
Proso	268 to 341	293
Millet	261 to 444	310
Sorghum	285 to 467	322
Maize	315 to 413	368
Wheat	473 to 559	513
Barley	502 to 556	534
Oats	559 to 622	597
Flax	—	905
Sugar Beet	—	397
Potato	—	636
Cow pea	—	571
Clover	789 to 805	797
Lucerne	651 to 963	831
Grasses	—	861
Various native plants (<i>i.e.</i> weeds) .	277 to 1076	—

It is demonstrated, however, that a difference does exist between different varieties of the same crop and that there are considerable prospects for breeding or selecting varieties specially suited for dry conditions. This work is already in hand with good results in Australia, the Western states and elsewhere: much more can be done. Unfortunately no correlation has been traced between water requirements and plant structure, so that the breeder has no guide in his selections except actual and tedious trials.

The effect of variations in water and food supply on the water requirements of plants was studied by Hellriegel, and subsequently by von Seelhorst at Göttingen (256-260), who has worked extensively at the various water relationships of plants. His results with oats are given in Table VII*a*.

TABLE VIIa.—EFFECT OF VARYING WATER SUPPLY¹ AND FOOD SUPPLY ON THE WATER REQUIREMENTS OF OATS. VON SEELHORST (258).

	Dry matter produced, grams.			Total water required, grams.			Water required per gram of dry matter.		
	Soil moist.	Soil moister.	Soil still moister.	Soil moist.	Soil moister.	Soil still moister.	Soil moist.	Soil moister.	Soil still moister.
No manure .	39·6	48·8	52·6	10·215	15·245	16·290	259·9	312·9	307·1
Complete manure .	49·9	86·7	95·1	11·170	20·490	23·030	225·1	236·8	231·6

Similar results have been obtained by Wilfarth (Table VIIb.), (308) with sugar beets grown in pots of soil containing known but varying amounts of nitrate.

TABLE VIIb.—EFFECT OF VARYING FOOD SUPPLY ON THE WATER REQUIREMENTS OF SUGAR BEET. WILFARTH.

Nitrogen supplied, grams .	·42	1·26	2·10	2·94	3·36	3·78
Weight of dry matter produced, grams .	23·0	73·9	96·5	132·4	167·6	188·8
Water transpired, grams .	13100	34570	39420	55190	62600	72280
Stated as inches of rain .	3·6	9·4	10·7	15·8	17·0	19·6
Water used per gram of dry matter formed .	569	468	409	417	374	383

Two deductions may be drawn: (1) water is economised by increasing the food supply; (2) the total amount of water required during the growing season may be greater than is supplied by the rain, in which case the balance must be otherwise provided, or the food cannot be utilised.

Over large areas of the world the rainfall is insufficient, and recourse is had to irrigation. In endeavouring to ascertain the best way of irrigating crops, two considerations have to be kept in view: (1) excessive watering has secondary injurious effects on the soil, such as the deterioration of the physical condition, the accumulation of alkali salts, or the formation of toxic reduction products; (2) the requirements of the plant are not always the same, more water being needed during the period of active growth than during germination or

¹ The variations in water supply are:—

	May 5-May 12.	May 12-June 1.	June 1-July 21.
Soil moist	54·4	54·4	44·8
Soil moister	59·2	64·0	59·2
Soil still moister	64·0	73·6	73·6

where 100 = saturation of the soil.

ripening. Much more work is required from the physiological side before definite rules could be laid down. Wheat would form a suitable plant for study, since it is the crop most commonly grown on irrigated land. In the meantime, experiments like those conducted by the Punjab Irrigation Department¹ have shown that the cultivator everywhere tends to take too much water, with loss not only to others on the same irrigation system, but also to himself.

The amount of water in the soil has a marked effect on the character of the plant, the time of ripening, and the composition of the grain.² As the water supply increases, so the extent of the leaf surface increases; while a diminished water supply is met by a smaller leaf surface, admitting of less transpiration. Thus on moist soils—clays and loams—the plants usually have large wide leaves and grow to a considerable size, whilst on the drier sands the vegetation is narrow leaved and more stunted. A copious water supply leads to a more protracted growth and to a retardation of the ripening processes; indeed in very wet districts grain-crops are grown only with difficulty, if at all, because ripening may be so long delayed that frosts supervene and damage the crop.

Water supply and temperature are the two chief factors determining the distribution of crops. In the warm dry eastern counties of Great Britain crops are grown for seed; great quantities of wheat and barley are grown in Norfolk, Suffolk, and the Isle of Thanet; mangold seed and turnip seed is produced in East Kent. Wetter districts are more favourable for swedes and oats; very wet districts for grass. The warm, moist south-west of Cornwall is very favourable for early vegetables, cabbage, cauliflower, etc., whilst the cooler Lothians are well suited to potatoes. It is possible by suitable operations to modify somewhat both the temperature and the water content of the soil, and so to make the soil conditions rather more favourable for any particular crop.

Abbe (1) has discussed the relation between climates and crops in the United States; and the Livingstons³ have dealt in detail with the

¹ These and similar experiments are discussed by A. and G. L. C. Howard in *Wheat in India: Its Production, Varieties, and Improvement* (Imperial Department of Agriculture, India, 1909). German experience is recorded in *Erfahrung bei der Ackerbewässerung* (*Jahrb. Deutsch. Landw. Gesell.*, 1913, 28, 76).

² Numerous papers have been published on the subject: see Shutt (264), Seelhorst (260), and Pfeiffer, Blanck and Friske (224e).

³ Livingston, B. E., and Livingston, Grace J., *Temperature Coefficients in Plant Geography and Climatology* (*Bot. Gazette*, 1913, 56, 349-375. Abs. in *Journ. Ecol.*, 1914, 2, 179).

effect of temperature on the distribution of plants. Excellent results have been obtained by Broounoff (56) in establishing "critical periods" of rainfall for various crops.

Food.—The nutrition of plants is complicated by the fact that plants synthesise their own food from various substances taken out of the air and the soil. It is common in farmers' lectures to speak of these as the actual foods, but the student must be perfectly clear in his own mind that they are only the raw materials out of which the food is made. We are here concerned only with the supply of raw materials and not at all with the way in which the plant uses them. These raw materials consist of carbon dioxide, water, oxygen, and suitable compounds of nitrogen, phosphorus, sulphur, potassium, calcium, magnesium, iron, and, apparently, manganese, silicon, sodium. We have already considered the first three; it remains only to be said that the amount of carbon dioxide in the air is subject to slight variations which may be a factor of importance in crop production. Brown and Escombe (61) found that the amount varied at Kew from 2.43 to 3.60¹ volumes per 10,000 volumes of air, the average being 2.94. Taking the month of July as an example, the following average values were found:—

	1898.	1899.	1900.	1901.
CO ₂ in 10,000 volumes of air .	2.83	2.88	2.86	3.11

It is highly probable that the plant as a whole would respond to variations of this order, making greater or less growth as the amount of carbon dioxide rises or falls.

Nitrogen.—Of all the nitrogen compounds yet investigated nitrates are the best, and, in natural conditions, probably the only nitrogenous food for non-leguminous plants. The seedling still drawing its sustenance from the seed lives on other compounds: H. T. Brown (62) found that asparagine was the most effective nutrient for the detached embryo of barley, followed by other relatively simple substances like nitrates, glutamic and aspartic acids, ammonium sulphate, etc., the more complex substances being less useful. The experimental study of the nitrogen nutrition of adult plants is complicated by the difficulty of growing plants under sterile conditions and thus obviating the decompositions effected by bacteria; much of the earlier work is vitiated by this circumstance. Later work has satisfactorily shown that ammonia is readily assimilated from solutions of ammonium sulphate, if the concentration is not too high; but even 0.1 per cent. was found injurious by Mazé (196). Krüger (157) concludes that ammonium

¹ Only on one occasion was so high a number obtained.

sulphate is less beneficial than sodium nitrate for mangolds, both compounds are equally useful for oats, barley and mustard, while ammonium sulphate is better for potatoes. Hutchinson and Miller (140a) found that peas assimilate nitrates and ammonium salts equally well, while wheat showed a decided preference for nitrates.

None of these preferences has been correlated with any other property of the plants, nor is it easy to explain the fact, on which all experimenters agree, that plants fed on ammonium salts contain a higher percentage of nitrogen than those fed on nitrates (Table VIII.).

TABLE VIII.—PERCENTAGE OF NITROGEN IN DRY MATTER OF PLANTS.

	Fed on nitrates.	Fed on ammonium salts.	Observer.
Maize . . .	3'17	3'43	Mazé (196 and 197)
Mustard . . .	2'87	3'48	Krüger (157)
Oats . . .	1'80	2'05	" "
Wheat . . .	1'91	2'17	Hutchinson and Miller (140)

The fact indicates that each unit of nitrogen taken up as ammonia is less effective in the growth process than a unit of nitrogen taken as nitrate, and the plants in spite of their high nitrogen content are really suffering from nitrogen starvation.

Nitrites are also assimilated so long as the solution is not too concentrated or too acid.¹

In spite of a considerable amount of work it is not known whether other nitrogen compounds are assimilated by plants. That many other compounds serve as nitrogen nutrients even without the intervention of bacteria seems to be certain (140b), but it has never been shown whether assimilation of the compounds as a whole takes place, or whether there is decomposition at the surface of the root. Most of the supposed assimilated compounds are as a matter of fact more or less easily hydrolysable, or otherwise decomposable, with formation of ammonia, and the decomposition will obviously proceed as fast as the ammonia is removed by the plant. The two factors that determine how far a given compound serves as a nitrogen nutrient are: (1) the ease with which it splits off ammonia, (2) the effect on the plant of the other decomposition products: if these happen to be toxic the whole process stops as soon as they have sufficiently accumulated.

The normal nitrogenous food of plants is, however, a nitrate, and there is a close connection between the amount supplied and the amount of plant growth which is well shown in Hellriegel and Wilfarth's (130a) experiments (Table IX.).

¹ See Perciabosco and Rosso, *Staz. Speriment. Agrar. ital.*, 1909, xlii., 5.

TABLE IX.—EFFECT OF NITROGENOUS FOOD SUPPLY ON THE GROWTH OF BARLEY IN SAND CULTURES. HELLRIEGEL.

Milligrams of nitrogen supplied . . .	0	56	112	168	280	420
Dry matter in crop, grams . . .	742	4856	10803	17528	21289	28727
Increased yield for each extra 56 mgms. nitrogen . . .	—	4114	5947	6725	1880	2975
Grain, per cent. of dry matter in crop . . .	11.9	37.9	38	42.6	38.6	43.4
Weight of one grain, mgms. . .	19.5	30	33	32	21	30

The figures are plotted in Fig. 3. Similar results are obtained on the field plots at Rothamsted (Table X.).

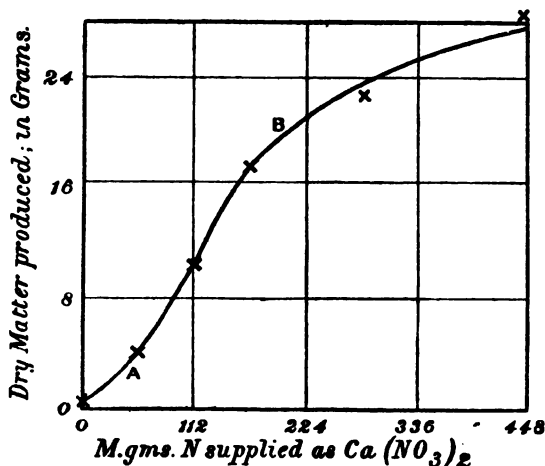


FIG. 3.—Effect of Nitrogenous Food Supply on the Growth of Barley. (Hellriegel.)

TABLE X.—BROADBALK WHEATFIELD, AVERAGE YIELDS, FIFTY-SIX YEARS, 1852-1907.

	Plot 5.	Plot 6.	Plot 7.	Plot 8.
Nitrogen supplied in manure, lb. per acre . . .	0	43	86	129
Total produce (straw and grain), lb. per acre . . .	2315	3948	5833	7005
Increase for each 43 lb. nitrogen . . .	—	1633	1885	1172

The increasing effects produced up to a certain point by successive increments of nitrogen may be due to the circumstance that the additional nitrate not only increases the concentration of nitrogenous food in the soil, but also increases the amount of root, *i.e.*, of absorbing surface, and of leaf, *i.e.*, assimilating surface. The process thus resembles autocatalysis, where one of the products of the reaction acts as a catalyser and hastens the reaction. The increase does not go on indefinitely because some limiting factor steps in.

The effect of nitrogen supply on the grain is very marked. In Table IX. it is seen that the grain formed, when nitrogenous food is wholly withheld, is only two-thirds of the normal weight per individual.

The first addition of nitrate causes a marked rise in the weight per grain and the proportion of grain to total produce, but successive additions cause no further rise. Indeed other experiments prove that excess of nitrogenous food causes the proportion of grain to fall off somewhat. The leaf and the general character of growth are affected to a much greater extent. Nitrogen starvation causes yellowing of the leaf, especially in cold spring weather, absence of growth, and a poor starved appearance generally: abundance of nitrogen, on the other hand, leads to a bright green colour, to a copious growth of soft, sappy tissue liable to insect and fungoid pests (apparently because of the thinning of the walls and some change in composition of the sap) and to retarded ripening: the effects resemble those produced by abundant water supply. A series of plants receiving varying amounts of nitrate are thus at somewhat different stages of their development at any given time, even though they were all sown on the same day, those supplied with large quantities of nitrate being less advanced than the rest. If they could all be kept under constant conditions till they had ripened this difference might finally disappear, but in crop production it is not possible much to delay the harvest owing to the fear of damage by autumn frosts, so that the retardation is of great practical importance. Seed crops like barley that are cut dead ripe are not supplied with much nitrate, but oats, which are cut before being quite ripe, can receive larger quantities. All cereal crops, however, produce too much straw if the nitrate supply is excessive, and the straw does not commonly stand up well, but is beaten down or "lodged" by wind and rain. Swede and potato crops also produce more leaf, but not proportionately more root or tuber, as the nitrogen supply increases; no doubt the increased root would follow, but the whole process is sooner or later stopped by the advancing season—the increased root does in fact follow in the case of the late-growing mangold. Tomatoes, again, produce too much leaf and too little fruit if they receive excess of nitrate. On the other hand, crops grown solely for the sake of their leaves are wholly improved by increased nitrate supply: growers of cabbages have learned that they can not only improve the size of their crops by judicious applications of nitrates, but they can also impart the tenderness and bright green colour desired by purchasers. Unfortunately the softness of the tissues prevents the cabbage standing the rough handling of the market. These qualitative differences are of great importance in agriculture and horticulture.

Three cases are illustrated in Table XI.: wheat shows increases in straw greater than those in grain as the nitrogen supply is increased;

white turnips show increases in leaf greater than those in root, but mangolds show substantially the same increase both in leaf and root, because their growing period is so much longer than that of the other crops, continuing until the end of October.

TABLE XI.—EFFECT OF VARYING SUPPLY OF NITROGENOUS MANURE ON THE GROWTH OF CROPS. ROTHAMSTED.

Nitrogen in manure, lb. per acre.	Wheat, 1000 lb. per acre (1852-1864).		Nitrogen in manure, lb. per acre.	White Turnips, 1000 lb. per acre (1845-1849).		Nitrogen in manure, lb. per acre.	Mangolds, 1000 lb. per acre (1906-1910).	
	Grain.	Straw.		Roots	Leaves.		Roots.	Leaves.
none	1'06	1'86	none	18'37	6'05	none	11'84	2'55
43	1'68	3'03	47	22'18	9'63	86	40'12	8'51
86	2'18	4'28	137	22'96	13'78	1'4	65'67	13'88
129	2'27	4'78	—	—	—	—	—	—
172	2'29	5'22	—	—	—	—	—	—

The actual increase of growth brought about by successive increments of nitrogenous food depends on the amount of water and other nutrients, on the temperature, and so on; any of these may act as limiting factors. Table XII. shows the crops obtained on some of the Rothamsted mangold plots; in one case the supply of potassium is so small that it becomes the limiting factor, in the other sufficient potassium is supplied.

TABLE XII.—INFLUENCE OF POTASSIUM SALTS ON THE ACTION OF NITROGENOUS MANURES. ROTHAMSTED.

	Average weights, Mangolds, 1906-1910.					
	Roots, 1000 lb. per acre.			Leaves, 1000 lb. per acre.		
Insufficient potassium (Series 5)	11'97	14'68	18'62	2'59	7'25	7'75
Sufficient potassium (Series 4)	11'84	40'12	65'67	2'55	8'51	13'88
Nitrogen supplied in manure, lb. per acre	—	86 ¹	134 ²	—	86 ¹	184 ²

The effect of varying water supply is more conveniently studied in pot experiments than in the field, since any comparison between yields in wet and dry seasons is complicated by the great differences in temperature conditions. Tucker and von Seelhorst (256) put up three series of soil pots in which the water was kept at a definite amount; one was just moist, another moister, and a third still moister. These were then each subdivided into three others, one receiving no

¹ From 400 lb. ammonium salts.

² From 400 lb. ammonium salts and 200 lb. rape cake.

nitrogen compounds, another one dose, and the third two doses. Oats were sown in all nine sets with results that are given in Table XIII.

TABLE XIII.—INFLUENCE OF WATER SUPPLY ON THE EFFECTIVENESS OF MANURES.
VON SEELHORST AND TUCKER (256):

DRY WEIGHT OF OAT CROP.

Manuring.	Nitrogen Series.			Increased Crop for	
	KP.	KPN.	KP ₂ N.	1st Increment of N.	and Increment of N.
I. Moist soil ¹	67.5	68.5	68.5	1.0	0
II. Moister soil	83.6	93.4	94.0	9.8	.6
III. Wettest soil	99.5	119.5	135.0	20.0	15.5

K = 1 gram of K₂O as K₂CO₃ per pot; P = 1 gram of P₂O₅ as Ca(H₂PO₄)₂ per pot; N = .5 gram of N as NaNO₃ per pot.

Manuring.	Phosphate Series.				Increased Crop for		Increase for Complete Manure.
	None	KN.	KNP.	KN ₂ P.	1st Increment of P.	and Increment of P.	
I. Moist soil ¹	41.5	38.5	68.5	79.2	30.0	10.7	27
II. Moister soil	47.2	40.0	93.4	108.0	53.4	14.6	46.2
III. Wettest soil	68.5	63.5	119.5	127.5	56.0	8	51

When only little water is present the added .5 gram of nitrogen is without effect, the supply in the soil being sufficient for the crop needs: the water and not the nitrogen is the limiting factor. When more water is added the plant can make more growth, and can therefore utilise more nitrogen: the added .5 gram now raises the crop by 10 grams. Again, however, the water supply sets a limit, and the second .5 gram of nitrogen is without effect. When a liberal supply of water is added the first .5 gram of nitrogen gives 20 grams of crop, double the previous increment; but even this does not represent the whole possibility, for the second .5 gram of nitrogen gives a still further increase of 15.5 grams.

The results of the phosphate series are somewhat different in detail, but not in principle. The first dose of P₂O₅ in the dry soil gives an increased crop, and so does the second, the first not having been large enough; in the wetter soil, however, the increase is much larger.

¹ The moist soil contained 14.35 per cent. of water (41.6 per cent. of saturation), the moister soil 15.41 per cent. at the beginning, increasing to 18.43 (51.7 per cent. of saturation) as the experiment proceeded, and the wettest soil, 16.44 per cent. at the beginning, increasing to 22.59 per cent. (63.7 per cent. of saturation).

There is a still further increase in the wettest soil, but less than before, some other limiting factor now coming in.

These relations are shown in the curves of Fig. 4, the ordinary series expressing the operation of a limiting factor; they would more properly be expressed by a surface. From the practical point of view the important result is that a given increase in the food supply may produce no increased growth, small increase, or a larger increase, according to the extent of the water supply.

Phosphorus.—Phosphates are by far the most efficient phosphorus foods known for plants. The relationship between phosphorus supply and growth has been measured by E. A. Mitscherlich (p. 24) in a series of experiments on oats grown in sand with each of the three calcium

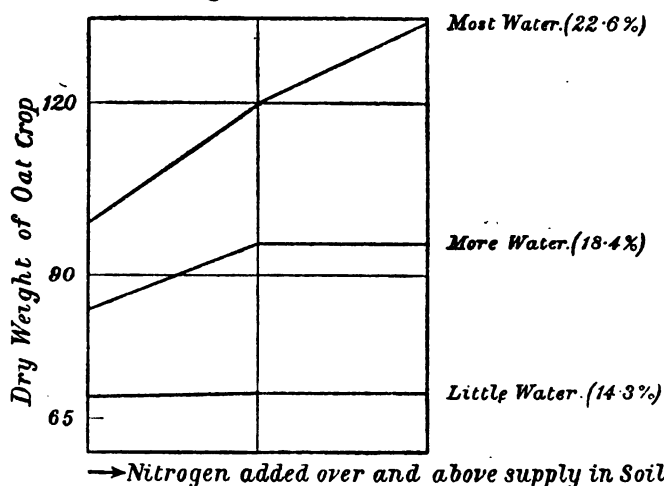


FIG. 4.—Influence of Water Supply on the Effectiveness of Manures. (Von Seelhorst and Tucker.)

phosphates. For equal weights of the three salts the relative efficiencies corresponded with the basicity; for equal weights of P_2O_5 , however, the values were 2.66 : 2.31 : 1.65. This was in sand cultures; in soils different efficiencies were found: thus for the mono-phosphate the values were:—

Sand.	Soil 1.	Soil 2.	Soil 3.
2.66	1.80	1.74	2.40

The effect of a phosphate on the crop is twofold. In the early stages of growth it promotes root formation in a remarkable way. So long ago as 1847 Lawes (160) wrote: "Whether or not superphosphate of lime owes much of its effect to its chemical actions in the soil, it is certainly true that it causes a much enhanced development of the *under-ground* collective apparatus of the plant, especially of *lateral* and *fibrous* root, distributing a complete network to a considerable distance around

the plant, and throwing innumerable mouths to the surface". Dressings of phosphates are particularly valuable wherever greater root development is required than the soil conditions normally bring about. They are invaluable on clay soils, where roots do not naturally form well, but, on the other hand, they are less needed on sands, because great root growth takes place on these soils in any case. They are used for all root crops like swedes, turnips, potatoes, and mangolds, in their absence swedes and turnip roots will not swell but remain permanently dwarfed like radishes: the introduction of superphosphate as a fertiliser revolutionised agriculture on some of the heavier soils by allowing better growth of these crops. Phosphates are needed also for shallow-rooted crops with a short period of growth, like barley. Further, they are beneficial wherever drought conditions are likely to come on, because they induce the young roots to grow rapidly into the moister layers of soil below the surface; probably, as Hall has suggested, this explains the marked effect of superphosphate on wheat in the dry regions of Australia.

Later on in the life of the plant phosphates hasten the ripening processes, thus producing the same effect as a deficiency of water, but to a less extent; for this reason they are applied to the wheat crop in some of the northern districts of England to bring on the harvest a few days earlier and obviate risk of loss by bad weather. The northern limit of growth of several crops may in like manner be extended. This ripening effect is well shown on the barley plots at Rothamsted; crops receiving phosphates are golden yellow in colour while the others are still green.

But these effects, important as they are, are nothing like as striking as those shown by nitrogen compounds. There is no obvious change in the appearance of the plant announcing deficiency or excess of phosphate¹ like those changes showing nitrogen starvation or excess; the hastening of maturity is only seen when there is a control plot unsupplied with phosphates and does not even lead to an increase in the proportion of grain borne by the plant. On the Rothamsted plots supplied with nitrogen and potassium compounds, but no phosphate, the grain formed 44.9 per cent. of the total produce during the first ten years of the experiment (1852-1861), and almost exactly the same proportion (44.7 per cent.) during the fifth ten years (1892-1901) when phosphate starvation was very pronounced. Even in sand cultures the difference is not very marked, Hellriegel (1306) grew barley with varying supplies

¹ Barley grown in water cultures without phosphorus compounds acquires a red colour in the stem, but this is not commonly seen in the field.

of phosphate with results given in Table XIV. In absence of phosphate no grain was formed; when a little was added grain formation proceeded normally, and the resulting grain was nearly full weight per individual; as the phosphate supply increased the percentage of grain increased, but soon reached a maximum beyond which it would not go.

TABLE XIV.—EFFECT OF VARYING PHOSPHATE SUPPLY ON THE GROWTH OF BARLEY IN SAND CULTURES. HELLRIEGL (1306).

Weight of P_2O_5 supplied, mgms. per pot . . .	0	14.2	28.4	56.8	85.2	113.6	142	213	284
Weight of dry matter in crop, grams per pot . .	1.856	8.254	12.613	19.505	19.549	20.195	18.667	17.785	31.306
Grain, per cent. of dry matter . . .	—	22.4	31.8	38.4	41.6	43.8	41.3	40.1	43.4
Weight of one grain, mgms. . .	—	27	29	38	34	41	38	30	34

It is in the total growth of straw and of grain that the effect of phosphate is manifested as shown in Table XV.

TABLE XV.—RESULTS OF WITHHOLDING PHOSPHATES, POTASSIUM COMPOUNDS, AND NITROGEN COMPOUNDS FROM BARLEY. HOOS FIELD EXPERIMENTS, ROTHAMSTED.

		Yield of Grain, 1000 lb. per acre.						
Plot.		5 years, 1852-56.	5 years, 1857-61.	10 years, 1862-71.	10 years, 1872-81.	10 years, 1882-91.	10 years, 1892-1901.	10 years, 1902-11.
7	Dung	2.31	2.78	3.00	2.88	2.66	2.56	2.50
A 4	Complete manure (salts of NH ₄ , K, and P)	2.47	2.71	2.67	2.34	2.24	2.02	2.25
A 3	No phosphates . .	2.27	1.71	1.99	1.68	1.38	1.26	1.23
A 2	No potassium . .	2.42	2.70	2.76	2.29	2.01	1.63	1.81
O 4	No nitrogen . . .	1.86	1.57	1.39	.98	.92	.74	.94

		Yield of Straw, 1000 lb. per acre.						
Plot.		5 years, 1852-56.	5 years, 1857-61.	10 years, 1862-71.	10 years, 1872-81.	10 years, 1882-91.	10 years, 1892-1901.	10 years, 1902-11.
A 4	Dung Complete manure (salts of NH ₄ , K, and P)	2.82	3.15	3.35	3.37	3.28	3.35	3.54
A 3	No phosphates . .	3.29	3.17	3.14	2.63	2.61	2.36	2.83
A 2	No potassium . .	2.86	2.03	2.20	1.75	1.64	1.56	1.75
A 2	No potassium . .	3.21	3.03	3.07	2.30	2.20	1.90	2.16
O 4	No nitrogen . . .	2.03	1.58	1.42	.95	.94	.90	1.39

These results are plotted in Fig. 5. The effect of phosphate starvation shows itself in depressing the yield of straw and of grain, the straw being the first to suffer. Potash starvation takes longer to set in, not because potassium is less necessary but because the soil contains

Crop Yields - Hundreds of lbs. per Acre.

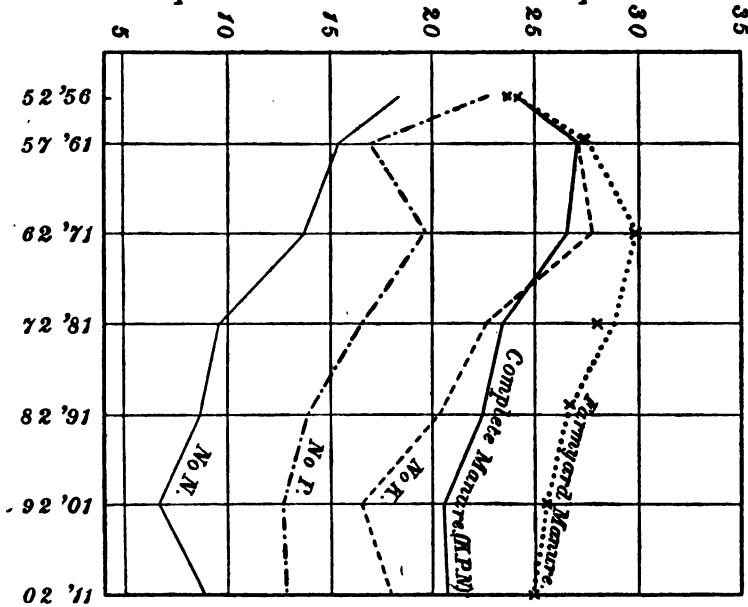


FIG. 5B.—Effect on Yield of Straw of withholding various Nutrients from Barley. (Hoos Field, Rothamsted.)

Crop Yields - Hundreds of lbs. per Acre

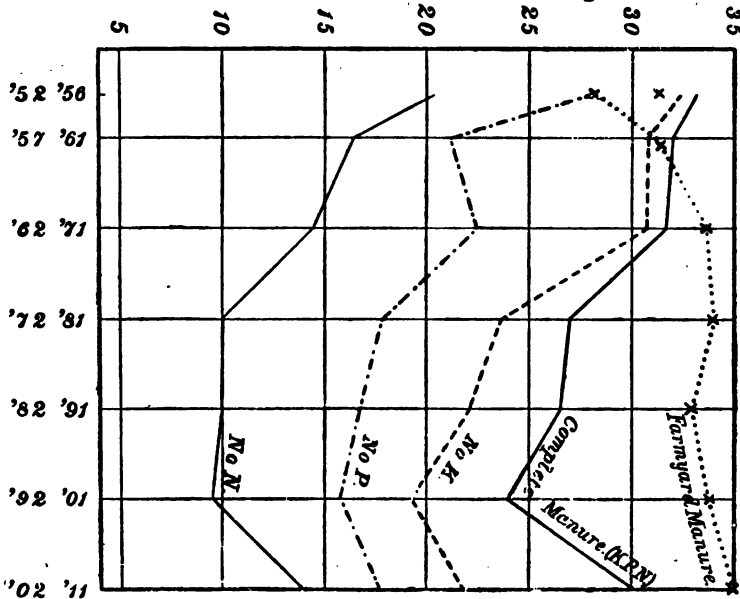


FIG. 5A.—Effect on Yield of Grain of withholding various Nutrients from Barley. (Hoos Field, Rothamstead.)

a larger quantity; it also affects the straw first. Nitrogen starvation sets in at once, rapidly bringing both grain and straw down to a very low level.

It is difficult to get behind these effects and ascertain their causes. The function of phosphoric acid in the cell is not easy to discover; even when the problem is reduced to its simplest state by experimenting with *spirogyra* in culture solutions little more has been ascertained than that phosphates are wanted for mitotic cell division, doubtless because phosphorus is a constituent of the nucleus, and also for the normal transformations of starch. Loew (181) found that fat and albumin accumulated in absence of phosphates, but the colour was yellow and there was no cell division; as soon as a trace of potassium phosphate was added, however, energetic cell division took place. Reed (236) showed that starch was formed in absence of phosphorus, but did not change to sugars; erythrodextrin was formed instead and also cellulose.

The effects of phosphates in raising the quality and feeding value of the crop are very great. The most nutritious pastures in England and the best dairy pastures in France are those richest in phosphates. Paturel¹ has also shown that the best wines contain most P_2O_5 (about 0.3 gram per litre), the second and lower qualities containing successively less. Further, when the vintages for different years were arranged in order of their P_2O_5 content a list was obtained almost identical with the order assigned by the wine merchants.

This close connection between cell division and phosphate supply may account for the large amount of phosphorus compounds stored up in the seed for the use of the young plant, and also the relatively large amounts of phosphate taken from the soil during the early life of the plant.

Potassium.—Hellriegel has shown (Table XVI.) that equivalent

TABLE XVI.—EFFECT OF POTASSIUM SALTS ON THE GROWTH OF BARLEY.
HELLRIGEL (130b).

Mgms. of K_2O per pot Dry matter formed when—	0	23.5	47	70.5	94	188	282
KCl was given . . .	2.271	5.414	9.024	9.963	15.322	21.246	24.417
K_2SO_4	2.549	5.140	5.283	13.363	14.768	21.593	23.774
KNO_3	—	4.552	6.621	9.949	14.576	21.499	24.206
2KH_2PO_4	—	4.687	6.346	9.931	12.377	17.171	—
K_2HPO_4	—	—	6.684	—	11.736	20.255	—
Average	2.410	4.948	6.791	10.801	13.755	20.357	24.132

¹ *Bull. Soc. Nat. Agric.*, 1911, p. 977.

² Lupines, however, could not tolerate the acid conditions set up when the monophosphate was supplied (p. 138 in (130a)).

amounts of the soluble compounds of potassium have practically all the same nutritive value.

The effect of potassium compounds is more localised than that of phosphates, so that potash starvation can be more readily detected. The colour of the leaf becomes abnormal ; the potash-starved grass plots at Rothamsted have a poor, dull colour, as also have the mangold plots ; the leaves also tend to die early at the tips. The stem also is weaker so that the plant does not stand up well ; this is apparently a turgidity effect, although anatomical changes have been observed. The most striking effect, however, is the loss of efficiency in making starch, pointed out long ago by Nobbe (215) ; either photosynthesis or translocation—it is not yet clear which—is so dependent on potassium salts that the whole process comes abruptly to an end without them. Mangolds, sugar beets, potatoes, and other sugar- and starch-forming crops reduce their production of sugar with decreasing potassium supply even before the leaf area has been diminished. Thus, in the mangold experiments of Table XII. (p. 36), 7255 lb. of leaf give rise to 14,684 lb. of root where potash food is deficient, while very little more leaf, 8508 lb., give rise to nearly three times as much root, 40,128 lb., where more potassium salts are supplied. The harmful effect of potash starvation on carbohydrate production does not seem to be the result of a pathological condition of the chloroplastids. Reed found that they remained normal for two months and even increased in numbers in potash-starved algæ.

A second effect is on the formation of grain ; unlike phosphates and nitrates, potassium compounds have a very marked effect on the weight of the individual grains, as may be seen by comparing Table XVII. with the corresponding Tables IX. (p. 34) and XIV. (p. 40) ; indeed to withhold potash is the surest way of producing stunted grain. These stunted grains are often sterile on the potash-starved grass plots at Rothamsted.

TABLE XVII.—EFFECT OF POTASSIUM SALTS ON THE DEVELOPMENT OF BARLEY.
HELLRIGEL (130b).

K ₂ O supplied, mgs. . . .	0	23·5	47	70·5	94	188	282
Dry matter in crop, grams .	2·271	5·414	9·024	11·636	15·302	20·916	29·766
Grain, per cent of dry matter	—	4·8	21·5	27·2	30·1	38·5	42·7
Weight of one grain, mgs. .	—	5	9·5	13	17	26	34

Lastly, the tone and vigour of the plant are very dependent on the potassium supply ; potash-starved plants are the first to suffer in a bad season, or to succumb to disease. The Broadbalk wheat plots receiving

44 SOIL CONDITIONS AND PLANT GROWTH

potassium salts give conspicuously better results than the others whenever the year is unfavourable to plant growth; taking the yield on the unmanured plot as an index of the character of the season, we obtain the following results for a series of good and of bad years respectively:—

TABLE XVIII.—YIELD OF WHEAT IN THOUSAND POUNDS PER ACRE. ROTHAMSTED.

	Plot No.	In Nine Bad Seasons. ¹		In Nine Good Seasons. ¹	
		Grain.	Straw.	Grain.	Straw.
Unmanured	4	.55	.87	.88	1.08
Insufficient potash	11	1.06	1.86	1.51	2.20
Sufficient potash	13	1.70	3.02	1.98	3.16
Percentage increase due to potash . .	—	60.3	62.3	31.1	43.6

In the bad years the average rainfall was 32.55 inches (harvest years, September-August), while in the good years it was 27.10 inches; the badness of the season may be connected with the high rainfall and corresponding low temperature. Similar results are obtained, however, if other unfavourable conditions set in.

The improvement in tone is well exemplified by the power of resisting disease. At Rothamsted the potash-starved wheat is badly attacked by rust, the mangold leaves by *Uromyces betæ*, and the grass by various other fungi, while the surrounding plots, equally liable to infection, remain healthy. Growers of tomatoes under glass have found that the ravages of various fungi and of eelworms are much diminished by manuring the plants with potassium salts.

Next to the sugar-producing plants, the leguminosæ seem to stand most in need of potassium salts. The potash-starved grass plots at Rothamsted contain notably less clover than those fully manured, the actual depression fluctuating according to the season. Some of the weeds, especially the sorrel, require a good supply of potash.

Potassium apparently plays some part in protein synthesis in plants, but this effect is not easily studied since it can only be demonstrated in absence of light (Stoklasa, 276*a*).

In absence of potassium salts mitotic cell division does not go to completion; Reed observed that the cell and nucleus both elongate, but actual division does not occur (236).

It is not at present possible to say whether all these phenomena are

¹ The bad years were 1867, '71, '72, '75, '76, '77, '79, '86, '88; the good years were 1868, '69, '70, '81, '83, '85, '87, '89, '91.

different manifestations of one and the same specific action of potassium in the plant, or whether there are several different causes at work.

Sodium does not appear to be essential even to salt marsh plants, although *salicornia* did better in presence of salt than in its absence (Halket, 117). It can partially, but not completely, replace potassium as a plant nutrient; it thus delays the setting in of potash starvation, but will not keep it off altogether.¹ Hellriegel (1306) found that sodium salts always gave increases in crop even when potassium salts were present in quantity.

TABLE XIX.—EFFECT OF SODIUM SALTS WITH SMALL AND WITH LARGE AMOUNTS OF POTASSIUM SALTS ON THE GROWTH OF BARLEY. HELLRIEGEL (1306).

K ₂ O supplied, mgs.	0	94	188	282	376
Dry matter produced when sodium salts added	4·925	23·019	32·278	36·535	38·270
Dry matter produced when no sodium salts added	2·658	15·638	29·724	34·897	36·281
Difference due to sodium salts	2·267	7·381	2·554	1·638	1·989

Breazeale (516) has more recently obtained similar results in water cultures. It is well ascertained in farming practice that sodium salts can be used with great effect as manures wherever there is any deficiency of potash in the soil.²

Lithium salts, on the other hand, have a toxic action on plants. Gaunersdorper's older experiments (102) have been confirmed by J. A. Voelcker (290), who found that amounts of the chloride, sulphate, or nitrate, corresponding to ·00375 per cent. of the metal were distinctly injurious to wheat; smaller amounts, however, appeared to cause an increased growth.

Cæsium salts are less harmful (184, 290).

Calcium is an essential plant food, the function of which was first carefully studied by von Raumer (234), but has not yet been satisfactorily cleared up. Nothing can be inferred from the fact that, like potassium, it occurs more in the leaf than in the seed. It certainly gives tone and vigour to the plant; gypsum is used in alkali regions to counteract the harmful effects of excessive amounts of saline matter in the soil. It also appears to stimulate root production: if calcium is withheld from water cultures the size of the root is much reduced.

¹ A demonstration of this well-known fact, with complete analytical data, is recorded by Krüger in *Zeitschr. Ver. Dert. Zuckerindus.*, 1914, 694-702.

² See also a paper by B. Schulze, *Beitrag zur Frage der Düngung mit Natronsalzen* (*Landw. Versuchs-Stat.*, 1913, 79-80, 431).

Its most remarkable effects are seen in water cultures. Curiously enough, single salts of potassium, magnesium, sodium, etc., are toxic to plants, while a mixture of salts is not. Calcium salts are by much the most powerful reducers of this toxic effect. Thus Kearney and Cameron (145a) found that a root of *Lupinus albus* was just killed when immersed in '00125 N magnesium sulphate solution (7 parts per 100,000), but the effect was modified by added salts, as shown in Table XX.

TABLE XX.—EFFECT ON VARIOUS SALTS IN REDUCING THE TOXICITY OF MgSO_4 .
KEARNEY AND CAMERON (145a).

	Alone.	+ MgCl_2 (.0025 N).	+ Na_2CO_3 (.0025 N).	+ Na_2SO_4 (.01 N).	+ NaCl (.015 N).	+ CaCl_2 (.2 N).	+ CaSO_4 (Saturated).
Strength of MgSO_4 that just kills the root	'00125 N	'000625 N	'00125 N	'00375 N	'0075 N	.2 N	.6 N

Hansteen (see 214) found that the toxic effect of potassium salts used singly was overcome even when so little lime was added that the ratio $\frac{\text{CaO}}{\text{K}_2\text{O}} = \frac{1}{840}$. Osterhout found (221) that *Vaucheria sessilis* lived for three weeks in distilled water, but was killed in a few minutes by $\frac{3}{32}$ N NaCl, and in a few days by '0001 N NaCl; yet the toxic effect even of the stronger solution disappeared on adding one gram-molecule of CaCl_2 for every 100 gram-molecules of NaCl. Magnesium chloride and sulphate, potassium chloride and calcium chloride were also toxic when used singly, but in admixture they formed a nutrient medium in which the plant grew normally and developed fruit even when $\frac{3}{32}$ N NaCl was also present.

It is also found that calcium and magnesium ions diffuse out from the plant cell more rapidly into solutions of single sodium or potassium salts than into pure water and very much more rapidly than into solutions of calcium salts. Niklewski (214) found the amounts of CaO and of MgO diffusing out of cut pieces of beet to be:—

	Mgs. per 500 cc. of solution.	
	CaO.	MgO.
Beet placed in distilled water . . .	5.3	4.1
Beet placed in .05 N KCl . . .	33.4	23.8
Beet placed in .05 N NaCl . . .	32.1	20.8
Beet placed in .05 N NH_4Cl . . .	29.2	21.3

These and many other experiments all indicate that a complex equilibrium normally exists in the cell between colloids and electrolytes which can only be maintained when the external medium has an appropriate composition.

Other facts are less easy to explain, such as Grafe and Portheim's observation that the toxic effects of a single salt fail to appear, or are much delayed, when sugar is supplied.¹

Reed found that mitotic division proceeded normally in absence of calcium, but the new transverse cell wall was either incomplete or entirely absent.

Strontium salts appear to have no nutritive value, and in Voelcker's experiments (290) the addition to the soil of even 0.1 per cent. of the sulphate, hydrate, and carbonate was without effect, but the chloride was distinctly toxic. In Loew's experiments on algæ (182c) they injuriously affected the chlorophyll bodies, causing loss of starch-making power and finally death.

Magnesium, like phosphorus, finally moves to the seed, and is thus in contrast with calcium and potassium which remain behind in the leaf or the straw. Willstätter has shown (310) chlorophyll to be a magnesium compound, an observation that accounts for the unhealthy condition of the chlorophyll bodies, and the final etiolation of magnesium-starved plants. Further, magnesium seems to be necessary for the formation of oil, the globules being absent from algæ growing in solutions free from magnesium salts; oil seeds are richer in magnesium than starch seeds. An excess of magnesium salts produces harmful effects which, as we have seen, can be lessened by addition of calcium salts; Loew indeed considers (180) that plants require a definite $\frac{\text{CaO}}{\text{MgO}}$ ratio in their food, but neither Gössel² nor Lemmermann³ could obtain evidence of any such necessity.

Iron.—For some reason difficult to explain the formation of chlorophyll is absolutely dependent on the presence of a trace of some ferric salt, although iron does not enter into the composition of chlorophyll. So little is wanted that iron salts never need be used as manures, excepting for water or sand cultures.

Manganese is considered by Bertrand to be a constituent of oxidases, and, therefore, necessary to the plant; minute traces only are required, larger quantities being harmful. Dr. Brenchley's water cultures (54a) show that barley benefits by small doses of manganese salts, and a

¹ *Bied. Zentr.*, 1908, xxxvii., 571.

² *Ibid.*, 1904, xxxiii., 226.

³ *Landw. Jahrbuch*, 1911, xl., 175 and 255.

number of field experiments in Japan and in Italy¹ have indicated some manurial value. Bertrand classes them as "engrais complémentaires" (35). Field trials at Rothamsted, however, gave negative results.

Chlorine does not appear to be necessary to the plant, indeed Knop grew even the halophytes without it. Chlorides are always present in rain water in ample amount to supply any trace that might be needed. In small doses iodides and fluorides have been found, according to Japanese experiments, to produce beneficial results (182*a* and 278*a*). Voelcker finds that, on the whole, chlorides are more toxic than sulphates at equivalent concentrations (290).

Sulphur is probably an essential food constituent, and occurs in plants, especially in cabbages, and swedes, to a greater extent than is usually recognised, the older analytical methods giving low results (Hart and Peterson (127), Peterson (223)). Sulphates are present in rain and in soil, but further additions in manure have been found by Dymond (92) to be useful for heavy crops rich in protein,² although they were not needed for cereals or permanent pastures. These observations confirm the older work of Bogdanow.³

Silicon does not seem to be essential, but it occurs to so large an extent in some plants that it is not likely to be wholly useless. Wolff and Kreutzhage (315) found that soluble silicates increased the yield of oats in water cultures and also the proportion of grain, behaving in their opinion much like phosphates. Certain of the Rothamsted plots are treated with sodium silicate, and marked crop increases are obtained on the phosphate-starved plots (Table XXI.) Hall and

TABLE XXI.—EFFECT OF SILICATES ON THE GROWTH OF BARLEY, 1864-1904.
ROTHAMSTED.

	Yield of dressed Grain, bushels.		Yield of Straw, cwt.		Ratio $\frac{\text{Total Grain}}{\text{Straw}}$	
	Without Silicate.	With Silicate.	Without Silicate.	With Silicate.	Without Silicate.	With Silicate.
Nitrate only	27·3	33·8	16·2	19·8	85·1	86·6
Nitrate + phosphate . . .	42·2	43·5	24·6	25·8	87·2	85·8
Nitrate + potassium salts .	28·6	36·4	17·9	21·7	80·6	85·0
Nitrate + phosphate + potassium salts	41·2	44·5	25·3	27·6	82·7	82·1

¹ The Japanese experiments are recorded in the *Bull. Coll. Agric.*, Tokyo, 1906, *et seq.* (210), and the Italian experiments in the *Studi e Ricerche di Chimica Agraria*, Pisa, 1906-8; pot experiments have also been made by J. A. Voelcker at the Woburn Experiment Station.

² See also *Pitts. Journ. Ag. Research*, 1916, 5, 771-780.

³ *Expt. Stat. Record*, 1900, 11, 723 and 1903, 15, 565.

Morison (119*a*) conclude that silicates act by causing an increased assimilation of phosphoric acid by the plant, the seat of action being in the plant and not in the soil.

Boron given as boric acid was found by Dr. Brenchley (54*b*) to increase the growth of peas, but not of barley, in water cultures at concentrations of about 1/100,000; above this point harmful effects were produced. In Voelcker's pot experiments (290) even 1 part in 200,000 of soil proved toxic for barley, but at lower concentrations there was a slight stimulating effect.

Absence of Injurious Substances.—We have seen that many salts have a toxic effect if given alone to the plant, but for our purpose we need consider only those causing injury in presence of other compounds. Two cases arise in practice: some substances are injurious in small quantities, others only in excess.

Substances Injurious in Small Quantities: Acids.—Cultivated plants will usually not grow in too acid or too alkaline a medium, but prefer something more nearly neutral. In water cultures it is necessary to begin with a faintly acid solution because of the formation, as growth proceeds, of sodium and potassium carbonates (see p. 179): in soils, however, certain changes set in that not only obviate the need for acidity but necessitate the presence of calcium carbonate.

The unsuitability of the atmosphere of industrial towns has been traced in part to the presence of acids, which affect the leaves as well as the roots. Wieler¹ found that assimilation of carbon dioxide was profoundly modified by sulphur dioxide, most injury being done in moist weather when the stomata were more widely opened and the gas could readily enter the leaf tissues. Crowther and Ruston (72) obtained the following yields from pots of Timothy, showing that acid water gradually kills the plant:—

TABLE XXII.—EFFECT OF ACID RAIN-WATER ON THE GROWTH OF TIMOTHY GRASS.
CROWTHER AND RUSTON (72).

Weight of dry matter obtained when plants were regularly watered with:—

	Country rain neutralised.	Leeds rain (acid).	Solution of sulphuric acid, parts per 100,000 of water:—					
			1	2	4	8	16	32
1st crop, 1908 . .	28.0 gms.	23.8 gms.	30.5	28.7	28.8	24.8	23.8	14.1
2nd crop, 1909 . .	24.9 "	17.5 "	18.2	17.8	10.0	8.2	1.8	0
3rd crop, 1910 . .	14.7 "	6.6 "	12.0	8.0	3.9	3.7	0	0

¹ *Bied. Zentr.*, 1908, xxxvii., 572.

o SOIL CONDITIONS AND PLANT GROWTH

Metallic Salts.—Complaints are sometimes made by farmers in mining districts that their crops suffer damage from the waste products—generally metallic salts—turned into the streams from the works, especially where the water is wanted for irrigation, or where, as in Japan, rice is grown in the marshes. The damage done to pastures by the lead mines of Cardiganshire is under investigation at Aberystwyth. A vast number of experiments have shown that copper salts are extraordinarily toxic in water cultures or where they actually come into contact with the plant, even the minute trace sometimes present in distilled water being harmful. This property finds useful application in removing algæ from water and in killing weeds. For example, a 3 per cent. solution of copper sulphate is sprayed over cornfields in early spring at the rate of fifty gallons per acre to destroy charlock (*Brassica sinapis*), one of the most troublesome weeds on light soils. The solution adheres to the rough horizontal leaves of the charlock and kills the plant, but runs off the smooth vertical leaves of the wheat without doing much damage. Even the insoluble complex copper salt present in Bordeaux mixture, and sprayed on to fruit trees to kill fungoid pests, was found by Amos (4) to retard assimilation of carbon dioxide by the leaf.

Copper salts do not appear to be anything like so toxic in the soil as in water culture.

It is often asserted that any toxic substance must, at proper dilutions, act as a stimulant to plants; with copper sulphate, however, Dr. Brenchley (54a) could obtain no evidence of increased growth in water cultures at any dilution, even down to 1 part in 10,000,000 of water, although the toxic effect was always shown. The pot experiments of Russell and Darbishire lead to the same conclusion (240b).

Zinc salts have often been made the subject of investigation because the older pot experiments were conducted in zinc vessels. Dr. Brenchley (54b) was unable to find definite indications of stimulating action in water culture, although Javillier (143) claimed to obtain increases in soil. Ehrenberg (93a) concludes that zinc salts are always toxic when the action is simply on the plant, but they may lead to increased growth through some indirect action on the soil itself.

Ferrous salts are toxic and are commonly regarded as one cause of the sterility of badly aerated soils.

Arsenic compounds were found by Dr. Brenchley to be toxic, salts of arsenious acid being much more potent than those of arsenic acid.

Greaves, however, claims to have obtained evidence that arsenic compounds stimulate the nitrogen fixing organisms in the soil.¹

Most metallic salts appear to be toxic except those of the few metals required for nutrition. No unexceptionable evidence of a stimulating effect on the plant has yet been obtained, although certain effects may be produced in the soil leading to increased growth (see p. 171). The literature of the subject is summarised by Dr. Brenchley in her monograph (54c).

Whenever infertility is traced to any of these metallic salts a good dressing of lime is found to be an effective antidote.

Various Other Substances.—Sulphuretted hydrogen is extremely toxic, so also is ammonium sulpho-cyanide which, in the early days, used to cause trouble as an impurity in ammonium sulphate made from gas liquor. It is rarely, if ever, found now. Toxic nitrogen compounds include nitrites, which have to be removed from synthetical calcium nitrate used for manure, the dicyano-diamide associated with commercial cyanamide, and ammonium salts at too high a concentration. None of these, however, are for long harmful in the soil, since all are fairly rapidly converted into nitrates. Perchlorates are harmful and used sometimes to occur in sodium nitrate, but they are now carefully removed. Arsenates and especially arsenites are poisonous and form the basis of most weed killers.

Substances Injurious in Large Quantities: Carbon Dioxide.—In an interesting series of investigations Kidd (147) has shown that CO_2 exerts a marked inhibiting effect on the germination of seeds even though all other conditions are favourable. The seed is not permanently affected, and it will germinate freely, though not always immediately, when the CO_2 is removed. He suggests that this is the cause of the remarkable dormancy of certain seeds, especially weed seeds, buried below a certain depth in the soil: some of these will survive for years, and will produce a copious and vigorous crop of weeds when brought to the surface by deeper ploughing or breaking up of grass land.²

Soluble Salts.—In many arid districts the soil contains such large quantities of sodium and potassium salts that the soil water is too concentrated to permit of plant growth. Sodium carbonate not infrequently occurs and directly poisons the plant. Such soils are called alkali soils: they may be treated with gypsum, or, still better, carefully washed with irrigation water.

Calcium Carbonate is sometimes considered harmful because plants

¹ *Journ. Ag. Research*, 1916, 6, 389-416.

² W. E. Brenchley, *Journ. Bd. Agric.*, 1917.

are liable to chlorosis on chalky soils. It is equally probable, however, that the general soil conditions are responsible for the disease (see p. 185).

Magnesium Salts.—The toxicity of magnesium salts was discovered by Tennant in the eighteenth century in studying the alleged harmful effects of certain limestones found near Doncaster (281). Modern investigations¹ on magnesian limestone, however, have failed to show any harmful effect, indeed in the Woburn experiments (290) Voelcker has obtained an actual benefit both on wheat and on mangolds by using magnesia (MgO). But the soluble salts, the sulphate and especially the chloride, are harmful. Cases are reported by Loew where excess of magnesia in the soil has caused infertility; none, however, have fallen under the writer's observation in this country. As already stated, any injurious effect can be overcome by treatment with lime.

Effects of Salts on Germination.—Salts generally cause a retardation in the rate of germination; some of Guthrie and Helms' (115) results are given in Table XXIII. Sigmund has studied the effects of a very large number of substances (266). The technical interest in the work lies in the fact that seeds are sometimes treated with antiseptics before sowing in order to kill any spores of disease organisms, and, moreover, certain soluble salts—artificial manures—are often put into the soil about the same time as the seeds are sown.

TABLE XXIII.—EFFECT OF SOLUBLE SALTS ON GERMINATION. GUTHRIE AND HELMS (115).

	Sodium chloride, per cent.		Sodium carbonate, per cent.		Sodium chlorate, per cent.		Arsenic trioxide, per cent.	
	Barley.	Rye.	Barley.	Rye.	Barley.	Rye.	Barley.	Rye.
Germination affected	0·10	0·10	0·25	0·25	0·005	0·004	0·6	0·20
" prevented	0·25	0·40	0·60	0·50	0·007	0·006	—	0·4
Growth affected	0·10	0·15	0·15	0·25	0·003	0·002	0·05	0·15
" prevented	0·20	0·20	0·40	0·40	0·006	0·004	0·10	0·30

When a solution comes in contact with a seed it does not necessarily enter as a whole. Adrian Brown (57) has shown that the barley seed is surrounded by a membrane which has the remarkable property of keeping out many dissolved substances and allowing the water only to pass in, so that the solution loses water and becomes more concentrated. A number of substances can, however, pass through the membrane, and to these H. E. and E. F. Armstrong (5) have applied the term Hormones. In general they have no great affinity for water; in the

¹ See, e.g., *New Jersey Bull.*, 267, 1914, and on the other side *Durham Coll. Bull.*, 12, 1915.

Armstrongs' nomenclature they are *anhydrophilic*: they pass into the cell and there disturb the normal course of events. Ammonia, toluene, ether, chloroform, are all highly effective hormones readily entering the cells of seeds, leaves, etc., and hastening the normal sequence of processes.

Supposed Stimulation of Plants by Electricity, Heat, and Radium.

The Electric Discharge.—It has often been stated that an electric discharge increases the rate of growth of plants either by direct action on the plant, or by indirect action in the soil. As far back as 1783 the Abbé Bertholon (34) constructed his *electro-végétomètre*, a kind of lightning conductor that collected atmospheric electricity and then discharged it from a series of points over the plant. The view that atmospheric electricity is an important factor in crop growth has always found supporters in France. Grandeau (112*b*) stated that plants protected from atmospheric electricity by a wire cage made less growth than control plants outside. Lesage (172) confirmed this observation, but found that silk thread caused as much retardation as wire, so that the effect is not necessarily electrical: in point of fact the rate of evaporation was considerably less under the cage than in the open.

Instead of relying on atmospheric electricity Lemström (171) generated electricity on a large scale and discharged it from a series of points fixed on wires over the plant. This method has been used at Bitton, near Bristol, and studied on the electrical side by Sir Oliver Lodge, on the botanical side by J. H. Priestley (230), and on the practical side by J. E. Newman.

Numerous field experiments are recorded, but there is usually some uncertainty about the check plots, and further studies are in hand by Priestley and by Miss Dudgeon. The Bromberg experiments (104*a*) gave negative results.

Various Rays.—Recent experiments of Miss Dudgeon are quoted by Priestley to show that the rays of the Cooper-Hewitt mercury vapour lamp have a very stimulating effect, accelerating germination and increasing growth to a remarkable extent. Priestley found that the rays from a quartz mercury vapour lamp were harmful at close range, whilst farther off they stimulated growth. There is great scope for work in this direction; the problem is of great economic importance, because of the enhanced market value of early crops.

Effect of Heat.—Molisch (202) has shown that perennial plants steeped in hot water towards the close of their deepest period of rest come at once into activity. His hypothesis is that the "rest" required

by plants is of two kinds, the *freiwillig* rest due to external conditions and therefore capable of being shortened, and the *unfreiwillig* rest inherent in the nature of the plant. Parkinson (222a) has tested the method with satisfactory results; spirea, rhubarb, seakale, etc., steeped for twelve hours in water at 95°, at the end of November, or early in December, made rapid growth when subsequently forced.

Effect of Radium. Among the many remarkable properties of radium it was perhaps natural to expect that it might have some definite effect on plants, and even, under suitable conditions, cause sufficient increase in the amount of growth to justify its use in horticulture and agriculture. The early observations of Dixon and Wigham¹ at Dublin, however, did not seem very promising; 100 seeds of cress (*Lepidium sativum*) were uniformly distributed on an even surface of moist quartz sand, and after germination had taken place, a sealed tube containing 5 mgs. of radium bromide was set 1 cm. above the central seed. The seedlings grew up, but without any curvature indicating positive or negative "radiotropism," and the only noticeable effect was a slight depression of growth in those within 1 cm. radius of the tube. As stronger preparations of radium became available more definite retardations and inhibitions were observed; thus Gager, in an elaborate report,² noted a more or less complete inhibition in cell activities in younger and especially embryonic tissues, with a few exceptions. The action of radium through the soil, however, was different; germination and growth were both accelerated, and the plants farthest away were stimulated most. Acqua³ found that different plants, and even different organs of the same plant, were differently affected, the root system in general responding more markedly than the aerial parts, and in his experiments being arrested in their development. The intensity of the radiation, however, is important, and G. Fabre,⁴ using *Linum catharticum* as a test plant, was able to obtain increased development and germination of seedlings by working with emanations up to 1.5 microcuries per 2 litres of air, and to retard development by using emanations of 40 microcuries per litre of air. H. Molisch⁵ obtained a like result; young plants of vetches, beans, sunflower, etc., were stimulated in growth by weak emanations, but checked, or entirely stopped, by stronger ones. He further claimed that the "rest period" could be broken by the radium emanation, and

¹ *Proc. Roy. Soc. Dublin*, 1904, 10, 178-192.

² *Mem. New York Bot. Gard.*, 1908.

³ *Ann. Bot. (Rome)*, 1910, 8, 223-238.

⁴ *Compt. Rend. Soc. Biol. (Paris)*, 1911, 70, 187-188.

⁵ *Umschau*, 1913, 17, 95-98.

forced lilac into bloom in November by attaching pipettes containing small quantities of radium chloride to the terminal buds.¹ In his earlier experiments he, like Dixon and Wigham, failed to detect any radiotropism, but later on he found indications in the case of certain heliotropically-sensitive plants, *e.g.* oats and vetches.²

These, and similar results, naturally suggested that the residues left after the extraction of radium, but still containing radio-active material, might have definite manurial value, and it was not long before definite statements were forthcoming. Baker³ claimed that increased yields of wheat and radishes had been obtained by mixing 1 part of radio-active material (2 mgs. Ra. per ton) with 10 of soil. It is true that Stoklasa's⁴ results were negative (although in his other experiments radium emanations increased growth to a marked extent), but this did not prevent the introduction of radio-active fertilisers, and the enterprising syndicates and companies concerned were by no means loth to push their wares. These were investigated by Martin H. F. Sutton,⁵ the experiments being made with radishes, tomatoes, potatoes, onions, carrots, and marrows, some grown in pots, others in plots out of doors. Eight different radium residues were used, in addition to pure radium bromide; the dressings were so arranged that equivalent quantities of radium were given in each case ($\frac{1}{100}$ gm. radium bromide to 15 lb. of soil: $2\frac{1}{2}$ times this amount per sq. yard to the plots).

In no case was there any clear evidence of increased growth, even the pure radium bromide seemed to be without action.

We are therefore left with the apparent discrepancy already observed on p. 21. The work of the physiologists, assuming it to be sound, certainly indicated that radium emanation is capable of stimulating certain cell activities. Sutton's results show that such stimulus, if it exists, does not affect the final growth of the plant. This discrepancy is periodically confronting the agricultural investigator. Thus, Dr. Winifred Brenchley at Rothamsted has failed to obtain increases in growth by supplying plants with inorganic poisons which have been supposed to stimulate certain cell functions in suitable dilutions. The result opens up the prospect of an interesting discussion, but it also shows the danger of arguing from a simple physiological observation to a complex phenomenon like the growth of a plant in soil.

¹ *Oesterr. Gart. Ztg.*, 1912, 7, 197-202.

² *Sitzber. K. Akad. Wiss. (Vienna)*, 1911, 120, 305-318.

³ *Journ. Roy. Soc. Arts.*, 1913, 62, 70-78.

⁴ *Chem. Ztg.*, 1914, 38, 841-844.

⁵ *Messrs. Sutton's Bull.*, No. 6, 1916.

CHAPTER III.

THE COMPOSITION OF THE SOIL.

IT is well known that only the top six or eight inches of the soil is suited to plant life, and that the lower part, or subsoil, plays only an indirect part in plant nutrition. We shall, therefore, confine our attention almost exclusively to the surface layer.

The soil was in the first instance derived from rocks, partly by disintegration and partly by decomposition. The fragments split off were sooner or later carried away by water and deposited at the bottom of a river or sea. There they mingled with residues of living organisms which have subsequently played an important part in the history of the soil as its chief source of calcium carbonate and calcium phosphate. In course of time the material accumulated to considerable depths; then, as the result of some earth change, the water retreated leaving the deposited material as dry land or rock. No sooner was this exposed to the air than it began once again to undergo disintegration and erosion. Air, water and frost all played a part in the disintegration process; water and sometimes ice have acted as transporting agents. For immense ages the particles have been subjected to these actions, and the fact that they have survived shows them to be very resistant and practically unalterable during any period of time that interests us. Reference to Table LXXII., page 207, shows that the particles in the surface soil which have been exposed to weathering ever since the soil was laid down, and in some cases to cultivation for some hundreds of years, are almost indistinguishable in size from those in the subsoil which have been protected from all these changes.

However, the soil particles are not wholly unalterable. The rain water and its dissolved carbonic acid exert a slight solvent action, and the soil water always contains small amounts of calcium and magnesium compounds, silica and other substances in solution. Each individual particle only loses a very minute amount of substance to the soil water, and its life is extraordinarily long; nevertheless dissolution is perpetually taking place. The surface soil contains less of the smallest, and, therefore, most easily attacked, particles than the subsoil.

In any region where the rainfall and temperaure conditions are favourable, soil rapidly covers itself with vegetation ; even a bare rock surface is not without its flora. The first vegetation must obviously have obtained its mineral food from the dissolved material of the soil particles, but when it died and decayed all the substances taken up were returned to the soil, so that subsequent vegetation has food from two sources : from the substances dissolved direct out of the soil particles during the life of the plant, and from those dissolved out at earlier times and taken up by previous races of plants. Thus in the natural state, and where the vegetation is not removed, the mineral plant food can be used over and over again and indeed tends to accumulate as fast as it is extracted from the soil particles by the rain water.

The plant, however, returns to the soil more than it takes away ; during its life it has been synthesising starch, cellulose, protein and other complex unstable and endothermic material, much of which falls back on the soil when it is dead. This added organic matter introduces a fundamental change because it contains stored-up energy ; the difference between the soil as it now stands and the original heap of mineral matter is that the soil contains sources of energy while the mineral matter does not. Hence it soon becomes the abode of a varied set of organisms, drawing their sustenance and their energy from the accumulated residues, and bringing about certain changes to be studied later ; some, as we shall see, are capable of fixing gaseous nitrogen and so increasing the supply of protein-like compounds, whilst others can assimilate carbon dioxide.

Thus the complex that we speak of as the soil consists of four parts :—

1. The mineral matter derived from rock material, which constitutes the frame-work of the soil and is in the main unalterable, but it contains some reactive decomposition products.
2. The calcium carbonate and phosphate (the latter being usually in much smaller amount), and organic matter derived from marine or other organisms deposited simultaneously with the soil.
3. The soil water, a dilute solution of carbonic acid containing small quantities of any soluble soil constituent.
4. The residues of plants that have grown since the soil occupied its present position, consisting of the mineral plant food taken up from the soil water and of part of the complex organic matter. As the source of energy this may be regarded as the distinguishing characteristic of soils.

These four constituents are invariably present, but not in the same

proportion; their relative abundance affords the basis on which soils are classified. From the agricultural point of view we thus have: (a) mineral soils consisting mainly of rock material, subdivided into sands, loams and clays; (b) calcareous soils containing notable amounts of chalk or limestone; (c) alkali soils rich in soluble, saline matter; (d) acid humus or peat soils where much organic matter has accumulated in absence of calcium carbonate; (e) neutral humus soils where much organic matter has also accumulated, but in presence of sufficient calcium carbonate to prevent acidity.

By far the greater proportion of agricultural soils belong to the first group.

The Mineral Portion of the Soil.

By the method of mechanical analysis described in the appendix the particles of soil can be sorted out into fractions, each falling within certain specified limits of diameter; but unfortunately there is no international agreement as to the limits, so that the same words are used in different countries with different meanings. Some of the commoner units are given in Table XXIV.

TABLE XXIV.—NAMES AND SIZES OF FRACTIONS OBTAINED BY MECHANICAL ANALYSIS OF SOILS IN DIFFERENT COUNTRIES.

British.		American (Bureau of Soils).		German ¹ (Verband landw. Versuchs-Stat.).		Atterberg ² (Suggested for International Use).	
Name of Fraction.	Limits of Diameter of Particles, mm.	Name of Fraction.	Limits of Diameter of Particles, mm.	Name of Fraction.	Limits of Diameter of Particles, mm.	Name of Fraction.	Limits of Diameter of Particles, mm.
Fine gravel	3-1	Fine gravel	2-1	Steine	above 5	Kies	above 2
Coarse sand	1-0.2	Coarse sand	1-0.5	Sehr grober sand	5-2	Sand	2.0-0.2
		Medium sand	0.5-0.25	Grober sand	2-1		
Fine sand	0.2-0.04	Fine sand	0.25-0.10	Mittel körniger sand	1-0.5	Mo	0.2-0.02
		Very fine sand	0.10-0.05	Feiner sand	0.5-0.2		
Silt	0.04-0.01	Silt	0.05-0.005	Sehr feiner sand	below 0.2	Schluff (or Staub)	0.02-0.002
Fine silt	0.01-0.002			Mineral staub		Schlamm (or Ton)	below 0.002
Clay	below 0.002	Clay	below 0.005	Ton			

The difference between the British and the American units can be considerably reduced by splitting the fine silt fraction into two, *viz.* 0.01 to 0.005 mm. diameter, and 0.005 to 0.002 mm. diameter. This does not greatly lengthen the analysis, and it should always be done³ when there is any likelihood of comparison with American results.

¹ *Landw. Versuchs-Stat.*, 1892, 42, 154, and 1893, 43, 335. The first five fractions are separated by sieves, and the others in Kühn's sedimenting cylinder.

² *Internat. Mitt. f. Bodenkunde*, 1912, 2, 312-342.

³ See p. 222 for method.

There still remain small differences in the fine sand and silt which in many cases would not greatly affect the discussion.

If none but pulverising forces had been at work during soil formation the soil particles would be identical in composition with the original rock. But weathering and leaching have always wrought changes, and in extreme cases only the most resistant minerals have survived unaltered. A succession of grades may therefore be expected, shading off imperceptibly one into the other: from the extreme grade where the changes have been at a minimum and the soil particles, both coarse and fine, are complex in composition: through the intermediate grades where more change has occurred, but a number of minerals can still be found in the coarse particles: to the other extreme where the coarse particles consist almost wholly of silica, everything else having gone. The first case of minimum change is exemplified in arid soils, the intermediate case in soils derived direct from igneous or old rocks and either left *in situ* or transported only a short distance (as in the cases investigated mineralogically by Lagatu (82) and chemically by Hendrick and Ogg (132) and in various glacial and loessial soils of the United States), while the case of extreme change is shown in the secondary and tertiary soils of the south-eastern part of England and in the soils of the Atlantic coastal plains of the United States.

These grades are illustrated by the following summary by McCaughey and William (188) of the minerals present in the sand and silt fractions separated from various United States soils:—

		No. of Soils.	Sand Fractions.		Silt Fractions.	
			Minerals other than Quartz.	Quartz.	Minerals other than Quartz.	Quartz.
Case 1	Arid	3	37	62	42	58
Case 2	Residual	12	15	85	21	79
	Glacial and Loessial	6	12	88	15	85
Case 3	Marine	4	5	95	8	92

The clay fraction cannot be dealt with by mineralogical methods.

Failyer, Smith and Wade (97) have made numerous chemical analyses which also show the successive eliminations of minerals other than quartz in these grades of soil:—

		Percentage of K ₂ O in			Percentage of CaO in			Percentage of P ₂ O ₅ in		
		Sand.	Silt.	Clay.	Sand.	Silt.	Clay.	Sand.	Silt.	Clay.
Type 1	Arid . . .	3'05	4'15	5'06	4'09	9'22	8'03	'19	'24	'45
Type 2	Glacial . . .	1'72	2'30	3'07	1'28	1'30	2'69	'15	'23	'86
	Residual . . .	1'60	2'37	2'86	'50	'82	'94	'07	'22	'70
Type 3	Coastal . . .	'37	1'33	1'62	'07	'19	'55	'03	'10	'34

Table XXV. shows the difference in composition between the fractions obtained by Hendrick and Ogg from the Aberdeen soil, belonging to the intermediate grade, and the more completely washed and weathered soils studied by Hall and Russell, where practically nothing but quartz had survived in the coarse particles.

So far as is known all the coarser particles are chemically inert. The clay fraction, on the other hand, stands out in sharp contrast both in composition and in chemical and physical properties. At least two groups of clay were recognised by Hall and Russell, one associated with fertile soils, the other with less fertile soils. The analytical figures throw very little light on the constitution of the clay beyond showing that it is not a simple silicate expressible by a definite chemical formula.

By successive extraction with acids of increasing concentration van Bemmelen found (22) two distinct groups of silicates in the Dutch alluvial soils, one soluble in dilute hydrochloric acid in which the ratio $\frac{\text{molecules of SiO}_2}{\text{molecules of Al}_2\text{O}_3} = 3 \text{ to } 5$,¹ the other soluble only in hot, strong sulphuric acid in which the ratio is approximately equal to 2. Other soils of volcanic origin from Java gave up larger amounts of base relative to the silica, but in no case were the ratios constant whole numbers; the alkaline bases showed the same lack of constancy in the ratios to Al₂O₃.

¹ The higher numbers were obtained from sandy clays and the lower from heavy clays. As the silica was insoluble in the acid it was extracted by digesting the residue for a few minutes at 55° with dilute alkali of sp. gr. 1'04.

COMPOSITION OF FRACTIONS

61

TABLE XXV.—SHOWING COMPOSITION OF THE FRACTIONS OBTAINED FROM MUCH WASHED AND WEATHERED SOIL (S.E. ENGLAND) WHERE PRACTICALLY NOTHING BUT QUARTZ SURVIVES IN THE COARSE PARTICLES, IN COMPARISON WITH THE LESS DECOMPOSED SOIL FROM ABERDEEN, WHERE MORE OF THE ROCK MINERAL (GRANITE) SURVIVES. (HALL AND RUSSELL (122) FOR S.E. ENGLAND, AND HENDRICK AND OGG (132) FOR ABERDEEN.)

CHEMICAL ANALYSIS OF MECHANICAL FRACTIONS, CALCULATED AS PERCENTAGES OF DRY MINERAL MATTER.

	SiO ₂		Al ₂ O ₃		Fe ₂ O ₃		CaO		MgO		K ₂ O		P ₂ O ₅	
	S.E. of England.	Aberdeen.	S.E. of England.	Aberdeen.	S.E. of England.	Aberdeen.	S.E. of England.	Aberdeen.	S.E. of England.	Aberdeen.	S.E. of England.	Aberdeen.	S.E. of England.	Aberdeen.
Fine gravel	94.4	85.0	3.0	8.6	2.1	1.1	0.4	0.9	0.8	0.4	0.6	1.5	0.06	0.07
Coarse sand	93.9	83.9	1.6	9.3	1.2	1.1	0.4	1.8	0.5	0.4	0.8	1.8	0.05	0.08
Fine sand	94.0	73.9	2.0	13.5	1.2	4.2	0.4	3.0	0.04	1.0	1.5	1.7	0.02	0.1
Silt	89.4	70.1	5.1	14.0	1.5	5.8	0.8	2.1	0.3	1.1	2.3	1.5	0.03	0.2
Fine silt	184.1	67.2	7.2	18.9	2.6	7.8	1.1	1.4	0.2	1.6	3.2	2.5	0.1	0.3
Clay	53.2	44.1	21.2	27.6	13.2	21.8	1.6	0.6	0.4	1.6	5.3	4.9	0.4	0.4
	49.0		29.8		13.1		1.5		1.0		3.4	1.1	0.7	

¹ Fraction .01 to .005 mm. ² Fraction .005 to .002 mm. These two fractions together constitute fine silt.

³ From fertile soils. ⁴ From less fertile soils.

TABLE XXVI.—RATIO $\frac{\text{MOLECULES OF SiO}_2}{\text{MOLECULES OF Al}_2\text{O}_3}$ EXTRACTED FROM VARIOUS SOILS.
VAN BEMMELEN (22).

Solvent.	Temperature and Time of Extraction.	Alluvial soils, Holland.		Volcanic soils, Java.		Laterite soils, Surinam.
HCl of sp. gr. 1.03 .	15 mins. at 55°	3.7	5.0	.9	2.1	1.1
HCl of sp. gr. 1.2 .	1 hour boiling temp.	3.4	4.6	2.2	2.7	1.6
H ₂ SO ₄ conc. .	—	2.0	2.4	3.2	2.0	1.6

Alkaline bases extracted from a heavy clay, Surinam.

Solvent.	Temperature of Extraction.	Al ₂ O ₃ dissolved, per cent.	Ratio $\frac{\text{Mols. SiO}_2}{\text{Mols. Al}_2\text{O}_3}$	Mols. of bases extracted for 1 mol. of Al ₂ O ₃ .			
				CaO.	MgO.	K ₂ O.	Na ₂ O.
HCl of sp. gr. 1.03	55°	1.2	1.3	.33	.83	.10	} .01
HCl of sp. gr. 1.1	100°	3.4	2.7	.05	.32	.08	
HCl of sp. gr. 1.2	boiling	4.6	2.7	.03	.14	.09	
HCl of sp. gr. 1.2	"	2.5	2.7	.03	.10	.10	
HCl of sp. gr. 1.2	"	1.9	2.7	.03	.08	.12	} 0.2
Conc. H ₂ SO ₄	—	8.8	2.0	.05	.06	.17	

Different soils gave up different proportions of alkaline bases, but again without showing definite simple ratios one to another. Detailed studies of clay revealed the presence of chemically unchanged crystals of the original silicates and also of easily soluble substances including a fusible group with ratio $\frac{\text{molecules of SiO}_2}{\text{molecules of Al}_2\text{O}_3}$ varying from 3 to 6, and a silicate resembling kaolin with ratios varying between 2 and 3. The easily soluble material represents the products of weathering since it does not occur in rocks. If it were a definite chemical compound the ratio of its constituents should be constant whole numbers, but this is not the case. It behaves, however, precisely like a solid solution and is therefore regarded by van Bemmelen as an "absorption compound," SiO₂, mAl₂O₃, nFe₂O₃, . . . pH₂O, in which the constituents are not chemically united but are held by the feebler forces manifested by colloids in their attractions one for the other.

The Physical Properties of the Various Fractions.—Serious studies of the soil by competent physicists have scarcely been attempted as yet, and the work hitherto done can only be regarded as preliminary. The fundamental difficulty in applying the ordinary physical methods is to synthesise the soil; numerous studies have been made of the physical properties of sand, silt, clay, etc., considered as

separate entities, but no one has worked out the resultant when all the varying grades of sand, silt and clay are intimately mingled, or drawn up a scheme or formula to express the properties of the soil in terms of the mechanical analysis. More useful results are obtained by the method of correlation; soils of known properties are analysed and the results are correlated so far as is possible with the properties; even this method, however, can only be used very crudely, because the physical properties of the soil as a whole cannot at present be expressed by definite numbers. Only a very general summary will therefore be attempted.

The Clay Fraction.—Clay may be regarded as a plastic colloid, but its special properties are only seen when a certain amount of water is present.¹ If it is well rubbed with water it becomes very sticky and absolutely impervious to air or water; it is also highly plastic, and can be moulded into shapes which remain permanent on drying and baking. It shrinks very much on drying and absorbs heat; on moistening again, however, there is a considerable swelling and evolution of heat. The reversibility of the process has been studied by van Bemmelen (20, 25), who has also shown that the rate at which water is lost on drying over sulphuric acid is not essentially different from the rate at which evaporation takes place from a pure water surface under the same conditions. The separate particles of clay are so small that, when placed in water, they assume a state of Brownian movement and sink only very slowly in spite of their high specific gravity. Traces of electrolytes have a profound effect on these properties; small quantities of acids or salts cause the temporary loss of plasticity, impermeability, and the property of remaining long suspended in water without settling; the clay is now said to be flocculated. The change can be watched if a small quantity of any flocculating substance is added to the turbid liquid obtained by shaking clay with water; the minute particles are then seen to unite to larger aggregates which settle, leaving the liquid clear. There is, however, no permanent change; deflocculation takes place and the original properties return as soon as the flocculating agent is washed away. Alkalis (caustic soda, caustic potash, ammonia and their carbonates) deflocculate clay, causing it to remain suspended in water for long periods. Clay is thus an electro-negative colloid, its reaction probably being conditioned by a trace of potash liberated by hydrolysis. It shows the general properties of electro-negative colloids as elucidated by Schulze and by Hardy (123): thus it is flocculated only by a solution containing ions or particles of opposite electrical sign, and the

¹Older work on the constitution of clay is summarised by Rohland in Abegg's *Handbuch der Anorganischen Chemie*, 1906, 3, 97-119.

extent of flocculation increases rapidly with the valency and concentration of the ion. No quantitative relationships, however, could be found by Hall and Morison (120). The subject might well be reopened, using the elegant method recently devised by Perrin.¹

A remarkable change sets in when clay is heated beyond a certain point, and it permanently loses all its special properties.

These clay properties are of great importance to the fertility of the soil, and no constituent is more necessary in proper proportions, or more harmful in excess. Clay impedes the movement of water in the soil and keeps it in the surface layers within reach of the plant roots, thus making the soil retentive of water. Excess of clay, however, interferes too much with the water movements, making the soil waterlogged in wet weather and parched in dry seasons even though the permanent water level is near the surface; it also impedes the movement of air to the roots and lowers the temperature of the soil. The adhesive properties of clay cause the soil particles to bind together into those aggregates on which "tilth" depends; soil without clay would be very like a sand heap. Here also, however, excess of clay does harm and makes the soil so adhesive that it sticks to the tillage implements and retards their movements; it also tends to form large clods unfavourable to vegetation. These effects are intensified in wet weather; the soil becomes sticky or "poached" and must not be worked or the tilth is injured for a long time. Another effect of a large amount of clay is to make the soil shrink very much on drying, so that large cracks appear in the fields in summer time. These harmful effects are reduced by flocculation effected by dressings of lime or chalk (which become converted into calcium bicarbonate in the soil) and by organic matter; on the other hand, they are intensified by the deflocculation resulting from the use of alkaline manures like liquid manure, or by sodium nitrate, which leaves a residue of sodium carbonate in the soil. Further, as pointed out above, clay "fixes" and retains the ammonia and potash supplied as manure. In general 8 to 16 per cent. is a satisfactory proportion of clay in a soil where the rainfall is 20 to 30 inches per annum.

Fine silt (0.01 to 0.002 mm. in diameter) has also great water-holding power, and in excessive amounts (above 10 to 15 per cent.) it increases the difficulty of working the soil, especially if much clay is present. It does not possess the marked plastic and colloidal properties of clay and is less altered by lime; indeed no method is known

¹ Perrin, *Brownian Movement and Molecular Reality* (London, 1910).

for making it tractable. It is usually less in amount than the clay; certain peculiarities in cultivation are manifested where the reverse obtains, *e.g.*, in the Lower Wealden strata, the Upper Greensand and the Lincolnshire warp lands.

The coarser grade of *silt* (0.04 to 0.01 mm. in diameter) appears to be very valuable, and constitutes 30 to 40 per cent. of many of the loams most famous in the south-east of England for carrying their crops well and not drying out. Light, sandy loams, on the other hand, may contain only 10 to 20 per cent.; some of these are highly fertile, but as a rule they require large dressings of dung, or a situation favourable for water supply. Probably silt plays a very important part in maintaining the even conditions of moisture so desirable for plant growth. It is fine enough to retard, but not to prevent, percolation, and it facilitates capillary movement of water.

Fine sand (0.2 to 0.04 mm. in diameter) forms a considerable fraction—usually 10 to 30 per cent. or more—of nearly all soils. Although its dimensions are relatively large, it still possesses cohesiveness and a tendency to cake together; it has not, however, so great an effect as silt in maintaining a good moist condition. Soils containing 40 per cent. or more of fine sand tend to form, after rain, a hard crust on the surface, through which young plants can only make their way with difficulty until it has been broken by a roller. But they have no great water-holding capacity or retentive power, and are not infrequently described by their cultivators as hungry soils that cannot stand drought. The notoriously infertile Bagshot sands and the barren Hythe beds in West Surrey are largely composed of this fraction, as much as 70 per cent. being sometimes present. In all these cases, however, clay is deficient and the situation is dry; better results are obtained when the clay exceeds 8 or 9 per cent., or when the water table is near the surface, especially if the amounts of coarse sand and gravel are not too high.

Coarse sand (1 to 0.2 mm. in diameter) is perhaps the most variable of all soil constituents in amount, and, as its properties are in many ways the reverse of those of clay, it exercises a very great effect in determining fertility. Through its lack of cohesion it keeps the soil open and friable; in moderate amounts it facilitates working, but in excess it increases drainage and evaporation so much as to interfere seriously with the water-holding capacity of the soil. Many good loams contain less than 4 per cent., and in general strong or tenacious soils contain less coarse sand than one-half the quantity of clay present. When the coarse sand exceeds the clay in amount the soil becomes

light, unless of course the clay is above 20 per cent., when the soil must always remain heavy. Not being a colloid, it possesses no power of absorbing water or soluble salts. Soils containing 40 per cent. or more of coarse sand and less than 5 per cent. of clay are only cultivated where large quantities of dung are available, or where the water supply is exceptionally good. As the amount of coarse sand increases, the soils become less and less suited to cultivation, till finally the sand dune condition is reached.

Fine gravel is not usually present to any great extent, and is of importance only when the coarse sand is already dangerously high. Stones cannot be determined quantitatively by any method of sampling in use, and their effect must be judged by a visit to the field. If they are uniformly scattered through a stiff soil, as in the Clay-with-Flints, they are on the whole beneficial, because they facilitate tillage. Where they form a bed underlying the soil they may do harm by causing over-drainage. Some typical examples are discussed in Chapter VII.

Calcium Carbonate.

Calcium carbonate is often present in small amounts only, but it commonly plays a controlling part in soil fertility. It produces both chemical and physical effects. It prevents the formation of certain conditions variously designated "acidity" or "lack of basicity" that otherwise tend to arise, and are unfavourable to many plants and soil micro-organisms (pp. 93 *et seq.*). It gives rise to the soluble bicarbonate that flocculates clay, and thus physically improves the soil texture. There is a certain critical stage where comparatively small changes in the amount of calcium carbonate may very materially alter the native flora, the predominant weeds, the soil micro-organisms, the liability of the plants to disease and the tractability of the land. Soils sufficiently supplied with calcium carbonate stand out in sharp contrast with those containing too little, although they may be of similar composition in all other respects. So great is the effect that the practical man has long since adopted the special term "sour" to describe soil deficient in calcium carbonate, a term we shall find it convenient to retain. Table XXVII. shows pairs of soils similar in constitution and general external conditions, temperature, water supply, etc., but very different in agricultural value because of their different content of calcium carbonate, one being readily cultivated while the other is wet and sticky, and only suitable for pasture land.

TABLE XXVII.—EFFECT OF CALCIUM CARBONATE ON THE TEXTURE OF SOILS.

	Hamsey Green.		Rothamsted.	
	Arable Soil.	Too sticky for Arable.	Arable Soil, Barnfield.	Too sticky for Arable, Geescroft.
Fine gravel	1·7	1·6	2·4	1·8
Coarse sand	5·3	9·5	5·5	4·9
Fine sand	28·7	22·3	20·3	27·8
Silt	26·3	25·4	24·4	25·4
Fine Silt	10·2	9·9	12·7	10·6
Clay	16·4	16·0	22·0	19·0
Loss on ignition	4·8	5·2	4·7	5·1
Calcium carbonate	1·02	·48	3·0	·16

It is impossible to ascertain the amount of calcium carbonate necessary for a soil except by actual field trials: in general, sandy soils require only sufficient to prevent sourness, while clay soils need in addition enough to keep the texture good. Sands well supplied with calcareous water and under ordinary arable cultivation may get along with 0·1 per cent. or even less calcium carbonate. Hendrick and Ogg (132) state that some of the Aberdeen soils are free from calcium carbonate and yet retain their fertility: the same appears to be true of parts of North Wales; the instances given are all light soils. In most parts of England, however, light soils that are intensively farmed respond to dressings of chalk or of ground limestone, even though 0·2 or 0·3 per cent. is already present. It commonly happens that 0·5 per cent. of calcium carbonate proves insufficient for clay soils, and even 1·0 per cent. may not be enough in highly-farmed districts, especially where cattle are fed on the land and tread the soil into a somewhat sticky state. Further increases in calcium carbonate over and above the critical amount are not known to have any effect except to provide a margin of safety.

Calcium carbonate is not a permanent constituent of the soil, but changes into the soluble bicarbonate and washes out into the drainage water; the average loss per acre per annum throughout England and Wales has been estimated at 500 lb., and at Rothamsted on the arable land at 800 to 1000 lb. (118*b*). The rate of loss is influenced by the treatment, being increased by the use of ammonium sulphate and decreased by dung and by the crop; it is much less on pasture than on arable land. Repeated additions of calcium carbonate to the soil are, therefore, necessary: indeed chalk and lime are among the oldest

of manures. Soils lying immediately above chalk and limestone are no exceptions and in wet regions they may become thoroughly decalcified.

On chalk soils the percentage of calcium carbonate may rise very high, and then a wholly new set of properties comes in. It is impossible to draw any exact line showing where these properties begin to appear, but they entirely mask the effects of the silica and silicate particles and obliterate the distinctions between sands, loams, clays. Chalk soils, therefore, form a class by themselves to which the ordinary laboratory methods of analysis and investigation do not apply: unfortunately, appropriate methods have not yet been worked out.

The Soil Water.

The soil retains by absorption and surface attractions some 10 to 20 per cent. of its weight of water, distributed as films over its particles. This water is of obvious importance as the medium through which plants and micro-organisms derive their food, indeed the Whitney school regard it as the culture solution for the plant. Its relationship to the mineral matter is discussed by Cameron (67*b*, *c* and *d*). Notwithstanding its importance, however, but little is known of it, because of the difficulty of getting it away from the soil. No pressure method has proved successful, but a centrifugal method which, however, has not come into general use, gave the following results (Whitney and Cameron (305)):

	Soil solution parts per million.				Dry soil parts per million.			
	PO ₄ .	NO ₃ .	Ca.	K.	PO ₄ .	NO ₃ .	Ca.	K.
Sassafras loam, New Jersey—								
Wheat, good	7.20	7.20	44.40	33.60	1.35	1.35	8.34	6.31
Wheat, poor.	7.00	.40	26.90	24.40	1.40	.08	5.38	4.88
Leonardtown loam, Maryland—								
Wheat, good	6.30	1.44	16.20	21.60	1.38	.32	3.56	4.75
Wheat, good	8.40	4.08	21.60	38.40	1.48	.72	3.80	6.75
Wheat, poor.	9.75	4.80	8.50	19.25	2.45	1.21	2.12	5.10

Instead of using this method the United States Bureau of Soils investigates the solution obtained by stirring up soil with water, and filtering under pressure through a Chamberland filter. The results (305) are taken to indicate the following as the average composition of the soil water:—

PO₄ NO₃ Ca K
7·64 5·47 11·67 22·74 per million of dry soil.¹

A third method consists in driving a Pasteur Chamberland filter into the soil and connecting it with an exhausted 2-litre bottle.²

The numerous analyses of land drainage water that have been made in this country and on the Continent throw some light on the composition of the soil solution. As might be expected from the known absorptive properties of clay and of humus, drainage water contains mere traces of NH₄ and PO₄, and only little K; it contains chiefly carbonic acid, SiO₄, Cl, SO₄, NO₃, Ca with some Fe, Mg and Na. Typical analyses are given in Table XXVIII.

TABLE XXVIII.—ANALYSIS OF DRAINAGE WATERS FROM CULTIVATED FIELDS: PARTS PER MILLION OF SOLUTION.

	Rothamsted: Broadbalk Field. ³			Field at Göttingen. ⁴	
	No Manure.	Dung.	Complete Artificial.	Highest result.	Lowest result.
	Plots 3 & 4.	Plot 2.	Plot 6.		
CaO	98·1	147·4	143·9	184	157
MgO	5·1	4·9	7·9	46·4	31·3
K ₂ O	1·7	5·4	4·4	3·7	1·7
Na ₂ O	6·0	13·7	10·7	—	—
Fe ₂ O ₃	5·7	2·6	2·7	—	—
Cl.	10·7	20·7	20·7	—	—
SO ₂	24·7	106·1	73·3	59·2	43·5
P ₂ O ₅	·6	—	1·54	—	—
SiO ₂	10·9	35·7	24·7	—	—
N as NH ₃	·14	·20	·24	—	—
N as Nitrate	15·0	62·0	32·9	8·2	1·0
Organic matter, CO ₂ , etc.	67·7	77·3	84·6	—	—
Total solids	246·4	476·0	407·6	—	—

It will be observed that the total concentration of the Rothamsted drainage water varies from ·02 to ·05 per cent.

Organic Matter.

The distinguishing characteristic of soil is that it contains part of the complex material synthesised by plants. This material affords

¹ The Bureau of Soils prefers to express the composition in terms of dry *soil*, rather than in terms of the solution.

² Briggs and McCall, "An Artificial Root," *Science*, 1904, 20, 566-69.

³ A. Voelcker's analyses of five samples collected between 1866 and 1869 (289).

⁴ Von Seelhorst's analyses of samples collected weekly, or fortnightly, from a field between August, 1899, and August, 1900 (261).

energy to numerous micro-organisms, and is gradually converted by them into simple substances appropriate for plant nutrition. We may look upon its constituents as taking part in a perpetual cycle: in one stage nourishing the growing plant and storing up the energy of sunlight, in the other stage nourishing micro-organisms and liberating energy. In addition, it has important physical effects on the soil. Unfortunately, not much is known of the highly complex components of the plant and even less is known about the important organic substances of the soil. The difficulty of working with insoluble, unstable bodies mingled with twenty times or more their weight of sand, silt and clay has hitherto proved almost insuperable. The ideas current in the text-books go back to the time before organic chemistry arose, and have come down direct from C. Sprengel (270), Mulder (204) and Detmer (84).

We can thus only speak in the most general terms about what is admittedly the characteristic component of soil. Two great groups are to be carefully distinguished: one furnished by recent generations of plants; the other deposited with the soil during its formation, and therefore as old as the soil itself. Unfortunately, no actual method of separation is known, but some idea of the amount and properties of the original organic matter can be obtained from a study of the sub-soil at depths below the root-range of plants. Ten feet or more below the surface, sandy subsoils usually contain less than .01 per cent. of nitrogen and clays less than .05 per cent., but shales contain more than 0.1 per cent. The percentage of carbon fluctuates, but is usually five to ten times that of nitrogen (200a). Now these values are about one-tenth to one-fifth of those obtained in the surface soil, so that at the very outside, and assuming there has been no decomposition, not more than 10 to 20 per cent. of the surface organic matter is original.

The organic matter furnished by recent vegetation may roughly be classified as: (1) material that has not yet had time to decompose and still retains its definite cell structure; (2) partially decomposed and still decomposing material; (3) simple soluble decomposition products; (4) plant or animal constituents not decomposable in the soil.

The undecomposed material is important as the reserve supply for the entire chain of reactions to be considered later. It also has a certain mechanical effect in opening up the soil and facilitating aeration and drainage, an effect useful on clays but often harmful on sands where these processes already tend to go too far.

The partially decomposed material forms a particularly vague and

indefinite group containing all the non-volatile products of bacterial, fungal, enzymic and other actions on the plant residues. It shades off in one direction into the simple soluble decomposition products, and in the other into undecomposed plant fragments, so that it cannot be sharply defined or accurately estimated. A detailed study of the group being thus out of the question, we must ascertain in the first instance what part it plays in determining those relationships between the soil and the living plant that it is our business to study, and then, when we know what to look for, try to discover what constituents are important from our point of view and fix attention on them. For the preliminary inquiries recourse is had to the indirect method of correlation already used in ascertaining the properties of the mineral fractions of the soil. Numerous studies on these lines have proved that this group possesses at least six properties not shown by the undecomposed plant residues.

1. It gives a dark brown or black colour to the soil.
2. It can withdraw various ions— NH_4 , K, PO_4 —from their solutions. The experiments of van Bemmelen (19, 21) indicate a complete parallelism with clay in this respect.
3. It causes the soil to puff up, or in the expressive phrase of the German farmer, to “ferment” (*Bodengärung*), and so leads to an increase in the pore space (see p. 139). From this results a marked improvement in the tilth and general mechanical condition. The Rothamsted mangold plots receiving no organic manure, and therefore poor in this group, get into so sticky and “unkindly” a state that the young plants have some difficulty in surviving however much food is supplied, and may fail altogether if bad weather intervenes in the spring (as in 1908 and 1911); the dunged plots which are rich in this group are much more favourable to the plant and never fail to give a crop. But the puffing up or “lightening” may go too far, and sometimes causes much trouble in old gardens that have long been heavily dunged.
4. It increases the water-holding capacity of the soil. The amounts of moisture present in adjacent plots at Rothamsted are shown in Fig. 6, from which it appears that the plot annually receiving farmyard manure contains normally 3 or 4 per cent. more water than the adjoining plot receiving no organic manure.

The variations in water content follow very closely the variation in the amount of organic matter present. So marked are these physical effects that if 15 or 20 per cent. of organic matter is present in a soil the operation of other factors ceases to count for much, and the dis-

inctions between sands, loams and clays are obliterated. Thus, much of the famous Red River prairie soil of Manitoba is identical in mineral composition with certain poor infertile Wealden soils, but the presence

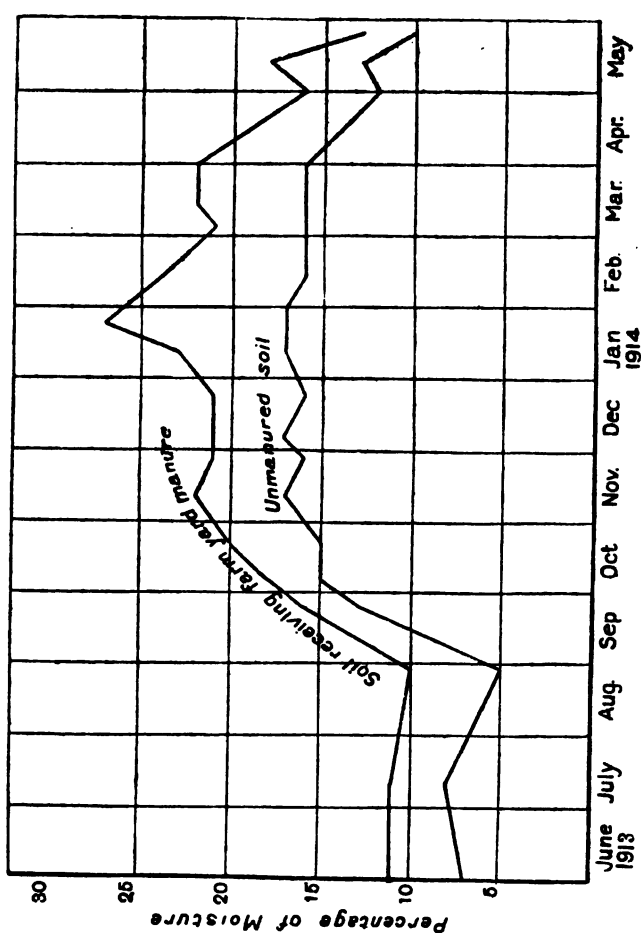


FIG. 6.—Curves showing the Percentage of Water in two soils on adjacent plots, one of which annually receives farmyard manure while the other does not. (Broadbalk field, Rothamsted.)

of 26 per cent. of organic matter completely masks the harmful effect of the clay and fine silt. A similar pair of soils, owing their difference in agricultural properties to their different organic matter content, have been analysed by C. T. Gimingham (105a).

TABLE XXIX.—EFFECT OF ORGANIC MATTER¹ ON THE TEXTURE OF SOILS.

	Good Texture.	Poor Texture.	Good Texture.	Poor Texture.
	Manitoban Prairies.	Weald Clay.	(Reported by C. T. Gimingham.)	
Fine gravel . . .	—	.5	—	—
Coarse sand . . .	1.6	1 to 2	.6	.5
Fine sand . . .	3.8	10 to 12	4.3	8.4
Silt . . .	17.1	20 to 30	11.2	13.8
Fine silt . . .	28.2	25 to 30	28.7	26.5
Clay . . .	23.3	20 to 25	23.8	25.0
Loss on ignition . .	26.3	5 to 8	19.8	14.5

5. It swells when wetted.²

6. Although the group is essentially transitional it has a certain degree of permanency and only slowly disappears from the soil. It disappears more rapidly from chalky and sandy soils than from loams and clays.

These properties greatly enhance the fertility of the soil, and in most schemes of husbandry definite arrangements are made to keep up or even increase the supply of organic matter, while in forests the removal of leaves and other decomposable material has led to such bad effects that in all state forests of France, Belgium, Germany, etc., the practice is absolutely forbidden.

The group of substances possessing these properties is generally called "humus," and so long as the word is used in a collective sense as a convenient label it may be retained. But the practice has been responsible for a good deal of loose thinking, because it obscures the fact that the group is an indefinite and complex mixture, and gives instead the impression that it is a single definite substance.

From these half-dozen general properties we may infer that humus is a brown, slowly oxidisable colloid, but unfortunately we cannot get much further. Careful examination of a number of soils in their vegetation relationships has shown that there must be several dis-

¹ Measured by the loss on ignition.

² Peat shows this phenomenon in a marked degree, indeed after heavy rainfall inadequately-drained peat bogs may swell so much as to overflow into valleys with disastrous results. After drainage, however, drying and shrinkage set in, followed by a slow but steady erosion as air penetrates into the newly-formed spaces and starts the oxidation processes. When Whittlesey Mere was drained in 1851 a pillar was driven through the peat into the underlying gault, and the top of the pillar was made flush with the surface of the soil. So great has been the subsequent shrinkage that over 10 feet of the pillar is now out of the ground, and the process has not yet reached its limit, for a perceptible shrinkage took place during the dry season of 1911.

tinct types of humus, but the laboratory methods are not yet as sensitive as the growing plant and fail to indicate some of the differences. We have to look to field observations for the facts on which to base a scheme of classification, and, unfortunately, these are not yet very numerous.

Most of the recorded investigations are on peats of various kinds, and in this country the work has been done largely by Dr. Moss and other members of the British Vegetation Committee (289). At least three great classes and another two that may be transition forms were recognised.

1. Dry peat (the German *Trockentorf*) found on heaths in relatively dry regions and on poor sandy soils. It is often only a fraction of an inch in thickness, and is largely formed by lichens and mosses (*e.g.* *Cladonia rangiferina*, *Polytrichum piliferum*, and others). The dominant plant is *Calluna*. Much of the organic matter of heath soils, however, often consists of undecomposed vegetation, *e.g.* bracken fronds, etc.

1a. In wetter districts the layer of peat becomes thicker, and no doubt changes in composition, but it still carries essentially "heath" vegetation, although it shows resemblances to 2.

2. Wet peat (the German *Hochmoor*) formed in wet tracts or regions of high rainfall, and accumulating to so great a depth that it entirely determines the character of the vegetation whatever the underlying rock. It receives no supplies of spring or underground water, and, therefore, no dissolved salts; the drainage water is acid and poor in soluble mineral matter. Two great divisions are recognised: *lowland moors* or mosses, formed in low-lying wet places largely from sphagnum, cotton grass (*Eriophorum*), and *Calluna*; and *upland moors*, formed mainly from *Eriophorum* spp. and *Scirpus caespitosus* in elevated districts of high rainfall.

3. Fen (*Niedermoor* in German, see (299)) formed from a calcicolous vegetation (*Phragmites*, *Cladium*, *Scirpus*, *Carex*, etc.), in presence of calcium carbonate and soluble mineral salts, showing no acid properties and giving alkaline drainage waters.

3a. Carr, genetically related to the fen.

Between fen and peat several transition forms have been described by Weber (299) and also recognised in England. Some of our moors are built up on older fens.

Forbes¹ recognises three classes of peat in Ireland:—

1. Mountain peat, corresponding with the wet peat lowland moss

¹ A. C. Forbes, "Clare Island Survey," 1914, 9 (*Proc. Roy. Irish Acad.*, 1914, 31).

of the British Committee, which originates wherever the conditions are too sterile or the subsoil too impervious or water-logged to allow deep-rooted vegetation to flourish, and where, therefore, shallow rooted plants come in and, on dying, form a layer of organic matter on which sphagnum, cotton grass, etc., begin to develop. This occurs above the 800 feet level in most parts of Ireland, but in the west it often covers the entire surface down to the sea level.

2. Marsh peat, corresponding with the British fen, which arises from reeds, sedges, rushes, etc., and which, so long as the water contains lime and nutrient salts, is as favourable a medium for plant growth as ordinary soil though it affords no root-hold for trees so that they are liable to be overturned in strong gales. This kind of peat forms the basis of all the lowland bogs in Ireland and of many of the small bogs in mountain districts.

3. This marsh peat finally becomes so consolidated with time and pressure that it loses connection with the water table and a surface swamp forms on which a sphagnum bog of the "mountain type" arises. This, therefore, becomes similar in character to the first group: it differs, however, in its uniformity of growth, being higher in the centre than at the margins where soil water can get in and where, therefore, decomposition is more rapid.

The Scotch peats have been described by Lewis¹ and the Yorkshire moors by Elgee.²

Within each of the great classes described above several subdivisions are recognised, but how far they arise from differences in the organic matter, or from other differences, cannot yet be ascertained.

Numerous chemical analyses of the peats have been made by Tacke at Bremen (279), Gully (114), Michelet and Sebelien (199) and others.³

As a general rule, though with many exceptions, the percentage of nitrogen varies with that of the lime, and the high moor contains least of these, the low moor a larger quantity, and the fens a still larger quantity.

		Nitrogen per cent. in Dry Matter.	CaO per cent. in Dry Matter.	Observer.
High moor	Bremen	1'14	0'44	Tacke
	Lancashire	0'85	0'11	Russell and Prescott
Low moor	Bremen	1'62	1'24	Tacke
	Cheshire	0'91	0'16	Russell and Prescott
Fen	Norfolk	2'85	7'5	" "

¹ *Trans. Roy. Soc. Edinburgh*, 1905, 45, 699-726; 1907, 46, 33-70; 1911, 48, 793-833.

² F. Elgee, *The Moorland of North-Eastern Yorkshire*. London, 1912.

³ See *Jahresber. Agrik. Chem.*, 1878, p. 29, 1904, pp. 87, 88, etc.

The subject has recently come into great prominence by reason of the attempts to prepare ammonia from peat.

The investigations on the cause of the acid properties of peat are dealt with on p. 93.

Humus of Forest Soils.—An admirable series of studies has been made by P. E. Müller (205) of the types of humus occurring in the Danish forests.¹ In beech forests he found two types, which he called *mull* and *torf*, our nearest equivalents being mould and peat. On *mull* the characteristic plants were *Asperula odorata* with its associated *Mercurialis perennis*, *Milium effusum*, *Melica uniflora*, *Stellaria nemorum*, and others, moss being absent. The *mull* itself was only a few inches thick, and was underlain by 1 to 5 feet of loose soil, lighter in colour than *mull*, but almost equally rich in organic matter; still lower came a compact but porous layer of soil. The surface of the soil was covered by a layer of leaves, twigs, etc. Earthworms were numerous throughout; their potent influence in the soil had recently been shown by Darwin (75). Detailed chemical examination was not made: it was shown, however, that *mull* was free from acid and contained about 5 to 10 per cent. of organic matter completely disintegrated and most intimately mingled with the mineral matter.

Torf differed completely. The characteristic plant was *Trientalis europæa* with the associated *Aira flexuosa* and moss, but surface vegetation was not very common. The loose layer of leaves was absent, and the *torf* itself was so tough and compact that rain water could not readily penetrate. Below it was a layer of loose, greyish sand (*blei-sand*), and lower still a layer of reddish soil (*roterde*), or else a pan (*ortstein*). Practically no earthworms were found in the *torf*, but there were numerous moulds and fungi, *Cladosporium humifaciens* Rostrup and *Sorocybe Resinæ* Fr. being perhaps the commonest.

Torf was acid, contained about 30 per cent. of organic matter not completely disintegrated, nor well mixed with the mineral matter. It was not very favourable to the growth of young trees, and the forest tended to become an open heath as the old trees died.

The distribution of *mull* and *torf* did not seem to be determined by the nature of the soil, or by the amounts of soluble alkali salts or calcium carbonate present, but rather by the nature of the living organisms in the soil. Animals, especially earthworms, gave rise to *mull*, fungi produced *torf*. If the conditions were favourable to earthworms *mull* was therefore found, if not, *torf* was produced. The

¹Other investigations on forest humus are dealt with by Ramann, *Forstliche Bodenkunde u. Standortslehre*, 1893.

nature of the vegetation was also a factor: oak only rarely formed *torf* but commonly gave rise to *mull*, at least two varieties of which were observed; pine, like beech, could form either *torf* or *mull*, while *Calluna vulgaris* and *Vaccinium myrtillus* generally produced *torf*.

Humus of Field Soils.—It is commonly assumed that the humus of field soils is of the same nature as that of peat, fen or forest. There are undoubtedly certain properties in common, but pending further investigations it is well to keep them quite distinct. Some work has been done, but there is no doubt that a close study jointly by a botanist and a chemist would carry the problem much nearer to a solution.

The observations indicate that the mixture we have agreed to call humus does not vary erratically from field to field, but produces much the same effects over any tract where similar soil and climatic conditions prevail. The mixture changes when a new set of conditions occurs, but its general character persists over a certain range and then it merges into another type.

How many such types are recognisable will not be known till many more observations such as the above have been made, but as each type is settled by the ecologist it becomes the business of the chemist to examine the mixture and endeavour to correlate its composition with its properties. Two great divisions of the types can already be recognised: a neutral group commonly spoken of as neutral humus or "mild humus," and a group reacting like an acid and called "sour humus," acid humus, or by German writers *Rohhumus*.

In order to understand much of the chemical work that has been done, it is necessary to remember that the older chemists regarded humus as a single definite substance, or as a mixture of two or three definite substances. The favourite view was to consider neutral humus as the calcium salt of "humic acid," which could be extracted from the soil by dilute alkalis after preliminary treatment with hydrochloric acid. On acidifying this alkaline extract the "humic acid" came down as a brown colloidal precipitate. Acid humus was the actual humic acid itself. It was further supposed that humic acid could be synthesised by boiling sugar with hydrochloric acid, on the singularly inadequate ground that the product thus obtained is also a brown colloid. Numerous analyses have been made both of the natural and the synthetic "humic acid," some of which are given in Table XXX.¹

¹ Many partial analyses have been made. Cameron and Breazeale (66) in nineteen samples obtained percentages of carbon varying from 33·3 to 50·1, whilst Hilgard (133) found the nitrogen content to be:—

TABLE XXX.—ANALYSES OF THE ORGANIC MATERIAL EXTRACTED BY ALKALIS FROM SOIL (OFTEN CALLED HUMUS, SOLUBLE HUMUS, ACTIVE HUMUS, *MATÈRE NOIRE*, ETC.).

Source.	Carbon.	Hydrogen.	Oxygen.	Nitrogen.	Ash.	Observer.
Arable land . . .	56.3	4.4	36.0	3.3	Cal- culated ash-free	Mulder (204)
Garden soil . . .	56.8	4.9	34.8	3.5		"
Pasture land . . .	56.1	5.3	32.5	6.1		"
Peat . . .	59.0	4.7	32.7	3.6		"
Rich prairie soil .	45.1	3.7	28.6	10.4		Snyder (267)
Soil never cultivated	44.1	6.0	35.2	8.1	12.2	"
Cultivated subsoil (a)	48.2	5.4	33.2	9.1	6.6	"
" " " " (b)	50.1	4.8	33.7	6.5	4.2	"
" Humic acid " from sugar . . .	66.4	4.6	29.0	—	4.9	"
" Humic acid " from compost . . .	53.3	5.6	37.5	3.6	—	Berthelot and André (30-32) Berthelot and André (30-32)

These results are in accordance with the general fact brought out by the field observations, that under similar conditions the humus mixture is tolerably constant, but it is quite clear that each set of soils gives up a different lot of substances to alkalis. Indeed simple variations in the time or the method of extraction cause differences in the results even from the same soil.¹

The fact that humus is not a definite compound but a complex indefinite colloid was established by van Bemmelen in a remarkable paper in 1888 (19). Baumann's researches (9, 10) have carried the subject a good deal farther and it is now known that "humus" freshly precipitated by acids from an alkaline extract of soil, compost, etc., possesses the following colloidal properties:—

(1) Very high capacity for retaining water.

	Percentage of Humic Acid in the Soil.	Percentage of Nitrogen in the Humic Acid.
Soils of the arid regions (decomposition rapid)	0.20 to 3.0	8.7 to 22.0 (average 15.2)
Soil of the sub-irrigated arid regions	0.36 " 2.0	5.4 " 10.8 (" 8.4)
" " humid regions (decomposition slow)	1.0 " 10.0	1.7 " 7.0 (" 4.2)

C. B. Lipman, however, is convinced that there is an error here: he has not found more than 7 or 8 per cent. of N in the humus from arid soils: this is no more than occurs in the humus from humid soils (*Soil Science*, 1916, 1, 285-290). Westermann (302) has analysed humus from the Danish moors, and Gully (114) has studied humus from South Bavarian moors. Many of the older analyses have been collected by Wollny (319). The chemistry of the artificial humus bodies has recently been studied by Gortner and Blish, *J. Amer. Chem. Soc.*, 1915, 37, 1630.

¹ This is shown by the analyses of Miklauz (*Zeit. f. Moorkultur u. Torfverwertung*, 1908, 285) and Mayer. Sostegni (269) in 1886 had shown that humus is readily fractionated.

- (2) Extraordinary shrinkage on drying.
- (3) Reversibility, *i.e.* the freshly precipitated material redissolves when the precipitant is washed away.
- (4) Is coagulated by acids and salts, the electric current and frost.
- (5) Decomposes salts—calcium carbonate, calcium phosphate, etc.
- (6) Forms difficultly soluble and easily decomposable colloidal mixtures with other colloids.
- (7) Masks certain ion reactions (*e.g.* Fe cannot be detected by potassium ferrocyanide, etc.).
- (8) Forms absorption compounds.

The colloidal nature of the humus accounts for much of the failure of the earlier chemical work, and it adds to the difficulties of those modern chemists who have had the courage to tackle the problem. In spite of these difficulties two good investigations have been made.

Schreiner and Shorey (250) have attempted a resolution of the "humic acid" and of the "crenic acid" (the part not precipitated by HCl) and have obtained the following substances from the alkaline extract:—

Substances precipitated by Acids (the so-called <i>Humic and Umic Acids</i>).	Substances not precipitated by Acids (the so-called <i>Crenic and Apocrenic Acids</i>).
<i>Resin acids.</i> <i>Resin esters.</i> <i>Glycerides.</i> <i>Paraffinic acid</i> , $C_{31}H_{62}O_2$, m.pt. 45° - 48° , probably identical with the acid formed on treating paraffin with fuming nitric acid. <i>Lignoceric acid</i> , $C_{34}H_{68}O_2$, m.pt. 80° - 81° , isomeric with above. <i>Agroceric acid</i> , $C_{31}H_{62}O_2$, m.pt. 72° - 73° , a hydroxy fatty acid. <i>Agrosterol</i> , $C_{30}H_{44}O$, m.pt. 237° . <i>Phytosterol</i> , $C_{28}H_{44}O \cdot H_2O$, m.pt. 135° . Both of the cholesterol group.	<i>Dihydroxystearic acid</i> , $C_{18}H_{36}O_4$, m.pt. 98° - 99° , identical with the acid formed on oxidising elaidic acid. <i>α-Picoline γ-carboxylic acid</i> , $C_7H_7O_2N$, m.pt. 239° , identical with the acid formed on heating uvitonic acid to 274° . <i>Xanthine</i> , $C_5H_4O_4N_2$. <i>Hypoxanthine</i> , $C_5H_4ON_2$. <i>Cytosine</i> , $C_4H_5ON_3 \cdot H_2O$. <i>Histidine</i> , $C_6H_9O_2N_3$. <i>Arginine</i> , $C_6H_{14}O_2N_4$. <i>A pentosan</i> .

None of these, however, is the black substance which is the real characteristic of "humus," and until recently this had eluded investigation and was vaguely described as a "melanoid body". Maillard, however, (1896) has now thrown important light on its origin and constitution.

He was led by his investigations on the function of alcohol in the synthesis of albuminoids to study the action of a typical amino acid, glycocoll, on d-glucose. When 1 part of glycocoll and 4 parts of glucose were added to 3 to 4 parts of water and heated on the water-bath to facilitate dissolution the reaction mixture rapidly changed to yellow and finally to dark brown, CO_2 being given off. The action was a true condensation and not an oxidation, for practically no oxygen

was absorbed. The black material had the properties of soil humus: it was insoluble in water, dissolved in alkalis, but was reprecipitated on adding acids, and contained 4.4 to 6 per cent. nitrogen. The reaction turned out to be general, and was given by all the amino acids tried (glycocoll, sarcosine, alanine, valine, leucine, tyrosine, glutamic acid and also the polypeptids) and all the sugars. Xylose and arabinose reacted especially quickly, fructose, galactose, glucose and mannose less quickly and lactose and maltose still less, while saccharose acted only slowly. The reaction proceeds at ordinary temperatures, but more slowly.

Now it is practically certain that both amino acids and pentoses are formed during the decompositions in the soil, and it is highly probable that the black substance is formed by their interaction. Part of the black material, however, may arise from the oxidation of quinone which Beijerinck (17) found among the products of certain soil organisms working in culture solution.

For a long time the humus soluble in alkalis was supposed to play a great part in determining fertility: Grandeau (112) and Hilgard (133) especially considered it to be the most useful material for making plant food. Methods for determining its amount in soils were elaborated and many estimations were made. But nothing came of them: on the Rothamsted plots about one-half of the total nitrogen is soluble and one-half insoluble in alkalis whatever the manurial treatment. The idea rested on no experimental basis and, in the only recorded tests, Weir (300a) found that the removal of this soluble nitrogen caused no diminution in the productiveness of the soil. If this turned out to be general it would show that the really important nitrogen reserves are in the insoluble part, as is not unlikely in view of the circumstance that they probably consist of protein and similar bodies which do not dissolve in alkalis.

Kaserer¹ suggests that an important function of humus in the soil, so far as micro-organisms are concerned, is to act as a carrier of the numerous inorganic constituents they require.

Wax-like Constituents.

Some of the soil organic matter is wax-like in properties, interfering very much with the wetting of the soil and the movement of the water. As it only decomposes slowly it tends to accumulate in rich soils and to become rather troublesome. It can be extracted by organic solvents, *e.g.* toluene, and obtained as a yellowish-brown mass contain-

¹ H. Kaserer, *Internat. Mitt. f. Bodenkunde*, 1911, 1, 367-75.

ing appreciable quantities of nitrogen (a soil yielded '003 per cent. of a substance containing 3 per cent. of nitrogen in one of the writer's analyses).

The Nitrogen Compounds in the Soil.

It is convenient to collect together the main *data* connected with the nitrogen compounds of the soil. The total nitrogen in arable soils is usually about 0·15 per cent., in pasture soils about 0·3 per cent.; higher amounts are present in chalk soils and still higher in fen, moorland, and black prairie soils. About half of the nitrogen in arable soils

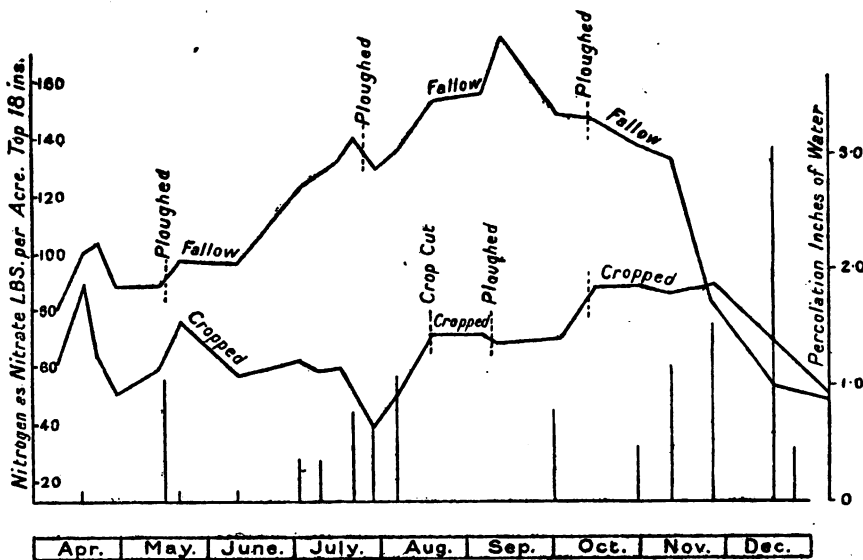


FIG. 7.—Amount of Nitrate in cropped and fallow soils at different seasons of the year. (Broadbalk field, Rothamsted, 1915.)

is contained in compounds soluble in alkalis, and a small proportion in unstable compounds readily breaking down to ammonia. The amount of nitrogen present as free or combined ammonia is about '0001 per cent. (*i.e.* 1 part per 1,000,000) in arable soils not rich in organic matter, and some ten times this quantity in pasture or heavily dunged arable soils. There is considerable variation in the amount of nitrogen present as nitrate; rich garden soils may contain 60 or more parts per 1,000,000 ('006 per cent.), arable soils 2 to 20 parts ('0002 to '002 per cent.), pasture soils rather less and woodland soils still less.¹ No soil

¹ It is sometimes stated that woodland soils do not contain nitrates and are unsuited for nitrification, but Weis (301) has shown this to be incorrect.

constituent fluctuates more in amount than nitrates; plants and rain rapidly remove them and bacterial action rapidly forms them. The producing agencies are active in spring, and work throughout summer and autumn, while the removal agencies are active in summer and winter. Thus the amount of nitrate actually present in arable soil is usually highest in spring, falls in summer, often rises somewhat in autumn, and falls again in winter as shown in Fig. 7 (p. 81).

The nitrate and ammonia together rarely account for more than 1 per cent. of the nitrogen in the soil: the remainder is in more complex forms. The part soluble in alkalis¹ may be the same type of compound as was obtained by Maillard in the condensation of sugars and amino acids (p. 79). The part insoluble in alkalis may be of protein nature. Jodidi² finds that about 75 per cent. of the nitrogen of the Ames soil (Iowa) can be extracted by boiling strong HCl, and 70 to 80 per cent. of this occurs in the solutions in the form of acid amides, amino acids and diamino acids. These are the products that would be obtained on hydrolysis of protein, and the experiment indicates a similarity to this extent between the soil nitrogen compounds and the proteins.

¹ After preliminary treatment with dilute acid (see p. 77).

² *Iowa Research Bull.*, No. 1, 1911.

CHAPTER IV.

THE COLLOIDAL PROPERTIES OF SOIL.

GRAHAM in 1861 introduced the term "colloids" to denote those bodies, which like glue, tend to form jellies rather than crystals, and which possess certain properties distinguishing them from crystalloids, such as high power of absorbing water and also dissolved substances from their solution. The idea subsequently arose that colloids were a distinct group of bodies, and when clay was observed to possess colloidal properties chemists went to a good deal of trouble to try and isolate the colloidal constituent: Schloesing (245*b*) described a process that required several weeks for its performance. Later on, however, it was recognised that colloids are not a group of substances but a state into which most solid substances can be brought: their properties are attributed to their highly extended surface. Any substance, therefore, that can be brought into a sufficiently finely divided state, or can be got into a "web" structure so as to make its surface sufficiently large, will show colloidal properties.

Van Bemmelen was the first to show how completely the clay and humus in the soil behave like colloids. And, as both these substances dominate the soil to a considerable extent, it is not remarkable that the soil as a whole possesses colloidal properties.

It is not my purpose to write a chapter on the properties of colloids. The soil student must, however, make himself thoroughly familiar with them¹ because he will find at every turn that the colloidal nature of the soil modifies or even determines its behaviour and leads to all sorts of unexpected results.

So far as the soil is concerned the most striking colloidal properties are:—

- (1) The power of absorbing substances from their solutions.

The absorption is in effect a precipitation: it may be regarded as a concentration of the absorbed body on the surface of the colloid and in this sense it is called an "adsorption". It differs from a simple

¹A convenient summary of the properties of colloids is given by Hatschek in *An Introduction to the Physics and Chemistry of Colloids*, London, 1913.

chemical precipitation in that it does not follow the ordinary laws of chemical reaction but special laws of its own. In general, but not invariably, the adsorption by colloids can be expressed by the equation

$$\frac{y}{m} = Kc^{\frac{1}{p}} \text{ where}$$

y = the amount absorbed by a quantity m of the adsorbent ;

c = the concentration of the dissolved substance when equilibrium is attained (this can readily be expressed as $(a - y)$ where a = the initial concentration) ;

K and p = constants depending on the nature of the solution and adsorbent.

As we shall see, this equation fits a large number of soil reactions.

(2) The power of absorbing water in considerable amount and holding it rather loosely : parting with it again by evaporation in a continuous manner without any definite breaks.

(3) The power of changing from the flocculated to the deflocculated state and *vice versa*. This is particularly shown by clay and has been discussed on p. 63.

(4) The power of entering into solution in pure water (not, however, a true solution) and of being thrown out again on addition of small quantities of electrolytes. The former state is called a "sol," the latter a "gel".

The effect of these properties has not yet been fully studied. It will, therefore, be most convenient to deal with a few directions in which work has been done, and this plan will have the double advantage of showing how the new ideas have developed and how far reaching is likely to be their effect in soil chemistry.

Absorption by Soil.¹

The facts of absorption by soil have long been known : they were established indeed by the end of the sixties. Soluble salts, such as ammonium or potassium sulphate, which might be expected to wash out of the soil with rain, do not, as a matter of fact, do so, but are kept back in such form that the plant can get them. In becoming absorbed, however, these substances displace something else, and conversely they can themselves be displaced by another salt. Hence there arise a series of interchanges which profoundly affect the nutrition of the plant.

The first quantitative investigation was made by Thompson (283) who showed that ammonium sulphate is decomposed when dissolved and shaken with soil, ammonia being fixed and calcium going into

¹ The literature of this subject has been summarised by J. A. Prescott in *Journ. Ag. Sci.*, 1916, 8, 111-130.

solution. The problem was taken up by Way (298) who found that the quantities of ammonia absorbed and of calcium displaced were equivalent. Further experiments by A. Voelcker (288*a* and *b*) and others, showed that the same action takes place in the soil itself when ammonium sulphate is added in the ordinary way as manure, an insoluble nitrogen compound¹ being formed which remains in the soil, while the calcium sulphate washes out in the drainage water. Potassium sulphate reacts in the same way, the potassium being precipitated and an equivalent amount of calcium going into solution. Potassium phosphate undergoes a more complete precipitation, since calcium phosphate is insoluble. The precipitated potassium compound dissolves somewhat in water, but it has no definite solution pressure, instead the amount of potassium dissolving increases with the amount present. It can also be decomposed by sodium salts; hence addition of sodium sulphate to the soil increases the amount of soluble potassium ions and to this extent acts like a dressing of potassic manure. Magnesium salts have a similar effect, and, like sodium salts, lead to an increase in the amount of potassium available for the crop. Some of Lawes and Gilbert's results (166*a*) are given in Table XXXI.

TABLE XXXI.—EFFECT OF SODIUM AND MAGNESIUM SULPHATES IN INCREASING THE SUPPLY OF POTASH TO THE PLANT. LAWES AND GILBERT (166*a*).

	Ammonium Salts only.	Ammonium Salts+Super-phosphate.	Ammonium Salts+Super.+Sulphate of Sodium.	Ammonium Salts+Super.+Sulphate of Magnesium.	Ammonium Salts+Super.+Sulphate of Potassium.	Ammonium Salts+Super.+Sulphates of Sodium, Magnesium, and Potassium.
1852-1861.	Plot 10.	Plot 11.	Plot 12.	Plot 14.	Plot 13.	Plot 7.
K ₂ O in ash of straw, per cent. . . .	18.8	14.8	20.1	22.0	24.1	23.7
K ₂ O in ash of grain, per cent. . . .	33.9	31.7	32.8	32.6	32.9	32.9
Weight of K ₂ O in ten whole crops, lb. . .	300	309	454	498	532	560
1862-1871.						
K ₂ O in ash of straw, per cent. . . .	14.5	14.1	17.2	18.5	25.0	24.6
K ₂ O in ash of grain, per cent. . . .	34.1	32.1	33.3	33.1	33.5	33.4
Weight of K ₂ O in ten whole crops, lb. . .	240	260	378	391	552	530
Total amount of K ₂ O taken by crop during the twenty years, lb.	540	569	832	889	1084	1090

¹ This insoluble substance does not seem to be an ordinary ammonium compound since it is not completely decomposed on distillation with magnesia. [Russell (241).] For an investigation of the similar Ammonia-Permutit combination, see Hissink (*Landw. Versuchs-Stat.*, 1913, 81, 377).

In the twenty years the sodium sulphate has enabled the plant to take up an additional 263 lb. of K_2O , whilst the magnesium sulphate has furnished it with an extra 320 lb. over and above what the crop on Plot 11 can get.

On the other hand gypsum has no such effect. The superphosphate applied to Plot 11 contains a considerable proportion of gypsum, but it does not increase the weight of potassium in the crop. This at first sight appears somewhat remarkable because, as has long been known,¹ when soil and water are shaken with gypsum, both potassium and magnesium are turned out from the soil and go into solution. As will be seen later, however, there is no real difficulty.

Some ions are not precipitated in the soil, including CO_3 , SO_4 , NO_3 , Cl, Mg, Ca, Na;² these are, therefore, the chief constituents of drainage water (see p. 69).

Organic substances, particularly those of high molecular weight, are also withdrawn from their solutions, but the reaction is apparently of a different type, since nothing appears to be given up from the soil in exchange. The result is of extreme importance; practically the whole of the organic matter added to the soil by plant residues or manure remains near the surface unless carried down mechanically by some agency such as earthworms. Even when heavy dressings of dung are annually supplied at Rothamsted there is after fifty years no appreciable enrichment of the subsoil in nitrogen (Table XXXII.). The purification of sewage by land treatment affords further illustrations of the absorptive power of soil for organic matter.

The Mechanism of Absorption.—In a classical investigation Way (298) argued that the absorption is purely chemical: the ammonia and the calcium simply changed places as usual in double decompositions or precipitations. He then proceeded to discover the particular constituent of the soil with which the reaction took place; he found it was neither the calcium carbonate, the sand, the undecomposed rock however finely ground, nor the organic matter.³ The active constituent was in the clay, but it formed only part of the clay, and

¹ E. Heiden, *Jahresber. Agrik. Chem.*, 1868, p. 59; *Annal. Landw. Preussen.*, 1868, 50, 29; Kolmann and Bocker, *Landw. Versuchs-Stat.*, 1878, 21, 349.

² From the time of Aristotle it has been known that sea water could be "desalted" by filtering through sand or soil. But it has been shown by Von Lippmann and Erdmann (*Chem. Zeit.*, 1911, xxxv., 629) that the water first running through the sand filter is not desalted sea water, but displaced water. When this has all gone the salt water runs through unchanged.

³ It was subsequently shown by König (153) that soil organic matter has a marked power of absorbing ammonia from ammonium sulphate.

moreover it lost its power on ignition. No known simple silicates showed these properties, but he prepared a number of "double silicates" of lime and alumina, of soda and alumina, etc., that did; thus they reacted, like clay, with ammonium salts to form an almost insoluble double ammonium silicate and a soluble calcium salt, and also, like clay, they lost this property after ignition. Although he did not establish the existence of such double silicates in soil, their resemblance to the reactive constituent in the soil was so close that he considered himself justified in assuming their presence.

TABLE XXXII.—NITROGEN IN BROADBALK WHEAT SOILS, 1893.
Per cent. of dry soil.

	Annual Dressing of Manure.					
	Unmanured.	Dung (2·0 lb. N).	Minerals only.	Minerals + 200 lb. Ammonium Salts. (43 lb. N).	Minerals + 400 lb. Ammonium Salts (86 lb. N).	Minerals + 600 lb. Ammonium Salts (129 lb. N).
Top 9 in. . . .	·0992	·2207	·1013	·1107	·1222	·1188
9 to 18 in. . . .	·0730	·0767	·0739	·0720	·0681	·0752
18 to 27 in. . . .	·0651	·0656	·0645	·0628	·0583	·0630

lb. per acre.

Top 9 in. . . .	2572	5150	2630	2870	3170	3080
9 to 18 in. . . .	1950	2050	1970	1920	1820	2010
18 to 27 in. . . .	1820	1830	1800	1750	1630	1760
Nitrogen supplied in Manure in the 50 years	None	10,000	None	2150	4300	6450

This chemical view was generally accepted in England, but it was controverted by Liebig who held that the whole phenomenon was physical and comparable with the absorption by charcoal. Plant food constituents occur in the soil in two states: chemically combined and physically retained: the latter being the looser is the more suited for the purposes of plant nutrition. "The power of the soil to nourish cultivated plants," he writes, "is therefore in exact proportion to the quantity of nutritive substances which it contains in a state of physical saturation. The quantity of other elements in a state of chemical combination distributed through the ground is also highly important, as serving to restore the state of saturation, when the nutritive sub-

stances in physical combination have been withdrawn from the soil by a series of crops reaped from it" (175, pp. 67-69).

Knop (150) combined both chemical and physical hypotheses. The absorption of acid radicles he attributed to precipitation by the iron and aluminium hydroxides supposed to be present in soil: phosphoric acid, however, reacted first with the calcium compounds to form calcium phosphate and then with the iron compounds. With bases the action was rather more complex: the absorption in the first instance was due to a surface attraction, which was followed by a combination with silica or aluminium silicates: there was, however, invariably an equilibrium, the whole of the base never being removed, no matter how dilute the solution.

Liebig's proposition which we have quoted above was expressed more tersely by Knop as follows: Soils of great fertility have a high content of easily replaceable bases; and he measured this by determining the ammonia absorbed from a 0.5 per cent. solution of ammonium chloride, assuming that, as absorption was only a substitution, the greater the amount of replaceable base the greater would be the absorption of ammonia. The method was applied to a number of soils and gave results in fair agreement with their agricultural history. It was somewhat modified by Kellner,¹ who measured the quantities of potassium and calcium displaced and found that they agreed exactly with the amounts taken up by plants in pot culture. The method was still further improved by Ramann: a 5 per cent. solution of ammonium nitrate is allowed to percolate through the soil and the displaced potassium and calcium are estimated.² A detailed study has recently been made by Prianischnikow (228).

Van tBemmelen (20a) began by accepting Way's chemical hypothesis, and showed that soils with a high power of absorption usually contained a large quantity of easily decomposable silicates (19a): Way's double silicates would presumably be of this nature. Further, absorption of bases always involved displacement of other bases from the soil, a strong indication of chemical change. Later on, however, he made extensive studies of absorption by simple gels: silica, alumina, ferric hydroxide, tin hydroxide, etc., and found it closely to resemble absorption by soils: other studies of colloids were made and in each case the similarity to soil phenomena was so close as to leave no doubt

¹ O. Kellner, *Landw. Versuchs-Stat.*, 1886, 33, 349.

² Recorded by J. A. Hanley in *Nature*, 1914, 93, 598. See also Küllenbergh, *Jahresber. Agric. Chem.*, 1865, 8, 15.

that soil was essentially a colloid and soil absorption simply a manifestation of the colloidal properties.

This new idea was soon found to explain many of the old discrepancies. Chemists had several times attempted to bring the phenomena of absorption equilibrium into line with those of chemical equilibrium, but the equations would not fit except for a narrow range of concentrations. Boedecker in 1859¹ had fitted an expression to Henneberg and Stohmann's results for ammonia absorbed and calcium displaced in the interaction between soil and ammonium sulphate, and Hall and Gimmingham (120), dealing with the same reaction, showed that the ordinary formula for chemical equilibrium held over a limited range of concentrations: but Cameron and Patten (67*a*, see also 300) found that it did not hold over a wider range. The absorption of potassium could not be fitted at all by the formula.

When, however, the adsorption formula is used a complete fit can be obtained: Wiegner (307*a*) has gone over the recorded data and shown that they all fit the equation given on page 84, *viz.*,

$$\frac{y}{m} = Kc^{\frac{1}{p}},$$

the constants having the values given in Table XXXIII. The constants vary with every change in temperature and concentration, and they are by no means absolute quantities. But for a given set of conditions they remain unchanged.

TABLE XXXIII.—VALUE OF "CONSTANTS" OBTAINED IN ADSORPTIONS BY SOIL.
(WIEGNER, 307*a*.)

Absorbent.	Solute.	K.	$\frac{1}{p}$.	Worker.
Garden soil . . .	NH ₄ Cl	0'0948	0'039	} Henneberg and Stohmann
" " . . .	NH ₄ Cl	0'131	0'424	
Nile sediment . . .	NH ₄ Cl	0'489	0'399	
Permutite } artificial	NH ₄ Cl	2'823	0'398	
Sodium zeolite }	CaCl ₂	2'487	0'317	} Armsby
Zeolite }	LiCl	24'419	0'414	
Soil . . .	NH ₄ OH	0'0994	0'434	} Brustlein
" . . .	NH ₄ OH	0'147	0'461	
" . . .	NH ₄ OH	0'054	0'386	

We still, however, have to account for the fact that the absorbed bases displace an equivalent amount of some other bases from the soil—a procedure which would be wholly unnecessary if nothing but adsorption were involved. This is done by supposing that only the hydroxide is absorbed: the acid radicle in general is not: it therefore

¹ *Journ. f. Landw.*, 1859, 48.

dissolves out some of the bases from the soil. As this is a purely chemical reaction the amount of base brought out is equivalent to the acid set free, *i.e.*, to the amount of base adsorbed by the soil.

Thus the modern position is essentially that of Knop, but the idea has been expanded, and above all the phenomena have been connected up with a wide range of others.

The Action of Dilute Acids on Soils.

It will be shown later that the reaction between dilute acids and soil is of very great importance to the soil chemist in enabling him to form some estimate of the amounts of the mineral plant nutrients present. The reaction ought in principle to be simple, but numerous investigations by Hall and Amos (118*a*), de Sigmund and others, have shown that it is not, and that it falls quite out of line with the ordinary chemical reactions. In particular different acids even at equivalent concentrations do not dissolve out the same amount of material, nor can any connection be traced between the "strength" of the acid and the amount of its action.

Russell and Prescott (240*b*) have studied the reaction between dilute acids and the phosphates in the soil and find that it can be interpreted completely as a simple solvent action followed by an adsorption.

When a soil is acted upon by a dilute acid the amount of P_2O_5 dissolved is found to increase continuously with the concentration of the acid. The curves obtained for different acids are all of the same type, but they show two remarkable peculiarities: (1) some of the strong acids such as hydrochloric and nitric bring out less P_2O_5 than the weaker citric and oxalic acids at equivalent concentration; (2) the amount of action is not always proportional to the time, and in the case of some acids, *e.g.*, hydrochloric and nitric, there is actually less P_2O_5 dissolved after 24 hours' action than after 20 minutes (Fig. 8).

This second result indicates that a reverse action is coming into play, proceeding more slowly, but usually going further, than the direct action: so that after 20 minutes the effect is determined largely by the direct action, while after 24 hours it is determined by the reverse action.

The reverse action was eliminated by a diffusion method. When this was done all dilute acids were found to act in very similar manner and the peculiarities disappeared. The direct action of dilute acids on soil phosphates, therefore, appears to be a simple chemical reaction of the ordinary kind.

The reverse action was investigated by swamping the direct action by adding sodium phosphate to the solution: it was found that P_2O_5

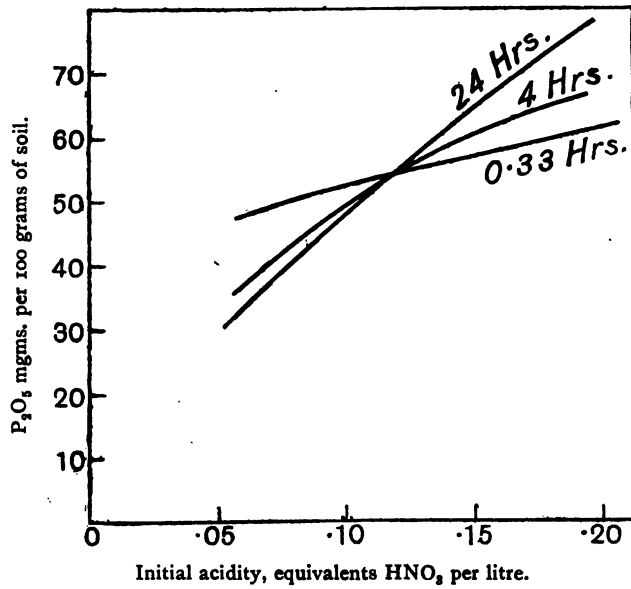


FIG. 8a.—Amount of P₂O₅ extracted from soil by HNO₃ of varying concentration acting for different times.

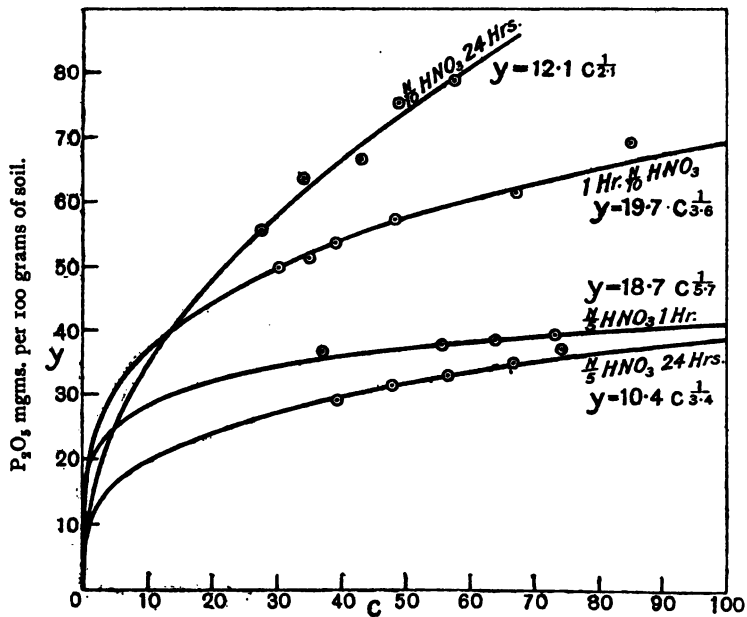


FIG. 8b.—Showing that the experimental points obtained in the action of dilute acid on soils lie on adsorption curves.

was absorbed from the solution notwithstanding the presence of acid, and the phenomenon was of the ordinary adsorption type, fitted by the equation given on page 84. Adsorption was not confined to phosphoric acid: it also occurred with oxalic acid and citric acids but not with hydrochloric and nitric acids.

Thus the reaction of the soil phosphorus compounds with dilute acids may be resolved into two separate actions: a direct action of the acid on the phosphorus compound, and an adsorption of the dissolved P_2O_5 by the soil. In high acid concentrations the former action predominates, but both actions always go on. The solvent action is practically the same for nitric, hydrochloric, and citric acids of equivalent strengths, and appears to be the normal action of an acid on a phosphate. The reverse reaction is the typical adsorption shown by colloids, and can be expressed by the equation which has been found to fit so many of them. It is considerably influenced by the acid, being greater in the presence of the mineral acids than of the organic acids. The amount of phosphorus compound actually brought out is the difference between the direct and the reverse action. Thus hydrochloric acid dissolves out a certain amount of phosphate, but considerable adsorption takes place, so that the net amount left in solution becomes small. Citric acid dissolves out the same amount of phosphate, but there is much less adsorption, and therefore the amount left in solution is markedly greater. The difference between the various dilute acids lies, therefore, not so much in their solvent power, which is very similar for all, but in their influence on the adsorption process.

Since all these dilute acids behave similarly in their direct action, and differ only in the extent to which they influence the adsorption process, the observed net effect of the acid on the soil is expressed by the ordinary adsorption curve, *i.e.*, parabolic curves of the general type:

$$y = Kx^{\frac{1}{p}},$$

where K and p are constants for each set of conditions, and do not include the variables x and y . But the numerical values of K and p depend on the nature and concentration of the acid, the time and temperature of the action, etc. A complete expression of the action of a given acid at varying concentrations for a given time therefore requires a series of curves, one for each concentration: or, in other words, a surface; the three variables being: P_2O_5 left in the soil, P_2O_5 left in solution, concentration of acid. The surface only expresses the action for the given time and temperature, and a series

of surfaces—in other words, a solid—is required to express the action at varying times but constant temperature, while with varying temperatures the case becomes more complex still. A very pretty problem thus opens out, with which, however, the soil chemist can hardly be expected to deal.

Soil Acidity.

It has long been known that certain soils are acid to litmus paper but become neutral again on adding lime or calcium carbonate. Many cultivated plants, notably clover and its allies, fail to grow well on such soils, and they only succeed after lime has been added: *Azotobacter* and other organisms are also adversely affected (p. 148).

The older chemists took the simple and obvious view that these soils contained an acid or acids, and, as "high moor" peat showed the same property, they concluded that the acid was of the same general nature in both cases. It was assumed the plant residues formed some acid substance at a certain stage in their decomposition, and this acid accumulated if the circumstances were such that decomposition became very slow, *e.g.* in badly drained and badly aerated soils.

But instances accumulated of acid soils, well drained and therefore not suffering from slowness of decomposition, containing so little organic matter that it was difficult to attribute acidity to organic compounds. It was therefore necessary to assume the presence of acid mineral substances in the soil, and a number of investigations were made showing that kaolin and similar silicates, which might be expected to occur in soil, become more and more acid to litmus paper on treatment with CO_2 solution: among recent papers is one by Gans (101), where the literature of this particular problem is reviewed.

Van Bemmelen's demonstration that humus is a colloid led Cameron to show that all the phenomena of soil acidity could be explained as simple colloidal manifestations and did not require the assumption of soil acids at all. It was only necessary to suppose that the soil colloids absorbed the base more readily than the acid from blue litmus and the whole phenomena are explained. In support of this view Cameron showed that cotton and other absorbents behaved exactly like "acid" soils, slowly turning blue litmus red; the phenomenon was therefore a general property of a class of absorbents.

Baumann and Gully (10) applied this idea to the case of peat and showed that it fully explained all the known facts.

In the first instance they pointed out that it was not necessary

to assume that the "acid" was a decomposition product because the original sphagnum was almost as "acid" as the peat.

Secondly, the acid if it exists must be insoluble because the water extract of the peat is practically neutral to litmus.

It must, however, be very potent because solutions of neutral salts such as calcium chloride, sodium nitrate, etc., are decomposed with liberation of free hydrochloric and nitric acids when treated with peat or sphagnum.

Baumann and Gully argue that no acid of this character is known to chemists, and it involves less strain to conceive of a physical adsorption of the base from the dissolved salt with liberation of the acid than to imagine an insoluble organic acid capable of decomposing simple salts in solution.

Further reasons for supposing that the phenomena are due to adsorption and not to chemical action are:—

1. The amounts of acid liberated from equivalent quantities of different salts of the same base are not equal as they should be in a chemical action.

2. The amounts of base absorbed are not equivalent, *e.g.* potassium is absorbed to a greater extent than sodium.

3. The amount of action varies with the concentration of the solution and the mass of the sphagnum, but not in the way that would be expected of a chemical change.

4. The conductivity of peat is very low, much less than that of an acid having the same solvent action on tricalcic phosphate.

The view that acidity of the mineral acid soils is due to preferential absorption of the base was developed by Harris (124) in an investigation of Michigan soils. The phenomena are substantially the same as for peat: the soil turns blue litmus red: an aqueous extract is neutral: but an extract made with a solution of a salt, *e.g.* calcium nitrate, is acid. We must therefore assume either an insoluble but very potent mineral acid, or a preferential absorption of the base over the acid. The latter is indicated because, as in the case of peat, the amount of acid liberated from equivalent quantities of different salts is not the same, as it should be in a chemical reaction.

Daikuhara (74a) has applied this view to the case of the acid mineral soils of Japan and Korea, but he has modified the explanation and made it more easily intelligible to the chemist, who finds it difficult to understand why an unparalleled physical decomposition of a simple salt should be accepted, and the assumption of a difficultly soluble but potent acid rejected. Daikuhara shows that the development of acidity

in the salt solution is due to an exchange of bases and not to simple absorption of the base from the salt. If the acid solution is analysed it is found to be really a solution of an aluminium salt: aluminium being given up from the soil in amount approximately equivalent to the base absorbed. Aluminium salts, as is well known, turn blue litmus red and therefore are indicated as acids. The phenomenon is still essentially an absorption, but the seat of the reaction is located.

This view is supported by Rice's experiments (238) which have demonstrated the substantial identity in hydrogen ion concentration of a solution of aluminium nitrate and the solution obtained by treating an "acid" soil with potassium nitrate solution.

Ramann adopts this view and gives up the expression "acid soils," using instead "absorptiv ungesättigte Boden". Kappen¹ confirms the observations without entirely accepting the explanation.

This physical explanation of acidity has not passed unchallenged. Rindall of Helsingfors (239), Sven Oden of Upsala (219a), Tacke (279) and Ehrenberg have each argued in favour of definite humic acids in peat. Oden dissolved some purified humus in ammonia and showed that the conductivity phenomena indicated a true salt; while Tacke showed that peat can not only invert cane sugar but can even give off hydrogen in contact with iron—two reactions difficult to explain on physical grounds. Truog (285) finds, in the case of mineral soils, that equivalent amounts of different bases are required to neutralise the acid properties of the soil—which if generally true would be easier to explain by assuming an acid than an adsorption.

Some writers have tried to combine both views and speak of "positive acidity" when the phenomena are caused by an acid, and "negative acidity" when they are due to absorption. But it is difficult to make the distinction in practice and not easy to believe that it is real. The phenomena are so similar that it is easier to suppose the same cause at work in peats and in mineral soils. It will readily be conceded that such common bodies as acids are likely to occur in peat and in soil. But it must equally be admitted that the phenomena are more easily explained as adsorptions—all except Truog's observations, which may yet turn out to be the awkward facts that will shatter this otherwise eminently satisfactory hypothesis.

¹ Kappen, H., *Studien an saurem Mineralböden aus der Nähe von Jena* (Landw. Versuchs-Stat., 1916, 88, 13-104).

In addition to this natural acidity it is possible to induce acidity in soils deficient in calcium carbonate by the long-continued application of ammonium sulphate. This was first observed by Wheeler in Rhode Island (303) and it is demonstrated in a remarkable manner at the Royal Agricultural Society's Experiment Station at Woburn. Apparently this is not the same as "acidity" liberated by solutions of neutral salts in acids, because ammonium sulphate appears to act specifically, no other fertiliser behaving in this manner at Woburn.¹

Hall supposes, with considerable probability, that the ammonia is taken up by the plant, leaving the sulphuric acid in the soil, and this view seems justified by the fact that nitrate of soda behaves altogether differently, leaving an alkaline residue in the soil.

Pan Formation.

A pan is a layer of hard impermeable rock that gradually forms at the usual water level below the surface of the soil under certain conditions. Its effect is to cut off the soil above from the material below and therefore to modify profoundly the movements of water and of air, leading often to swamp conditions. The effect on vegetation becomes so marked that in agricultural practice the pan has usually to be removed, often at considerable trouble and expense.

The conditions determining the formation of pan seem to be a supply of organic matter, permeability of soil, low content of soluble mineral matter, and absence of calcium carbonate. These conditions occur most frequently on light sandy soils where for some reason the water is held sufficiently near the surface.

Pans are best seen when the sand is overlain by a deposit of peat. The sand is then bleached to a depth of 5 to 60 cms. Suddenly there comes a change: a coloured layer of solid rock occurs which may vary in colour from yellow to black and in thickness from 10 to 60 cms.: on closer inspection this is seen to consist of particles of sand cemented firmly together. This is the pan:² underneath it lies the sand proper. But pans are by no means confined to peat: they often occur in forests, on heaths and on certain cultivated soils.

Chemical analysis shows that the pan is much richer in organic

¹ There are a few cases on record where potassium salts are said to have reduced yields, and here it is possible that acid substances have been liberated by the dissolved salt.

² In German the pan is called "Ortstein" and the bleached sand "Bleisand," "Bleichsand," or occasionally "Grausand". When the formation, instead of being sand, is clay, the white soils are called "Molkenböden". Some of these are described in *Internat. Mitt. Bodenkunde*, 1914, 4, 105-37. See also (24).

matter, iron, alumina, and especially material displaceable by ammonium nitrate solution than either the sand above or the sand below. Table XXXIV. gives typical results showing the amounts of material soluble in HCl.

TABLE XXXIV.—ANALYSES SHOWING CONCENTRATION OF IRON, ALUMINA, AND ORGANIC MATTER IN THE PAN.

	Pan from Caesar's Camp (Morison and Sothers) (803).			Pan from Freudenstadt, Black Forest (Münst).		
	Bleached Sand.	Pan.	Soil below Pan.	Bleached Sand.	Pan.	Soil below Pan.
Hygroscopic moisture . . .	1·27	3·06	·90	·300	3·79	·768
Loss on ignition . . .	1·84	7·22	1·36	—	—	—
Material soluble in NH_4NO_3 . .	—	—	—	1·577	10·92	1·946
Fe_2O_3	{ 493	4·066	3·211 }	·253	1·857	·906
Al_2O_3				·180	4·946	1·268
CaO				trace	·019	·021
MgO	·080	·350	·106	·015	·118	·088
K_2O	·063	·084	·110	·035	·172	·052
Na_2O	·087	·155	·152	·011	·041	·016
P_2O_5	—	—	—	·029	·059	·043
SiO_2	trace	·037	·018	·312	2·698	1·527
	—	—	—			

The process of pan formation, therefore, involves a concentration of these substances in a certain layer of the soil.

On the older view humic acid was supposed to be formed from the organic matter present, and to dissolve iron, alumina and other substances forming soluble humates which were washed down into the soil and precipitated at the point where pan formation occurred.

Various hypotheses were advanced to account for these changes.

Mayer (194), extending the earlier work of Emeis,¹ supposed that anaerobic conditions arose during part of the year when the land was waterlogged, and humic acid was then formed and the iron reduced to the ferrous state. Ferrous humate is soluble in water and therefore washes downwards: even aluminium silicate becomes partly soluble. At a certain depth this ceases; various causes may come into play: the water table may be reached, or there may be an accumulation of washed-down clay on which the humates are precipitated. Then in the dry part of the year oxygen can gain access to this depth converting the ferrous humate to ferric humate, which is insoluble, and therefore protected against further washing.

Ramann modified this somewhat by assuming that precipitation

¹ I have not been able to find Emeis's paper.

occurred when the solution of iron humate reached the zone, intermediate between the surface soil and the subsoil, where he supposes weathering to be still proceeding and where, therefore, there is a larger proportion than usual of soluble reactive mineral salts.

As an alternative Hall suggested that the solvent is CO_2 : the iron is reduced to the ferrous state by the organic matter and is then dissolved as ferrous bicarbonate. At the lower level the CO_2 escapes and the iron carbonate is precipitated and then oxidised.

These explanations seem very simple but they present several difficulties. In the first place Morison and Sothers could find no evidence that peat or humic acid can reduce ferric oxide, the first stage in the process, according to Mayer. Ferric chloride is easily reduced: so easily indeed that ferrous iron is produced during the process of testing a mixture of ferric oxide and peat if one begins by extracting with HCl ; but ferric oxide is not. Secondly, it is difficult to understand why the deposition should be so local and so sharply defined.

Recent workers, therefore (Münst,¹ Ramann,² Morison and Sothers (203)), regard the whole process as a formation first of a "sol" and then of a "gel," and Morison and Sothers suggest the following as the most probable course of events.

It is well known that "sols" change to "gels" in presence of small quantities of electrolytes and conversely "gels" often change to "sols" when electrolytes are removed. In normal soils the conditions are favourable to gel formation, but when in these particular soils the upper layer of sand becomes denuded of its soluble material by the persistent washing of rain water, the conditions become favourable for the formation of sols of ferric hydroxide and of humus—or ferric humate, if one likes to put it that way. Morison and Sothers actually obtained such sols³ by persistent washing of ferric-humus gels.

As the sol is washed down some is deposited on the bleached sand but the bulk of it passes to the permanent water level where it remains and accumulates, diffusion being practically non-existent. During the dry months a certain amount of desiccation takes place involving a deposition of the sol as a gel: there is also a certain amount of transformation of sol to gel through the presence of electrolytes in the ground water.⁴ Some of the humus gel becomes

¹ Münst, *Bied. Zentr. Agrik. Chem.*, 1902, 41, 3-10.

² Ramann, *Bodenkunde*, Berlin, 1911, p. 204.

³ As might be expected these did not give the ordinary iron reactions.

⁴ Ramann lays stress on this, Morison and Sothers do not because their sols were very stable in presence of electrolytes.

oxidised, some of both humus and ferric gels change their colloidal properties in other ways. When wet weather comes on again it is no longer possible for the whole of the deposited gel to change back to a sol: some will no doubt change, and there will be a certain washing down of the gel deposited on the bleached sand. But where the bulk had accumulated deposition has begun, and the place where this happened serves as a seat of further action.

This view seems more in accordance with the facts than the older one and it does not involve any unproved assumptions—such as reduction of ferric to ferrous iron and presence of ferrous iron in the pan.

There is another type of pan formation which must not be confused with this. On clay soils the continued ploughing to a uniform depth with heavy ploughs often leads to the consolidation of the underlying soil and the formation of a compact layer of clay which behaves like a rock. This effect is purely physical, it can be overcome by periodically sending a subsoiler behind the plough so as to break through the mass.

The Retention of Water by Soil and the Rate of Evaporation.

The older chemists and physicists divided the soil moisture into two kinds: free water, which was supposed to be suspended on the particles just as sea water is suspended on grains of sand or as oil on leaden bullets; and hygroscopic water, which was retained in a closer sort of way so that it could not be taken up by plants or micro-organisms. Methods for discriminating between these were devised, and pot experiments were made to ascertain directly the amount of free water available for the plant.

The first experiments made on the rate of evaporation of water from soil gave broken curves which could be explained on the assumption that these two kinds of soil water existed. Keen (146) studied the experimental method carefully and found that it was defective; when the defects were overcome a very different result was obtained.

Keen found that the relationship of water to soil differed considerably from its relationship to sand. The evaporation of water from sand, silt, china clay and ignited soil proved to be relatively simple and could be explained by the known laws of evaporation and diffusion. But the evaporation of water from soil could not: it was more complex. Instead of the simple proportionality between water content and time observed in the case of sand, the curves for soil were:

more exponential in type. The difference was traced to the soil colloids and it disappeared when the soil was ignited and the colloidal properties lost: the curve then became identical with that obtained for sand. The influence of the colloids has so far only been expressed empirically, but it is probably connected with the relation between vapour pressure and moisture content. But there is clearly something else at work for the curve is not of a simple exponential type. It is necessary to allow for another factor: the effect on the rate of evaporation of the decreasing water surface in the soil, the surface obviously diminishing in area as evaporation continues.

The equation finally developed by Keen is:—

$$A \frac{dw}{dt} = \left(\sqrt[3]{\frac{ws}{100}} + 1 \right) [2.303 \log_{10}(w + K) - \log_{10} K],$$

where $\frac{dw}{dt}$ = rate of evaporation.

w = percentage of water present by weight.

s = specific gravity of the soil.

A and K = constants.

This relationship holds without any break, proving that the water in a normally moist soil is all held in the same way without any break in physical state (Fig. 9). At one end of the curve the water is more easily given up than at the other, and in the competition for water between soil colloids and plants or micro-organisms some kind of equilibrium may be attained under definite conditions: this equilibrium is the "wilting-point" of the physiologist. On this view the other constants and critical points that have been indicated by various investigators are all equilibrium points and do not represent breaks in the condition of water in the soil.

The Influence of Colloids on the Biochemical Reactions Taking Place in the Soil.

It is obvious that a reaction taking place in a colloidal medium possessing properties like selective adsorption must differ from one going on in aqueous solution such as most chemists are accustomed to think about. We must therefore be prepared for unexpected results. It seems probable that some of the changes formerly attributed to bacteria may in reality be due to colloids: *e.g.* the decomposition of cyanamide in the soil.¹

Further, the colloids influence both micro-organisms and plants (p. 148) and therefore indirectly affect the reactions in the soil.

¹ See, *e.g.*, Löhnis, *Zeitsch. f. Gärungsphysiol.*, 1914, 5, 16-25.

Again, the remarkable changes observed in heated soils,¹ soils stored in a dry condition, such as the increase in amount of soluble matter,² in

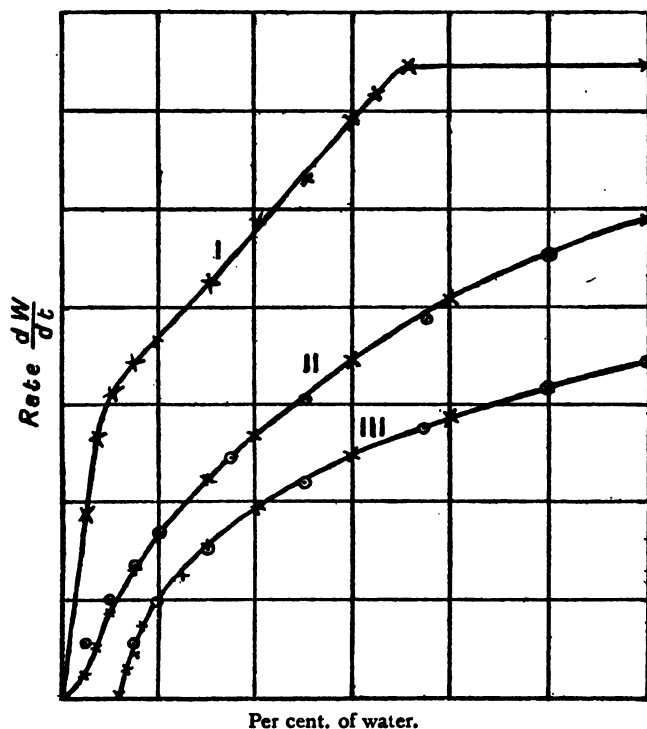


FIG. 9.—Curves showing rate of evaporation of water from: I. Ignited garden soil over conc. H_2SO_4 ; II. Arable soil (Hoos field, dunged) over conc. H_2SO_4 ; III. Arable soil (Hoos field, dunged) over 55.4 per cent. H_2SO_4 .

the rate of nitrification,³ and in the productiveness, are probably much influenced by changes in colloids. Gedroix's⁴ experiments with oats grown in soils kept dry for a number of years are given in Table XXXV.

TABLE XXXV.—EFFECT OF STORAGE IN A DRY STATE ON THE PRODUCTIVENESS OF SOILS. (Oats: Gedroix, 1908.)

No. of Years of Storage.	No Manure.	Complete Manure.	Complete without Nitrogen.	Manure without Phosphate.
0	10.3	83.5	13.5	11
1	17.8	83.9	32.3	19
3	24.6	90.9	23.6	35.4
5	25.0	102.8	32.2	42

¹ S. U. Pickering, *Journ. Agric. Sci.*, 1910, 3, 32 and 258.

² U.S. Department of Agric. Bureau of Soils Bul. 8, p. 13; *Bull.* 22, p. 41, also.

³ Buddin, *Journ. Agric. Sci.*, 1914, 6, 452-55.

⁴ Gedroix, *Bull. Internat. Instit. Agric. Rome*, 1915, p. 37.

The Estimation of Soil Colloids.

Efforts have been made to determine the amount of colloidal material in the soil by studying the absorption of dye-stuffs or of water vapour. So far the results are not easy to interpret nor are they always related to the other colloidal phenomena. It would therefore be premature to attempt any summary as yet: the student wishing full information may be referred to the papers on the absorption of dye-stuffs by Sjollema,¹ Endell,² Ashley,³ König, Hasenbäumer and Hassler,⁴ Hanley,⁵ and Tadokoro,⁶ the last-named giving other references also, and on the absorption of water vapour to Mitscherlich's papers.⁷ The general discussion of Leeden and Schneider⁸ may also be consulted.

The Constitution of the Soil.

The components of the soil do not form a mere casual mixture. A much more intimate mingling prevails, amounting almost to a loose state of combination, from which the separate substances are only extracted by drastic mechanical means, or gentle chemical treatment. The soil colloids and the calcium carbonate appear to be responsible for the formation of the compound particles, and as soon as they are altered by treatment first with acid and then with alkali the particles fall to pieces and the silt, clay, etc., can be readily separated by sedimentation processes. No method has been devised for measuring the size of the compound particles. Their existence can be shown in a clay soil by making two analyses of the same soil, one after the usual treatment with acid and alkali to break up the compound particles completely, the other on the untreated soil where the breaking up is only partial. The demonstration, however, does not work so well for loams (Table XXXVI.).

¹ *Journ. f. Landw.*, 1905, 53, 67.

² *Kolloid Zeitsch.*, 1909, 4, 246.

³ Ashley, H. E., *The Colloidal Matter of Clay and its Measurement* (U.S. Geol. Sur. Bull., 388, 1909).

⁴ *Landw. Versuchs-Stat.*, 1911, 75, 377.

⁵ J. A. Hanley, *Journ. Agric. Sci.*, 1914, 6, 58.

⁶ T. Tadokoro, *Journ. Tohoku Imp. Univ. Sapporo* (Japan), 1914, 6, 27.

⁷ These are summarised in *Internat. Mitt. f. Bodenkunde*, 1912, 1, 463-480.

⁸ *Internat. Mitt. f. Bodenkunde*, 1912, 2, 81.

CONSTITUTION OF THE SOIL

TABLE XXXVI.—EFFECT OF COMPLETE DISINTEGRATION OF SOIL BY ACID AND ALKALI
ON THE RESULTS OF MECHANICAL ANALYSIS OF A CLAY AND A LOAM.

	Clay Soil, Woburn.		Loam, Rothamsted.	
	Disintegration complete.	Disintegration incomplete.	Disintegration complete.	Disintegration incomplete.
Fine gravel	·3	·2	1·3	1·3
Coarse sand	8·3	8·6	9·5	8·5
Fine sand	3·2	2·9	22·7	26·9
Silt	8·6	12·1	32·3	33·6
Fine silt	11·2	13·3	8·9	9·3
Clay	43·2	36·3	12·9	11·1

The existence of these compound particles puts out of the question any complete quantitative interpretation of a mechanical analysis. The properties of a soil are not the sum of the properties of the separate fractions—clay, fine silt, etc.—because in a normal soil these fractions, which we may regard as the ultimate particles, are largely bound together into compound particles. How far the properties of the ultimate particles are modified by this union we cannot say, but no very profound alteration seems to take place in the sands and silts because the properties of the separate fractions, deduced by correlation methods from studies of numerous soils, agree tolerably well with the properties revealed by direct experiments on the fractions themselves. The finer particles are more changed, the result being to minimise the effects of their smallness. Thus, while the limits within which the properties of a soil fall are determined by the ultimate particles, a considerable variation is possible within these limits through the formation of compound particles.

It is unfortunate that so little is known about the compound particles, because they play a great part in determining the relationships between soil and plant growth. They can be disintegrated by various cultivation methods, such as ploughing the soil when wet, or by allowing the stock of organic matter and calcium carbonate to fall too low, and when this has happened the "clay" properties become emphasised, so that the soil loses its fine crumbly state and is very apt to become sticky when wet, and to dry into a hard cake through which young plants can only force their way with difficulty. The compound particles can be reformed by careful cultivation and by adequate additions of organic matter and calcium carbonate, but the process may take years, and it cannot be hastened until it is better understood.

In the preceding pages we have shown how many of the important soil properties are due to colloids. The formation of these compound

particles, the absorption of soluble manures, the retention of water (in part), the swelling of the soil when wet and its shrinkage when dry, are all colloidal phenomena. If we regard the mineral particles as the skeleton of the soil we must look upon the colloids as clothing it in many of its essential attributes. How the colloids are arranged in the soil is not known, but the simplest view, and one in accordance with all the facts, is that the mineral particles, especially the fine silicate particles, are coated¹ with a colloidal complex containing silica, alumina, ferric oxide, alkaline bases and phosphoric acid derived from the weathering of the rock material and the so-called humus. These various components are not in true chemical combination, but in a state of absorption, or solid solution. The complex is decomposable by changes in temperature, concentration of the soil solution, etc., but it decomposes continuously and not in the *per saltum* manner of ordinary chemical reactions. It can interact with various solutions, absorbing certain substances as a whole—*e.g.*, organic dye stuffs—or simply giving up to the solution an amount of base equivalent to what it has absorbed.

A wholly different conception of the constitution of the soil has been put forward by Whitney of the Bureau of Soils, United States Department of Agriculture, Washington (304-6). Soil particles are supposed to arise by disintegration and to consist of the original minerals of which the rock was composed; little importance is attached to the weathered silicates that play so large a part in the view just set out. Colloidal properties and the special clay properties begin to appear when the disintegration has gone so far that the particles become very minute: these properties are not associated with any particular complex, but are supposed to be exhibited by any substance that is sufficiently finely divided. Most agricultural soils arise from the same minerals and are therefore of similar chemical constitution: in consequence the solution in contact with the particles, *i.e.*, the soil moisture, is of similar composition and concentration for all soils. It is further supposed that, under similar climatic conditions, the concentration of any particular ion in the soil solution is not materially altered by addition of soluble salts, any such addition only forcing out of the solution a number of the ions already there. Special importance is attached to this soil solution and it is regarded as the food of plants² and the source of fertility of the soil; indeed the function of the

¹ See also 89a and b.

² It is interesting to note that a controversy on this point was going on fifty years ago when agricultural chemists first began to use water cultures. See Schumacher, *Landw. Versuchs-Stat.*, 1863, v., 270-307.

mineral part of the soil is mainly to hold up and distribute this solution. But the view that it is unalterable in composition has led to some highly controversial deductions. In particular, soluble fertilisers like potassium salts are not supposed to increase the amount of food available to the plant, but to owe their beneficial effects to indirect actions in the soil, such as the precipitation of toxic substances, facilitation of movements of soil water, etc.

Hall, Brenchley and Underwood (122*c*) have repeated some of the fundamental experiments, but have obtained results wholly different from those of the American investigators. Breazeale's experiments (51*a*) are always quoted by the Bureau of Soils as proof that small variations in concentration of the nutrient medium are without effect on plant growth. The Rothamsted workers on the other hand found that plant growth varied directly with the concentration.¹ Again, the soil solutions obtained from the different Broadbalk plots varied in composition in direct accordance with the fertiliser treatment and the history of the plot. The comparative growth of plants in these solutions was closely parallel to the growth of the crop on the plots, and corresponded to the composition of the solution. This is in direct conflict with the work of Cameron and Bell (67).

Gola (108) also found that the concentration of the soil solution varied with the soil, and Ramann (233) that it varied with the manuring, again in conflict with Whitney's view.

As developed more recently by Cameron (67), however, the views of the American Soil Bureau have more in common with those of the British workers. The solid particles of the soil are supposed to consist of disintegrated rock minerals, along with adsorption complexes, solid solutions such as the so-called basic phosphates, and indeterminate substances in an extremely fine state of division apparently containing "humus," oxides of iron and aluminium, etc. The solubility of these constituents in water is influenced by three circumstances: their fine state of division, the presence of CO_2 in the soil water, and the fact that, as regards the solid solutions and adsorption complexes, some sort of distribution coefficient comes into play. Since the soil minerals are salts of strong bases with weak and almost insoluble acids they become more or less completely hydrolysed in solution, so that the concentration of the base would have to be very high before equilibrium was attained. It is therefore improbable in humid areas that equilibrium ever is attained. Moreover, and this is a central part

¹ This was controverted by Stiles (*Annals of Botany*, 1915, 29, 89) whose experiments, however, have been destructively criticised by Dr. Brenchley (54*c*).

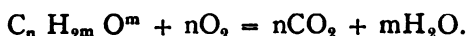
of the thesis, soil phenomena are dynamic and not static; the soil moisture, the soil solution, even the very particles of the soil itself are in continual motion and state of change. Hence the composition of the soil solution must be continually changing.

But it is considered that the amount of change in composition is small in comparison with the changes in the soil and such changes are not correlated with changes in the productiveness of the soil. All the factors in soil fertility are interdependent, and it is a mistake to confine attention exclusively to any one aspect of their action. Thus fertilisers should not be regarded exclusively as plant foods: they affect more or less every soil factor influencing crop production, and the problem can only be satisfactorily solved by discovering the nature and extent of these interrelations.

CHAPTER V.

THE CARBON AND NITROGEN CYCLES IN THE SOIL.

THE organic matter added to the soil by plants, etc., rapidly undergoes a number of changes in presence of air. Oxygen is slowly but continuously absorbed, and an almost equal volume of carbon dioxide is evolved, indicating that the main change is of the type—



Thus the carbon in the soil tends to fall off relatively to the nitrogen, and the ratio $\frac{C}{N}$ which in the original plant material, *e.g.*, the stubble, is about 40,¹ becomes reduced in the soil to 10 (Table XXXVII.). Other products are formed as well, including ammonia and the dark-coloured humus bodies already described, but the details of these changes are unknown. Investigations with the individual plant constituents, cellulose, fats, various organic acids, proteins have so far brought out little beyond the fact that they all oxidise to CO_2 in the soil, while the calcium salts of organic acids change to $CaCO_3$.

The rate of oxidation, as Wollny pointed out in 1884 (317), is very much diminished by traces of antiseptics, and the process is therefore apparently affected chiefly by micro-organisms. It shows a general increase up to a certain point with the amounts of moisture, organic matter and calcium carbonate present, although no sharp proportionality exists. It is closely related to productiveness; in a series of soils where the climatic and other external circumstances were similar the respective rates of oxidation were found to vary in the same way as the values for productiveness (Table XXXVII.).

The reasons for the connection between oxidation and fertility will become more evident as we proceed; the immediate connection is between oxidation and the activity of micro-organisms. In so far as oxidation is due to micro-organisms, its velocity obviously affords a measure of their activity. But there is a more fundamental relationship. Oxidation affords, so far as is known, the chief source of energy

¹ For leguminous crops, however, it is about 25.

108 SOIL CONDITIONS AND PLANT GROWTH

for the numerous micro-organisms of the soil. These organisms live in darkness, and, therefore, unlike plants, derive no energy from light; indeed light is fatal to many of them. So much are they dependent on oxidation that in those soils where oxidation proceeds very slowly, as in certain moorland soils, there is a corresponding diminution in the micro-organic population.

TABLE XXXVII.—RATES OF OXIDATION, ORDER OF PRODUCTIVENESS, AND ANALYTICAL DATA FOR CERTAIN WOBURN SOILS. RUSSELL (240a).

Name of Field.	Agricultural History.	Order of productiveness.	Oxygen absorbed in 17 days (mm.).	Analytical Data.			
				Nitrogen.	Carbon.	Loss on Ignition.	Calcium Carbonate.
Stiff Oxford clay	Wheat stubble	1	23·2	·252	2·53	8·73	·021
Road Piece	Wheat stubble preceded by mangolds fed on the land	2	18·7	·172	1·76	5·31	·072
Lansome field	Barley following mustard ploughed in; mineral manure	3	14·1	·122	1·19	4·17	·027
Lansome field	Barley following tares ploughed in; mineral manure	4	10·2	·132	1·24	3·22	·051
Lansome field	Barley following tares ploughed in; no mineral manure	5	8·2	·109	1·18	3·46	·008
Stackyard field	Wheat unmanured	6	8·2	·060	1·39	4·07	·004
Stackyard field	Wheat, ammonium salts only	7	7·8	·102	1·29	4·58	nil

Stoklasa and Ernest (273a) found about 0·05 gram CO₂ evolved per kg. of soil in 24 hours at 20° C. under aerobic conditions. Under anaerobic conditions the quantities were less.

The Decomposition of the Carbon Compounds.

Cellulose forms the chief constituent of the plant residues added to the soil and its decomposition is probably the largest single process occurring in the soil, accounting for the chief part of the "humus" found. The classical investigations of Omelianski showed that both marsh gas and hydrogen arise under anaerobic conditions, but in normal soils this does not happen. McBeth (187a) has isolated a number of bacteria from soils which are capable of decomposing cellulose, but in no case was gas evolved, not even CO₂. It therefore appears that the first action is to produce some simple substances which are acted upon by other organisms with formation of CO₂.

In humid regions the fungi and especially the filamentous fungi (Actinomyces) play an important part in cellulose decomposition, and there

is no question that these organisms deserve much fuller study than they have hitherto received (see p. 157).

The Nitrogen Cycle.

The chemical investigations of the nitrogen cycle in soils have usually been confined to changes in the percentage of nitrogen and in the amount of nitrate present, and consequently they throw little light on the actual reactions taking place. Incomplete as they are, however, they have served a useful purpose by indicating the nature of the problem and furnishing material that has helped in unravelling the rather complex changes going on. Four cases have been studied.

1. The simplest is that of an ordinary arable loam kept moist, aerated, and at 10° to 15° C.—these being normal conditions—free from vegetation and from the washing action of rain—these being abnormal conditions. A considerable formation of nitrate then takes place, about 3 per cent. per annum of the nitrogen being converted, and generally there is a small loss of nitrogen, presumably in the free state. How far the accumulation of nitrate would go under these circumstances has never been ascertained, because the experiment is necessarily very slow. Boussingault (48*b*) stated that in eleven years one-third of the nitrogen of a rich soil changed to nitrate, and about one-half of the carbon to carbon dioxide.

2. If the conditions are made more normal by exposing the soil (still kept free from vegetation) out-of-doors to the action of rain and weather generally, the nitrates do not accumulate but wash out, and can be detected in the drainage water. The soil thus loses nitrogen compounds, and in course of time the loss becomes very considerable. At Rothamsted a little plot of arable land $\frac{1}{1000}$ acre in extent has been kept free from vegetation by hoeing, but not otherwise disturbed, since 1870; it has now lost one-third of its original stock of nitrogen. The plot has been converted into a lysimeter by isolating it from the surrounding ground by cement partitions and then underdraining: the drainage water is all collected and analysed. At the end of thirty-five years the amounts of nitrogen found as nitrate in the drainage waters were added up and found to be only 110 lb. less than the total loss of nitrogen from the soil (Table XXXVIII.).

The obvious uncertainty attaching to so prolonged an experiment is reduced in this case by the fact that the determinations have for the last twenty years of the period been made by the same analyst. Miller found that the rate of loss of nitrogen (estimated by the quantities of nitrates in the drainage water) was about 40 lb. per annum in

the earlier years, and fell below 30 lb. per annum in the later years. The experiment is not fine enough to justify any discussion of the missing 110 lb., but it shows that the loss of nitrogen is *mainly* due to leaching out of nitrates.

TABLE XXXVIII.—CHANGES IN NITROGEN CONTENT OF A SOIL KEPT FREE FROM VEGETATION FOR THIRTY-FIVE YEARS, BUT EXPOSED TO RAIN AND WEATHER. MILLER (2006).

Per cent. of Nitrogen in Soil, top 9 inches.		Lb. of Nitrogen per acre, top 9 inches.			Nitrogen recovered as Nitrate, 1870-1905.
In 1870.	In 1905.	In 1870.	In 1905.	Loss in 35 years.	Lb. per acre.
146	102	3500	2450	1050	940

It is unfortunate that this highly important experiment has not been repeated with other types of soil, because there is evidence that a richer soil would lose *more* nitrogen than is accounted for by the nitrates formed, the rest presumably escaping as gas.

3. When the conditions are made wholly normal by allowing vegetation to grow, some of the nitrate is taken up by the plant and only a part is washed away, the division depending on the favourableness of the conditions for plant growth. The absorption of nitrate by the plant is much greater, and the amount of nitrate in the drainage water is therefore much less, on the Rothamsted wheat plots, where ample supplies of potassium salts and phosphates are present, than on the plots where these nutrients are less abundant and the crops smaller (Table XXXIX.).

TABLE XXXIX.—EFFECT OF PHOSPHATES AND POTASSIUM SALTS ON THE UTILISATION OF NITRATES BY PLANTS.

Treatment.	Crop yield per acre per annum.		Nitrogen, recovered in Crop, lb. per annum.	Nitrogen present as Nitrate in Drainage Water during Autumn, parts per million.	Per cent. of N in Soil.	N lost from soil, lb. per annum.
	Grain, bushels.	Straw, cwts.				
Ammonium Salts containing 86 lb. N + No P or K salts.	16.0	14.75	33.5	17.8	106	67.5
Abundant supplies of P and K salts.	26.7	30.75	45	8.5	116	51

Part of the absorbed nitrate remains in the root and stubble, and is again added to the soil when the plant dies. Hence the percentage

of nitrogen in the soil is higher where the conditions are favourable for the growth of plants than where, by the operating of some limiting factor, plants cannot make full growth and therefore leave untouched much of the nitrate to be washed away. It is this that accounts for the losses in fallow ground—losses that have been discussed by Lawes, Gilbert and Warington (166*b*), by Russell (240*d*) and by von Seelhorst (261).

Most of the data hitherto accumulated are incomplete, because they refer only to crop results and take no account of nitrates washed out in the drainage water: fuller data have, however, been obtained in the lysimeter experiments of Gerlach at Bromberg (104*c*), and they fully confirm the results set out above.

4. There is no reason to suppose that the amount of nitrogen in a prairie soil alters appreciably from year to year so long as the land is untouched. But directly ploughing and cultivation operations begin great losses of nitrogen set in, as shown by Shutt's analyses of the Indian Head soil, Saskatchewan (Table XL.). In this particular case* there is practically no drainage water, and therefore little or no washing away of nitrates, yet only one-third of the lost nitrogen is recovered in the crop. Snyder (267*b*) has given similar results for Minnesota soils, and Svanson for Kansas soils.¹

TABLE XL.—LOSSES OF NITROGEN CONSEQUENT ON BREAKING UP OF PRAIRIE LAND, TOP 8 INCHES. SHUTT (264).

	Per cent.	Lb. per Acre.
Nitrogen present in unbroken prairie	'371	6940
" " after 22 years' cultivation	'254	4750
Loss from soil		2190
Recovered in crop		700
Deficit, being dead loss		1490
Annual dead loss		68

The exhaustion of the soil is, therefore, not due to the removal of the crop, but to the cultivation.

Similar losses take place when heavy dressings of farmyard manure are repeatedly applied to land. One of the Broadbalk wheat plots receives annually 14 tons of farmyard manure per acre, containing 200 lb. of nitrogen. Only little drainage can be detected and there is no reason to suppose that any considerable leaching out of nitrates occurs, but the loss of nitrogen is enormous, amounting to nearly 70

¹ *Bull. Internat. Instit. Agric.*, Rome, 1915, p. 1027.

112 SOIL CONDITIONS AND PLANT GROWTH

per cent. of the added quantity. Alongside is a plot receiving no farmyard manure, from which in spite of drainage the loss is only very small (Table XL $\text{\textbf{L}}$).

TABLE XLI.—LOSSES OF NITROGEN FROM CULTIVATED SOILS, BROADBALK WHEAT FIELD, ROTHAMSTED, FORTY-SEVEN YEARS, 1865-1912.

	Rich Soil, Plot 2, lb. per Acre.	Poor Soil, Plot 3, lb. per Acre.
Nitrogen in soil in 1865	·175 % = 4,340	·105 % = 2,720
Nitrogen added in manure, rain (5 lb. per annum) and seed (2 lb. per annum)	9,730	330
Nitrogen expected in 1912	14,070	3,050
Nitrogen found in 1912	·245 % = 5,730	·103 % = 2,510
Loss from soil	8,340	540
Nitrogen accounted for in crops	2,550	750
Balance, being dead loss	5,790	-210
Annual dead loss	123	-5

Experiments of this kind have led to the conclusion that some gaseous product is formed in addition to nitrates, and, as no sufficient amount of ammonia can be detected, it is supposed that gaseous nitrogen is given off. The conditions for this decomposition appear to be copious aeration, such as is produced by cultivation, and the presence of large quantities of easily decomposable organic matter. Now these are precisely the conditions of intense farming in old countries and of pioneer farming in new lands, and the result is that the reserves of soil and manurial nitrogen are everywhere being depleted at an appalling rate. Fortunately there are recuperative actions, but one of the most pressing problems at the present time is to learn how to suppress this gaseous decomposition and to direct the process wholly into the nitrate channel.

We are now in a position to explain many of the anomalies and contradictions met with in investigations on the "availability" of organic manures. In these experiments it is usual to supply various nitrogenous manures to a series of pots, or plots, and then measure the effect on the growth of the crop, and compare it with the effect of nitrate of soda, which is taken as 100. The idea is that the nitrogenous compound changes in the soil to nitrate, and this is taken up by the plant, which thereby becomes the agent for measuring the amount of nitrate formed. The method is simple, and gives the kind of information the practical man wants, but, unfortunately, it rarely gives the same results twice. We can now see that it is incapable of accuracy: in the

first place the decomposition of the nitrogenous compound does not merely give rise to nitrates but to gaseous nitrogen also, and the relative amounts of these two products vary with the conditions obtaining in the soil; in the second place the efficiency of the plant as a nitrate absorber is not constant, but depends on all the various factors influencing plant growth; finally, only in the rare cases where the experiment is conducted in a lysimeter is any allowance made for the unabsorbed nitrates. In spite of these drawbacks, however, availability measurements are of some practical value in classifying roughly the various manures and systems of cropping.

It is evident that there must be some recuperative agency, or the stock of soil nitrogen, which is never very great, would long ago have disappeared in old countries. Experiment has shown that soil *gains* nitrogen when it is allowed to remain undisturbed and covered with unharvested vegetation as in natural conditions. On the Broadbalk field a third plot adjacent to the two already mentioned was in 1882 allowed to go out of cultivation and has not been touched since; it soon covered itself with vegetation, the leaves and stems of which go to enrich the soil in organic matter. The gain in nitrogen is very marked, as shown in Table XLII. The gain is much influenced by the amount of calcium carbonate in the soil, and is considerably

TABLE XLII.—GAINS IN NITROGEN IN SOILS PERMANENTLY COVERED WITH VEGETATION—ROTHAMSTED SOILS LEFT TO RUN WILD FOR 22-24 YEARS. HALL (121).

	Broadbalk: CaCO ₃ , 3.32 per cent.				Geescroft: CaCO ₃ , 0.16 per cent.			
	Carbon, per cent.		Nitrogen, per cent.		Carbon, per cent.		Nitrogen, per cent.	
	1881.	1904.	1881.	1904.	1883.	1904.	1883.	1904.
1st 9 inches . . .	1.14	1.23	.108	.145	1.11	1.49	.108	.131
2nd 9 inches . . .	.62	.70	.070	.095	.60	.63	.074	.083
3rd 9 inches . . .	.46	.55	.058	.084	.45	.44	.060	.065
Approximate gain in nitrogen, lb. per acre				2200				1400
Lb. per acre per annum				91.7				60

LAND LAID DOWN TO GRASS IN 1856 AND MOWN ANNUALLY (DR. GILBERT'S MEADOW, ROTHAMSTED).

	1856.	1879.	1888.	1912.
Per cent. of N in top 9 inches	[.152] ¹	.205	.235	.338

¹ Estimated.

less on another plot in Geescroft field where only little calcium carbonate is present; whether this is due to any specific action, or to the changed physical conditions brought out by decalcifying a soil, is not clear. Gains of nitrogen also take place on land covered with perennial grasses and clovers even when the crop is mown or grazed. On wet clay pastures dressings of basic slag have been found to increase the nitrogen content of the soil, whilst potassium salts, such as kainit, have had the same effect on sandy soil.

In all these cases leguminous plants are present in greatest extent where the gains in nitrogen are greatest, but they are not necessarily the only nitrogen fixers.

Advantage is taken of this recuperative effect in all rotations by alternating the periods of arable cultivation with periods of "rest" in grass and leguminous crops. In the old Norfolk rotations one year in four was given up to clover,¹ in modern rotations the clover or "seeds" mixture is sometimes left for two or three years before it is ploughed up, so that the enrichment may become more marked. Mr. Mason at Eynsham Hall² considerably enriched in nitrogen some poor Oxford clay by the growth of lucerne. But the gain in nitrogen does not go on indefinitely; in course of time a point of equilibrium is reached, higher or lower according to the soil conditions, where further gains are balanced by losses, so that the nitrogen content remains constant.

Thus there is an upper as well as a lower limit to the nitrogen content of the soil, the actual values depending on the soil conditions. Between these limits the nitrogen content may be maintained at any desired level, high when the ground is left in grass and leguminous crops, low when the ground is continuously cultivated. Unfortunately on our present knowledge it is impossible to maintain a high content of nitrogen on cultivated land except at a wasteful expenditure of nitrogenous manure.

Tentative determinations of some of these limits are:—

	Black Organic Soils (containing more than 10 % of Organic Matter).	Chalk Soils. ³	Loams. ³	Sands. ³
Upper limit . . .	1	42	25	20
Lower limit . . .	25	13	09	03

¹ It was known to the Romans that vetches were a good preparation for wheat (cf. Virgil, *Georgics*, Book I., lines 73 *et seq.*).

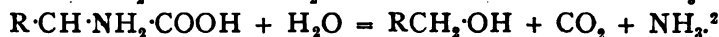
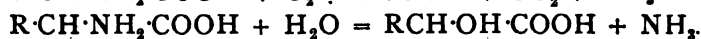
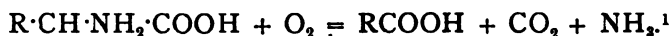
² *Journ. Roy. Agric. Soc.*, 1904, lxx., 106-24.

³ Containing less than 10 per cent. of organic matter.

The reactions involved in all these changes are obviously complex, but they have been partially disentangled, and we can now pass on to a more detailed consideration of the separate changes.

The Formation of Ammonia.

Ammonia is in all probability an intermediate product in the formation of nitrates. It is formed in the soil from the proteins of plant residues or manures, and the process is effected mainly by micro-organisms, but not entirely, for it still continues at a diminished rate in presence of antiseptics. The reaction has not yet been studied, but there is some evidence of the production of amino acids which subsequently hydrolyse, or oxidise. Although amino acids are in general fairly stable, several reactions are now known whereby they may be decomposed with production of ammonia.



It is not, however, known how they break down in the soil.

The investigations by Marchal (190) in 1893 of the method of ammonia production in the soil are so complete that little has since been added to the facts he ascertained. Müntz and Coudon (206, 207) had established the micro-organic nature of the process by showing that it was stopped by sterilisation. Marchal, therefore, made systematic bacteriological and mycological analyses of soils, and studied the action of the organisms thus obtained on solutions of albumin. Of the dozen or so varieties that invariably occurred, practically all decomposed the albumin and formed ammonia. *B. mycoides* proved very vigorous and was studied in some detail. The process was considered to be a simple oxidation necessary to the life of the organism; oxygen was absorbed and carbon dioxide evolved, the ratio $NH_3 : CO_2$ produced being 1 : 8·9. For complete oxidation of the carbon, hydrogen, and sulphur of the albumin molecule the ratio would be 1 : 10·3; but the change was known to be incomplete, and small quantities of leucine, tyrosine, and fatty acids could also be detected. Free oxygen, however, was not essential. When grown in a culture solution containing sugar and nitrate the organism took its oxygen from the nitrate, but it still produced ammonia.

Subsequent developments have been entirely on the bacteriological side. A number of organisms are now known to produce ammonia

¹ Dakin, *Journ. Biolog. Chem.*, 1908, iv., 63.

² Ehrlich, *Zeitsch. Verein. Rübenzucker Ind.*, 1905, 539-67.

from complex nitrogen compounds, but soil bacteriologists have generally preferred to study the group as a whole, rather than isolate and study individual members. The method consists in inoculating soil into various arbitrary culture media each designed to favour one group only of organisms. Some of the results obtained are discussed in Chapter VII. ; they show the method has some value as a bacteriological test, but it has thrown little or no light on the processes going on in the soil. Indeed, so dependent is bacterial activity on temperature, concentration, reaction of medium (whether acid or alkaline), and other conditions that it may be doubted whether any method of study, except in the actual soil itself, will further our knowledge very much. Russell and Appleyard (240g) have adduced evidence that the formation of ammonia takes place in two stages of which one is much slower than the other. The curve for nitrate accumulation in the soil usually lags two or three weeks behind the curve for increasing bacterial numbers, *i.e.*, it takes two or three weeks for the organisms to produce their full quota of nitrate. The delay is prior to ammonia formation: if it came later ammonia would accumulate, which it does not.

Nitrification.

The ammonia formed by the action of soil bacteria, or added in manures, is changed to carbonate which is then rapidly converted by *Nitrosomonas* into nitrite, and this by *Nitrobacter* into nitrate, the changes proceeding so rapidly that only traces of ammonia or nitrite are ever found in normal arable soils (241). We may, therefore, infer that the production of nitrates is the quickest of the three reactions, the production of nitrites is slower, while the formation of ammonia is the slowest of all and sets a limit to the speed at which they can take place. Thus a measure of the speed at which nitrates are formed in soil does not measure the rate of nitrification, as is sometimes assumed, but the rate of ammonia production.

The essential facts of nitrification are readily demonstrated by putting a small quantity of soil—.2 to .5 gram—into 50 c.c. of a dilute solution of ammonium sulphate containing nutrient inorganic salts and some calcium or magnesium carbonate, but no other carbon compound.¹ After three or four weeks at 25° the ammonia has all gone

¹ Omelianski (220b) used 2 grams each $(\text{NH}_4)_2\text{SO}_4$ and NaCl , 1 gram KH_2PO_4 , .5 MgSO_4 , .4 FeSO_4 in 1 litre of water, and added .5 gram MgCO_3 for each 50 c.c. of solution used. Nitrite formation goes on in this solution. For nitrate production he used 1 gram each NaNO_3 and Na_2CO_3 , .5 each KH_2PO_4 and NaCl , .4 FeSO_4 and .3 MgSO_4 in 1 litre of water. Ashby (7a and b) found that both processes went on simultaneously when he diluted the first of these solutions to one quarter the strength.

and its place is taken by nitrates. The conversion is almost quantitative, only an insignificant quantity of nitrogen being retained by the organisms.

The course of the oxidation is unknown, and nothing intermediate between ammonia and nitrous acid has been detected. Omelianski could obtain no evidence of an oxidase in *Nitrosomonas* (220c). The action of both organisms seems to be entirely specific. *Nitrosomonas* oxidises ammonium carbonate and nothing else; it will not touch nitrates, urea, or the substituted ammonias. Even ammonium salts are only nitrified in presence of a carbonate that can change them into ammonium carbonate (296). *Nitrobacter* is equally specific, oxidising nitrites only and not ammonia.

Addition to the solution of almost any carbon compound other than calcium or magnesium carbonates retards the rate of nitrification, glucose and peptone being particularly harmful (312). Carbon dioxide suffices as the source of carbon for the growth of the organism. Godlewski¹ showed that nitrification proceeds in solutions free from organic matter so long as the air supplied contained carbon dioxide, but stops as soon as the carbon dioxide is removed by passage over caustic potash. But the synthesis of complex cell substances from carbon dioxide is an endothermic process requiring a supply of energy. In the case of the green plant, the only other living thing known to utilise carbon dioxide, the energy comes from light, the transformer being chlorophyll. Here, however, light is out of the question, and is even fatal to the organism. Winogradsky (311) suggested that the necessary energy is afforded by the oxidation of ammonia and of the nitrite, and he traced a definite relationship between the amount of ammonia oxidised and the carbon assimilated.

	Experiment 1.	Experiment 2.	Experiment 3.	Experiment 4.
Ammonia oxidised (expressed as nitrogen)	722.0 mg.	506.1 mg.	928.3 mg.	815.4 mg.
Carbon assimilated . . .	19.7 "	15.2 "	26.4 "	22.4 "
Ratio $\frac{N}{C}$	36.6	33.3	35.2	36.4

In these experiments mixed cultures were used, the nitrate producers predominating. More recently Coleman (70), using pure cultures of nitrate producers, obtained ratios varying from 40 to 44.

No useful hypothesis has yet been put forward to account for these remarkable facts. The whole subject deserves serious attention from some competent chemist.

¹ Quoted in Lafar, *Tech. Mykologie*, 1906, Bd. 3, 165.

It was somewhat hastily inferred that organic matter would have a retarding effect in the soil just as it has in culture solutions. From the outset, however, certain facts were known to be against this view: thus, there was a good deal of organic matter in the old nitre beds (235) and also in rich gardens, and yet nitrification went on vigorously in both cases. An exception was therefore made in favour of "humus" (208). Later on Adeney (2), and again Miss Chick (70), found another exception: the organic matter of the filter beds used in sewage purification. Coleman has now shown (70), and Stevens and Withers (272) have confirmed it, that *only in culture solutions* is organic matter injurious: in the soil it does no harm, and may even help the process. Thus quantities of dextrose that stopped nitrification entirely in Winogradsky and Omelianski's culture solutions were found to act beneficially in soil under normal conditions of temperature and moisture content. The discrepancy cannot yet be explained. Sucrose, lactose, and certain other non-nitrogenous compounds had no effect, but nitrogenous compounds were distinctly injurious.

The organisms will not tolerate an acid medium; a sufficient excess of calcium carbonate is therefore necessary both in culture solutions and in soils. Nor will they tolerate free ammonia. In culture solutions the nitrate producer is somewhat sensitive even to ammonium salts, indeed both Warington (296) and Omelianski (220*b*) suppressed it by maintaining a sufficient concentration of ammonium sulphate; Löhnis has shown, however (183*a*), that it is more tolerant in the soil. Some substance toxic to them is produced when soil is heated to 98 C. or more, and in such soils they cease to act. Neither nitrosomonas nor nitrobacter has been observed to form spores, or to survive temperatures above 45° C., or treatment with mild antiseptics like carbon disulphide and toluene. But so widely distributed are they and so readily can they spread in the soil, if the conditions are at all favourable, that they may reappear unless special precautions are taken to prevent infection. Thus, it is commonly stated that treatment of the soil with carbon disulphide merely depresses without killing the organisms. Russell and Hutchinson found, however, that the organisms did not reappear if the soil was kept carefully free from re-infection (240*c*).

In pure cultures the organisms cannot tolerate absence of moisture, but die at once. In soil, however, they are more resistant. Absence of air puts an end to their activity.

There is some evidence that nitrobacter is more sensitive to adverse circumstances than nitrosomonas; it is also more rapid in action. Otherwise the two sets of organisms show very similar behaviour to

external influences, their main difference being the fundamental one that nitrosomonas oxidises ammonia, but not nitrites, while nitrobacter oxidises nitrites, but not ammonia. There are also certain morphological differences. Nitrosomonas, or coccus, occurs in several forms, mostly oval in shape, $\cdot 5$ to $1\ \mu$ wide and up to $2\ \mu$ long, but whether these are really distinct varieties is not known; a zooglea stage is also found; nitrobacter is rod-shaped, $1\ \mu$ long and about $0\cdot 3\ \mu$ thick; only one variety has been recognised. No other organisms are known with certainty to produce nitrates in the soil, nor can any other compound except ammonia be nitrified (220a).

The Evolution of Gaseous Nitrogen.

It has long been known that losses of nitrogen may occur during the bacterial decomposition of organic matter which cannot be attributed to the volatilisation of ammonia, and which, therefore, are put down to an evolution of gaseous nitrogen: instances are afforded by manure heaps, by rich soils, and by sewage beds. The observations go back to the time when the sources of nitrogen for vegetation were being investigated, and attempts were made to set up a balance sheet showing the relation between the amounts of nitrogen in the plant and the soil at the beginning and at the end of its growth respectively. Reiset,¹ Ville (287b) and Boussingault (46) sometimes found less nitrogen in soil + plant at the end of an experiment than in soil + seed at the beginning, and attributed the difference to an evolution of free nitrogen. Some of these early observations were probably faulty by reason of the crudeness of the analytical methods, but Lawes, Gilbert, and Pugh (164) showed that losses of nitrogen undoubtedly took place sometimes, though not always, when nitrogenous organic matter, wheat-meal, barley-meal, or bone-meal, was made into an "agglutinated condition" with water, and allowed to decompose in presence of air. Practically no ammonia could be detected. Lawes and Gilbert suggested three possible reactions, a suggestion that still holds the field.

1. An oxidation analogous to that of the action of chlorine on ammonia, by which free nitrogen is evolved.
2. A reduction similar to that of a great number of substances upon the oxygen compounds of nitrogen, by which the oxygen is appropriated and the nitrogen set free.
3. These two actions may operate in succession the one to the other.

Little attention was paid to these results at the time, but later on losses of nitrogen were found to occur in the purification of water and

¹ Reiset, *Jahresbericht der Chemie*, 1856.

of sewage. Angus Smith¹ in 1863 observed an evolution of gaseous nitrogen from a dilute solution of putrefying blood, and showed that nitrates gave off nitrogen under certain circumstances. The earlier sewage workers, Frankland,² and others, did not actually mention any loss of nitrogen during sewage purification though the published results show that it occurred. Later sewage workers recognised the loss, and Letts, indeed, made measurements of the evolved nitrogen, special gasimetric methods being devised for the purpose.³

A serious attempt to grapple with the problem was made in 1896 and 1897 at some of the German Experiment Stations, notably Jena, in consequence of the request made by the German Agricultural Society for an investigation into the losses of nitrogen from farmyard manure. The first hypothesis, set up by Wagner, was a reduction hypothesis to the effect that nitrates are present in the manure, and decompose in absence of air giving rise to nitrogen. This view, however, soon proved to be erroneous, for it supposed that the loss only occurred in absence of air whereas in point of fact it only occurs in presence of air.

Immendorf (141) recognised this fact and favoured the oxidation hypothesis, considering that evolution of nitrogen was the result of direct oxidation or combustion of the nitrogen compounds to gaseous nitrogen. No reduction of nitrate was assumed. Pfeiffer and his assistants at Jena (224*a*) began on the reduction hypothesis, and supposed that nitrates were formed on the outside of the heap and then diffused inside, where they were denitrified. But during the course of their experiments they changed their view, and ended by accepting the oxidation hypothesis.

Two lots of cow manure (made with peat) were put up: air was blown through one, and over the other. The losses of nitrogen were:—

	Grams.	Per Cent.
Air blown through	4.26	42.6
Air blown over	2.76	27.6

They argue that blowing air over the dung would be favourable to their supposed nitrification and denitrification process, while blowing air through would be unfavourable to it since denitrification requires an absence of air. Yet blowing air through the dung causes greater loss. Again, nitrogen may be lost where no nitrification is observed, and further, the effect of antiseptics on the extent of the loss is not what might be expected from a knowledge of their effect on deni-

¹ Angus Smith, *Memoirs Manchester Lit. and Phil. Soc.*, 1863, 1867-8, Vol. IV.; also *Report to the Local Govt. Board*, 1882.

² Frankland, Denison, and Chalmers Morton, *Royal Commission, Pollution of Rivers*, 1868, Vols. 1-4.

³ Letts, *Fifth Report, Sewage Commission*, Appendix 6, 171-94; also *Report to the Corporation of Belfast on the Purification of Belfast Sewage*.

trifying organisms. In consequence of these results they gave up the alternate oxidation and reduction hypothesis and accepted the direct oxidation hypothesis. Some support was lent to this direct oxidation view by the announcement that Wood and Wilcox¹ had isolated from bran infusions an organism able to liberate nitrogen direct from nitrogenous compounds: apparently, however, this has not been confirmed.

On the other hand, Müntz and Lainé (209) working on sewage purification, and dealing with percolation filters, reject the oxidation hypothesis. In the first instance they note that loss only occurs in presence of organic matter: it is not seen when a solution of ammonium salts is run on to the filter. Secondly, they find that the addition of nitrate to the liquor increases the loss of nitrogen. Laboratory experiments showed that it caused an evolution of nitrogen, and by working in a vacuum a complete balance was made as follows:—

	At Start.	At End.
Nitrogen as ammonia	16.3	15.2 mgs.
Nitrogen in organic compounds	12.2	13.1
Nitrogen as nitrite	1.2	0.5
Nitrogen as nitrate	30.6	8.0
Total	60.3	36.8
Loss		23.5

But they found dissolved in the liquid:—

Free nitrogen 38.1 c.c. at N.T.P. = 23.9 mgs., which thus almost exactly balances the loss.

This experiment shows that denitrification can take place and cause loss of nitrogen, though it does not necessarily exclude the hypothesis of a direct oxidation of ammonia.

Adeney's (2) results are also inconsistent with the direct oxidation hypothesis. When albuminose, asparagin, etc., are decomposed by bacteria in dilute solutions saturated with oxygen there is no loss of nitrogen. Russell and Richards (240i) were also unable to find any loss of nitrogen in the aerobic fermentation of urine or fæces, even though in the case of urine considerable nitrification occurred.

The present position of the problem therefore is that this loss of nitrogen does not occur under anaerobic conditions, nor under aerobic conditions; it requires a combination of both such as obtains in manure heaps, in rich soils and in the system of beds and filters in a sewage works.

These facts are inconsistent with either a direct oxidation or a direct reduction process: both Wagner's and Immendorf's hypotheses, therefore, are ruled out. They are consistent with Müntz's alternate nitrifi-

¹ *Journ. Soc. Chem. Ind.*, 1897, 16, 510.

fication and denitrification hypothesis but they do not prove it. Russell and Richards have given a more general explanation which seems to be free from some of the mechanical objections that can be urged against alternate nitrification and denitrification. They suppose that molecular groupings arise under anaerobic conditions which become unstable as soon as aerobic conditions set in, and decompose, splitting off nitrogen. The change is parallel to the shortening of the propionic acid chain with formation of an acetic acid derivative, which is known to take place in these conditions.¹

Although the investigations have been mainly on manure heaps and sewage beds there is evidence that the same process occurs in heavily manured soils and in virgin soils rich in organic matter brought into arable cultivation, and that it causes the losses already discussed on p. 111.

The Fixation of Nitrogen.

The first systematic search for a recuperative agency to make good the losses of nitrogen from the soil was started thirty years ago by Berthelot. He found that certain organic compounds could absorb free nitrogen under the influence of silent electric discharges, and at first attributed the natural recuperation to this cause. He also examined the possibility of bacterial action, as micro-organisms at that time were playing a large part in French science under Pasteur's influence. Accordingly he exposed sterilised and unsterilised sands and clays poor in nitrogen ('01 per cent. or less) to air in large closed flasks for five months, and found distinct gains in nitrogen in the unsterilised, but not in the sterilised soils. Fixation is, therefore, not due to any external physical cause which would operate equally in both cases, but to micro-organisms (26). This research was at once fruitful of results because it gave Hellriegel and Wilfarth the key to the clover problem (p. 17), and led Winogradsky (313) to search for the actual organism.

No investigator of our subject has shown greater ingenuity than Winogradsky in devising methods at once simple, direct and effective. In looking for the nitrogen-fixing organisms he inoculated soil into a medium containing every nutrient except nitrogen compounds: only bacteria capable of assimilating gaseous nitrogen could therefore develop, and these had a clear field. But he further recognised that the process was endothermic and required some source of energy, hence

¹ See Barger, *The Simple Natural Bases* (Longmans' Biochemical Monographs), where various instances are given.

he added sugar to the solution. The method (known as the elective method) thus consists in making the conditions as favourable as possible for the group of organisms under investigation, and as unfavourable as possible for all others; it has proved extremely valuable in the subsequent development of soil bacteriology.

Winogradsky's solution contained 2 to 4 per cent. dextrose, a little freshly washed chalk, 0.1 per cent. K_2HPO_4 , 0.05 of $MgSO_4$ and traces of $NaCl$, $FeSO_4$ and $MnSO_4$, together with a little soil. Under aerobic conditions nitrogen was assimilated and the sugar was decomposed with evolution of carbon dioxide and hydrogen and formation of n-butyric and acetic acids in the proportion of three or four molecules of the former to one molecule of the latter, the two acids together accounting for nearly half the sugar. A little alcohol was found, but practically no non-volatile acid. There was a distinct relationship between the amount of nitrogen assimilation and the sugar decomposed, each milligram of nitrogen fixed requiring the oxidation of about 500 milligrams of sugar.

Three organisms were present, a clostridium and two bacteria, and they obstinately refused to be separated by the method of successive cultures. Not until recourse was had to anaerobic conditions were the two bacteria suppressed and the clostridium obtained pure. The bacteria having been isolated it appeared that the clostridium alone possessed the power of fixing nitrogen, but a fresh difficulty now arose because in pure cultures the organism would *only work under anaerobic conditions*. Only when the protective bacteria were simultaneously present did fixation go on in presence of air. The organism was called *Clostridium Pasteurianum*: it formed rods 1.2μ thick and 1.5 to 2μ long and also spores (314).

In order to simplify the bacterial flora Winogradsky had heated his soil to 75° , thereby killing non-spore formers, but later on Beijerinck (14 and 15) working with unheated soil, discovered three other nitrogen-fixing organisms: *Azotobacter chroococcum* (so called because, as it ages, it turns brown and finally almost black), *Granulobacter* and *Radio-bacter*.¹ Of these *azotobacter* is the most active; it forms large cocci, or rods, 4 to 6μ in thickness, and does not produce spores. It differs in two important respects from clostridium: (1) it is aerobic; (2) it produces practically no butyric acid. Its effects can be studied by inoculating 0.1 to 0.2 gram of soil into 100 c.c. of tap water containing 2 per cent. mannitol, 0.2 per cent. K_2HPO_4 , and sufficient $CaCO_3$ and

¹ Since shown by Stoklasa (276) to possess only slight nitrogen-fixing power.

keeping for some weeks at 27° to 30° C. in a thin, well-aerated layer¹ in an Erlenmeyer flask. *Azotobacter* fixed more nitrogen than *clostridium* per gram of sugar decomposed; Gerlach and Vogel's (104*b*) results are:—

Glucose decomposed, mgs.	1,000	2,000	3,000	4,000	5,000	6,000	7,000	10,000	12,000	15,000 ²
Nitrogen fixed, mgs.	7.4	13.5	17.8	31.4	39.4	45.9	59.9	91.4	127.9	62.9
Nitrogen fixed, per gram. of sugar	7.4	6.8	5.8	7.8	7.9	7.6	8.5	9.1	10.7	—
Mean 8.9 mgs. nitrogen fixed for 1 gm. sugar.										

The nature of the compound is also important. Table XLIII. gives the amounts of nitrogen fixed per gram of compound decomposed in the experiments of Löhnis and Pillai (183*d*).

Richards (238*a*) has made the interesting observation that animal fæces also serve for the organism both in culture and in more natural conditions, but there is a sharp connection between the diet and the effect. Horses fed on oats gave fæces which induced the greatest fixation: horses in grass came next: cattle receiving cake were next, while the fæces from cattle fed on grass proved unsuitable.

TABLE XLIII.—MGMS. OF NITROGEN FIXED PER GRAM OF SUBSTANCE DECOMPOSED.
LÖHNIS AND PILLAI (183*d*).

Mg. of Nitrogen Fixed.	
7.5 to 10	Mannitol, xylose, lactose, lævulose, inulin, galactose, maltose, dextrin, sucrose + calcium carbonate.
5 to 7.5	Sucrose alone, dextrose, sodium tartrate + calcium carbonate, glycerol + calcium carbonate.
2.5 to 5	Starch, sodium tartrate, sodium succinate, calcium lactate.
1 to 2.5	Sodium propionate, sodium citrate, glycerol alone.
Nil	Calcium butyrate, potassium oxalate.

Little is known of the chemistry of the process, even the fate of the sugar has not been definitely ascertained. The only obvious product is carbon dioxide, fatty acids being formed only in small quantities, in sharp contrast with *clostridium*.

Starting with 15.9 grams of dextrose Stoklasa (276*a*) recovered 7.9 as carbon dioxide, 0.3 as ethyl alcohol, 0.2 as formic acid, 0.7 as acetic acid, 0.2 as lactic acid, but could not trace the remaining 6.5 grams.

¹ Later on Beijerinck used calcium malate in place of sugar, and showed also how to make plate cultures of the organisms (16).

² The sugar was not all used up in this experiment.

Beijerinck's solution works satisfactorily for crude cultures but not for pure cultures. Various hypotheses have been put forward in explanation; it was supposed that azotobacter required the presence of some other organism, or that it lost its efficiency on cultivation. Krzemieniewski (157*a*) found that neither of these views is correct, and in an important investigation showed that the determining factor is the presence of a little soil; so long as this is added pure cultures retain their effectiveness. The active agent is the humus, but its effect is not to furnish carbon or nitrogen to the organism; further, the humus loses its power after treatment with hydrochloric acid. Remy and Rösing (237*b*) frankly call it a stimulating action and attribute it to the iron invariably present.¹

The nitrogen is found partly in compounds dissolved in the liquid, but mostly in the bacterial mass. The organism is remarkably active, one gram weight evolving no less than 1.3 grams of CO₂ in twenty-four hours (273*a*). An adequate supply of phosphate, calcium carbonate and other mineral nutrients is essential, any deficiency limiting the amount of fixation. Traces of nitrogen compounds are helpful in the early stages, but larger quantities reduce the amount of fixation, and may themselves suffer some change: thus sodium nitrate is partially reduced to nitrite and ammonia. Several forms of azotobacter are now known: *A. agilis*, *A. vinelandii*, etc., and also various less efficient nitrogen fixers that more resemble clostridium, such as amylobacter (52) and granulobacter, some of which are aerobic and others anaerobic, but all form spores.² The great distinction between the two groups is that the azotobacter give carbon dioxide as the chief product from the sugar, while the others, even the aerobic organisms, form butyric acid in considerable amount and fix smaller quantities of nitrogen. Amylobacter also makes and stores glycogen, a property possessed by few other micro-organisms.

Kossowitsch (154) has shown that a mixture of azotobacter and algæ, especially nostoc, can work together very well, the algæ furnishing the necessary carbon compounds, while the azotobacter fixes nitrogen, an observation that has been confirmed by Bouillac (43 and 44). Sand has been found to gain nitrogen where the growth of algæ was possible and the proper bacteria were present.³

How far azotobacter is active in the soil in natural conditions has not been definitely ascertained, partly because of the analytical difficulties

¹ But see also Reed and Williams, *Centr. Bakt. Par.*, 1915, 43, 166.

² A list is given by C. B. Lipman in *Journ. Biol. Chem.*, 1911, x., 169-82.

³ A. Koch has collected instances in Lafar, *Tech. Mykologie*, Bd. iii., p. 15.

of measuring small gains of nitrogen, and partly because of the losses of nitrogen that, as we have seen, go on in presence of organic matter. The mere occurrence of azotobacter in the soil is no proof that it is actually fixing nitrogen, the only satisfactory evidence would be a demonstrated gain in nitrogen effected by azotobacter, all other possibilities being ruled out by the experimental conditions. The usual method of investigation has been to add sugar, or other carbohydrates, to the soil and measure the change in nitrogen content after various intervals of time. Generally, there is a gain of nitrogen; losses are, however, often recorded (248, 151, etc.), whilst a certain loss of nitrate invariably occurs (p. 133). A. Koch (151*b*) added successive small doses of dextrose to 500 grams of loam, mixed with sand and spread on plates to secure copious aeration, kept uniformly moist and at 20° C. Nitrogen fixation began very soon and reached its maximum after eighteen weeks, when losses set in; the results are given in Table XLIV.

TABLE XLIV.—NITROGEN FIXED IN SOIL BY BACTERIAL ACTION IN PRESENCE OF DEXTROSE. KOCH (151).

Increments of Dextrose per 100 grams of Soil.	Total Dextrose supplied in grams per 100 grams of Soil after				Mgs. N. Fixed per 100 grams of Soil after			
	5 weeks.	8 weeks.	18 weeks.	26 weeks.	5 weeks.	8 weeks.	18 weeks.	26 weeks.
	June 26.	July 20.	Oct. 3.	Nov. 30.	June 26.	July 30.	Oct. 3.	Nov. 30.
·2	1·0	1·6	3·6	5·2	8·3	14·9	17·8	18·9
·5	2·5	4·0	9·0	13·0	20·1	32·5	36·8	31·6
1·0	5·0	8·0	18·0	26·0	35·8	57·2	58·7	52·7
1·5	7·5	12·0	27·0	37·5	40·5	66·7	68·5	66·8
2·0	8·0	14·0	26·0	36·0	43·9	78·8	80·0	78·8

For each gram of dextrose supplied in the small doses about 8 milligrams of nitrogen were fixed during the first eight weeks; but only 4 or 5 milligrams later on. In larger doses the sugar was less effective, only 5 to 6 milligrams of nitrogen being fixed per gram of sugar at first and 3 milligrams later.

Pot experiments showed that the nitrogen thus added to the soil became available for plant food. Dextrose and sucrose first depressed the crop, then caused an increase, and finally left the soil richer in nitrogen at the end of the experiment than at the beginning (Table XLV.).

TABLE XLV.—EFFECT OF DEXTROSE AND SUCROSE ON THE PRODUCTIVENESS AND NITROGEN CONTENT OF THE SOIL. KOCH (151).

Sugar added per 100 grams of Soil.	Crops Obtained.				Total N. removed in Crop.	Nitrogen left in Soil, Spring, 1906.	
	Oats, 1905.		Sugar Beets, 1906.			Total N. per cent.	N. as Nitrates, parts per million.
	Dry Matter.	Yield of N.	Dry Matter.	Yield of N.	Grams.		
2 % dextrose .	100	100	100	100	0.5914	.093	10
2 % cane sugar .	32.8	62.5	186	190	0.6814	.105	17
2 % " " .	33.3	58.7	179	195	0.680	.105	15
4 % " " .	37.7	78.1	283	339	1.0092	.119	37

But if the soil temperature fell too low nitrogen fixation ceased : it was not observed at 7° C. although it appeared to go on at 15° C. The optimum temperature lies between 25° and 30° C.

Pfeiffer and Blank (224c), however, were unable to obtain any beneficial results from sugar. The Rothamsted trials showed increases for autumn applications but decreases for spring dressings.

Increased yields of sugar cane have followed the application of molasses to soils at the Station Agronomique and on Mr. Ebbel's estate¹ in Mauritius, where the residual effect is well shown, and also in Antigua.² Peck in Hawaii, on the other hand, observed marked losses of nitrate.

An increase in crop following the application of sugar or starch to the soil is not evidence of nitrogen fixation, but might equally well be adduced to show that sugar and its decomposition products are direct plant nutrients. Only when an actual gain in nitrogen is demonstrated by analysis does the proof become satisfactory. As a practicable scheme the addition of sugar to the soil would be out of the question for field work. Beijerinck (11) has shown, however, that certain decomposition products of cellulose also serve as sources of energy to azotobacter, and Pringsheim (231) has shown that the same holds true for clostridium also. These particular products (which were not identified) are apparently not always formed in the soil (151c), but are readily produced in culture solutions under the action of the mixed bacterial flora from soils, composts, dung and river mud. The difficulty of material might therefore be overcome because large quantities of cellulose are available on the farm in the form of straw. But there still remains

¹ See *The Agricultural News*, 1908, vii., 227; 1910, ix., 339, and 1911, x., 179.

² See *Manurial Experiments with Sugar Cane in the Leeward Islands*, 1908-09 and 1909-10. (Pamphlets 64 and 68, West Indian Department of Agriculture.)

the question of temperature. *Azotobacter*, as we have seen, requires more warmth than many other organisms, and according to Koch's experiments ceases to work at 7° C. Thiele read temperatures daily for three years of arable and grass soils at different depths at Breslau (282), and concluded that only rarely were they favourable for *azotobacter*. But it is impossible to argue from a culture solution to the soil, and indeed Löhnis has shown that the mixed cultures of the soil are almost as effective at 10° as at 20°.¹

10°-12° C.	20°-22° C.	30°-32° C.
3·15 mg.	4·55 mg.	4·27 mg. nitrogen fixed.

It seems legitimate to conclude that *azotobacter* fixes nitrogen in well-aerated soils sufficiently provided with calcium carbonate, potassium salts and phosphates, carbonaceous material of the right kind and moisture, so long as the temperature is high enough. Where the air supply is diminished owing to the close texture of the soil there is still the possibility of fixation by *clostridium*. Ashby (7c) found that the relative distribution of *azotobacter* and *clostridium* at Rothamsted depended on the amount of calcium carbonate in the soil; wherever any notable quantity was present, *azotobacter* invariably occurred: otherwise *clostridium* alone was found. It is not certain whether this result is due to some specific action of calcium carbonate or to the shortage of air supply consequent on the bad mechanical state always induced at Rothamsted when calcium carbonate is absent.

Nitrogen Fixation by Bacteria in Symbiosis with Leguminosæ.

After Hellriegel and Wilfarth's great discovery of the relationship between bacteria and leguminosæ (p. 16) many unsuccessful attempts were made to isolate and study the organisms by the methods then in vogue. In 1888 Beijerinck (11) broke away from the ordinary meat-bouillon-gelatin plate and substituted a slightly acid medium made up of infusion of pea leaves, gelatin (7 per cent.), asparagine (·25 per cent.) and sucrose (·5 per cent.). Growth readily took place and the colonies yielded rods 1 μ wide and 4 to 5 μ long, some of which showed signs of bacteroid formation, and "swarmers" 0·9 μ long and 0·18 μ wide, these being among the smallest organisms known.²

None of these organisms, however, could be found in the soil, nor indeed has any one yet shown how to find them there with certainty

¹ *Mitt. Landw. Inst., Leipsic*, 1905, vii., 94.

² Golding has shown that they will even pass through a porcelain filter and has prepared pure cultures in this way.

although their existence cannot be doubted. Their mode of entry into the pea was studied by Prázmowski (227), and later by Nobbe and Hiltner (216). The root hair is attacked, presumably by the "swarmer," and a filament, known as the infection thread and shown to be formed of rapidly multiplying bacteria, gradually extends up into the root where the nodule begins to form; beyond this, the organisms do not penetrate. The morphological changes have been described by Marshall Ward (294), Miss Dawson (80) and others. Soon the organisms surround themselves with slime and appear as bacterial rods, which then change to the characteristic branched or Y-shaped bacteroids and assimilate free nitrogen. The organisms have a remarkable power of discrimination and only enter in any quantity the particular species of plant to which they are accustomed; they can, however, train on to other species, but they then lose the power of attacking their original hosts.

Hiltner (134 and 135) regards them as parasites attracted chemotactically to the root hair by root excretion, but prevented from getting too far into the plant by excess of the attracting material, which now becomes a deterrent. He grades them according to their virulence, the less virulent either being unable to enter the plant, or, if they do enter, being quickly resorbed, or only fixing little nitrogen; the more virulent on the other hand bring about energetic fixation. As evidence he adduces the well-known fact that infection proceeds best in plants weakened by nitrogen starvation, and scarcely takes place at all in plants growing vigorously on rich soils. The parasitism is beneficial to both parties: the plant gains nitrogen and the organism gains carbohydrates.

In its general outlines the process has been reproduced artificially. Leguminous plants can be fed with nitrogen compounds and made to grow perfectly without the organism. On the other hand, the organism can be grown on artificial media containing carbohydrates,¹ made to pass through all its stages from swarmers to bacteroids, and to fix nitrogen.² The change to bacteroids is conditioned by the presence of carbohydrates or of small quantities of various acids, such as are known to occur in the plant (277). The fixation of nitrogen rapidly comes to a stop unless the resulting compound is removed, as in the plant. Golding has attained this end by an ingenious filtering device, and has thus succeeded in fixing considerable quantities of nitrogen. He has also

¹ Harrison and Barlow (126) used maltose: other observers have used an infusion of the host plant. Neumann suggests pentosans (213).

² See also (13).

shown that the reaction of the medium during actual fixation is alkaline, but changes to acid when fixation is stopped by the accumulation of nitrogen compounds. An actual loss then seems to set in (109).

The chemistry of the process is unknown; even the changes in the carbohydrates of the culture medium have not been worked out. Nitrogen fixation is known to take place in the nodule, which thus becomes richer in nitrogen than the rest of the root,¹ and its final product is supposed to be a soluble protein which is passed on to the plant. Olaru² finds that the action of the organism is considerably stimulated by the presence of traces of manganese, but as similar observations have been made with other organisms this may have no special connection with the fixation process.

But the amount of nitrogen fixed in this way is so large that it is easily measured on the field. When the host plant dies, or is ploughed into the ground, the nitrogen compounds speedily change into plant food. A uniform piece of ground at Rothamsted was divided into two parts: on one a crop of clover was taken, on the other barley was grown. After the crops were removed samples of soil were taken for analysis, and then barley was grown in both plots. The analytical results were:—

	Plot where Clover was Grown.	Plot where no Clover was Grown.
Nitrogen in crop (1873) lb. per acre. .	151·3 (in clover)	37·3 (in barley)
Nitrogen left in soil after crop was removed (1873) per cent.	·1566	·1416
Nitrogen in crop (1874) lb. per acre. .	69·4 (in barley)	39·1 (in barley)

These facts are well known to the practical man, and are utilised for increasing the nitrogen supply of cultivated soils and for reclaiming barren sands and clays (pp. 113 and 192). Leguminosæ are among

¹ Stoklasa's analytical results with yellow lupines (*Landw. Jahrb.* 1895, xxiv., 827) are:—

	Blossom Formed.	Seed beginning to Form.	Seed Ripe.
Nitrogen in nodule, per cent. .	5·2	2·6	1·7
Nitrogen in rest of root, per cent.	1·6	1·8	1·4

Whiting (*Illinois Bull.* 179, 1915) has recently discussed this question also.

² *Compt. Rend.*, 1915, 160, 280.

our commonest plants, both wild and cultivated. Wherever they grow they lead to enrichment of the soil in organic nitrogen compounds through the operation of the nodule organisms. The difference between the action of this organism and that of azotobacter is that it gets its carbohydrates from the plant, and is, therefore, independent of soil organic matter. Thus, it operates perfectly well in the poorest soils provided potassium salts, phosphates and calcium carbonate are present in sufficient quantity for the host plant, while azotobacter (except where it is associated with algæ, a case that requires further investigation) requires a supply of organic matter in the soil, and therefore only works in fairly rich soils where its effects are more difficult to measure.

Few improvements in agriculture have produced more marked effects than the extension of leguminous cropping. Where a leguminous crop has not hitherto been commonly grown it may be necessary to introduce the appropriate organism, as has been successfully done in Canada by Harrison and Barlow (126), in the United States by the Bureau of Plant Industry, and on the North German moors by Hiltner (135; see also 217 *a* and *b*). In Great Britain these inoculations have not proved useful, and they have never come into farming practice: the high hopes sometimes entertained that the whole problem of nitrogenous manuring—the most costly item in the farmer's fertiliser bill—might reduce itself solely to bacterial inoculation have never been realised.

Denitrification.

If the air supply of the soil is cut off by water-logging, or in the laboratory by means of an air-pump, the nitrates rapidly disappear, whilst nitrites, ammonia, or gaseous nitrogen are formed. The conditions can be so arranged that the decomposition of nitrate-bouillon by soil shall give rise to notable quantities of gaseous nitrogen, nitrous oxide (18), or nitric oxide (168 and 278*b*).

The reduction of nitrates to nitrite has long been known. As early as 1867 Schönbein¹ stated that it could be brought about by "frische Conferven, wie sie so häufig in stehendem Wasser vorkommen"; after 10 to 15 minutes' boiling, however, the property was lost. Meusel in 1875 (198) showed that it was bacterial, and could be stopped by anti-septics. The property appears to be generally possessed by bacteria and was shown by no fewer than 85 out of 109 kinds investigated by Maassen (186).

¹ Schönbein, C. F., *Beiträge zur Physiologischen Chemie, Zeitsch. f. Biologie*, 1867, 3, 325-340.

The formation of gaseous products is effected by a smaller but still considerable number of organisms; these were first investigated by Gayon and Dupetit (103), and by Déhérain and Maquenne (81*a*).

The physiological significance of the reduction appears to be that nitrates can supply oxygen to the organisms when free oxygen is no longer obtainable. It is not simply a reaction between the organism and the nitrate: easily oxidisable organic matter must be present at the same time. The partially decomposed organic matter of the soil—the “humus”—does not seem to be very serviceable (274).

There is a very sharp contrast between the bacterial production and the bacterial destruction of nitrates. Nitrate production is the work of one organism only at each stage, and the end result is a single product quantitatively equivalent to the original ammonia; no single chemical process oxidises ammonia in this complete manner. The bacterial reduction of nitrates, on the other hand, gives no single product, but a number of products not in any simple ratio, whilst the chemical reduction can readily be made to go quantitatively to ammonia.

Whether denitrification goes on to any extent in properly drained soils is doubtful, because the three essential conditions, lack of air, presence of much easily decomposable organic matter and of nitrate are rarely attained. In 1895 Wagner and Maercker startled the agricultural world by announcing that unrotted dung destroys the nitrates in the soil and reduces the crop yield (291). Their experiments were criticised by Warington (297) who pointed out that their dressings of dung were enormous and their results would not apply to ordinary farm practice. But it goes on to a marked extent in wet soils. Nagaoka (211, see also 74) has shown that nitrate of soda frequently depresses, instead of increasing, the yield of rice, sagittaria and juncus on the swamp soils of Japan, an action which he attributes to the formation of poisonous nitrites. Organic manures or sulphate of ammonia are always used on such soils. Kelly has obtained similar results in Hawaii.¹

Denitrification will also take place in peaty soils, and this has led to a very interesting observation as to the effect of lime. So long as these soils are left in their natural acid state nitrification cannot take place and therefore there is no denitrification. But as soon as lime is added in sufficient quantities to give a neutral reaction nitrification begins: part of the nitrate is then reduced to nitrite by microbic activity, then a chemical reaction sets in between the nitrite and the

¹ *Hawaii Bull.* No. 24.

peat whereby some nitrogen is lost and some transformed into insoluble compounds. Thus large doses of lime may produce very injurious effects on peat soils (Arnd (6)).

Assimilation of Ammonia and Nitrates by Bacteria and other Micro-organisms.

Various bacteria and moulds capable under suitable conditions of assimilating ammonia have been isolated from soils. They are not active in ordinary arable soils rather poor in organic matter; Schlösing *père* (245) recovered as nitrate 98 per cent. of the added ammonium compounds, so also did Russell and Hutchinson. In peaty soils, however, the assimilation of added ammonia appears to be more pronounced, amounting to nearly 30 per cent. in Lemmermann's experiments (170).

Certain organisms are capable of taking up nitrates. Whether the action goes on in the soil is not clear, but it is not excluded by the conditions; it requires easily decomposed organic matter (38) and air, in which respect it differs markedly from denitrification proper; it apparently goes on when sugar is added to the soil (151c). But such assimilation does not necessarily involve any loss of nitrogen, for as the bacteria die they are probably decomposed with formation of ammonia and nitrates once again.

Doryland (85a) has shown that this assimilation of ammonia and nitrates depends on the amount of energy material available, and may become considerable in favourable circumstances.

The Sulphur Cycle.

Sulphur enters into the composition of several plant constituents, and it appears to undergo a series of changes in the soil whereby it is converted into sulphate, in which form it is readily taken up once more by plants. The conditions of this change have recently been investigated by Brown and his co-workers (63 b and c) who call the process "sulfofication".¹

Effect of Bacteria on Soil Phosphates.

It is frequently suggested that the phosphates in the soil are made more soluble through the activity of bacteria, but there is no sufficient proof. British agriculturists in the eighteenth century recognised that bones acted better as manure after fermentation than before, but the older chemists attributed the action to the decomposition of the

¹ See also Kappen and Quensell, *Landw. Versuchs-Stat.*, 1915, 86.

organic matter and consequent greater accessibility of the phosphate. More recent bacteriological investigations by Stoklasa¹ and by Sackett, Patten and Brown,² however, show that certain bacteria have the power of dissolving both bone and mineral phosphates in culture solution, but the mechanism of the process is not clear. It is uncertain whether this action goes on in the soil: direct analysis has failed to demonstrate it and the evidence from field experiments is conflicting. Hartwell and Pember,³ and Tottingham and Hoffman,⁴ failed to find any increased solubility even when rock phosphate was composted with stable manure.

Swamp and Paddy Soils.

In the East—in India, Japan, etc.—considerable quantities of rice are grown on swamp soils, and the biochemical changes differ considerably from those in normal soils.

As already pointed out, nitrification does not go on but the converse process denitrification occurs, so that if nitrogenous artificial manures are to be used nitrates are out of the question and organic manures and ammonium salts only are possible.

Green manuring is, however, commonly adopted and considerably benefits the crop: the decompositions taking place when the green crop is ploughed in have been studied by Harrison and Aiyer (125). In the body of the soil marsh gas, hydrogen and CO₂ are evolved, as would be expected from the anaerobic decomposition of cellulose. But at the surface of the soil the change is entirely different and the gases consist of oxygen and nitrogen only. The difference was traced to a film of organisms which have the power of converting the marsh gas into CO₂ and this into oxygen. The oxygen is directly beneficial to the plant by providing for the aeration of the root. The production of oxygen was suppressed when the film was killed by adding copper sulphate: marsh gas and hydrogen then appeared at the surface.

It is only so long as the film is working that green manuring is beneficial to the crop. The plant roots must have oxygen and the film supplies it. The green manure, therefore, not only supplies ammonia, but also dissolved oxygen.

¹ Stoklasa, Duchacek and Pitra, *Centr. Bakt. Par.*, 1900, 6, 526 and 554.

² Sackett, Patten and Brown, *Michigan Special Bull.* 43, 1908.

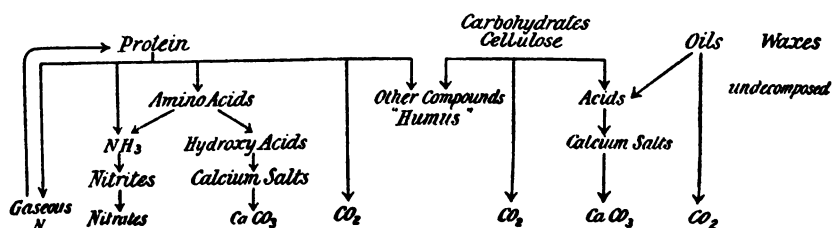
³ Hartwell and Pember, *Rhode Island Bull.* 151, 1912.

⁴ Tottingham and Hoffman, *Wisconsin Research Bull.* 29, 1913.

It would be interesting to have studies of the conditions obtaining in water cross-beds.

Summary of the Changes Taking Place and the Agencies Involved.

It is unfortunate that no synthesis of a soil has yet been effected, and consequently the preceding analysis of the changes taking place cannot be tested by reconstructing the whole process out of its constituent parts. On the whole the evidence is satisfactory as to the general course of the changes, but insufficient for sorting them out quantitatively and precisely. The following scheme summarises them as completely as is possible at present :—¹



There is good reason to suppose that all of these changes are effected by bacteria, but the evidence is by no means conclusive. The obvious test of working with sterilised soil is out of the question, because soil can only be sterilised by drastic methods that wholly change its character. The fact that antiseptics put an end to most of the reactions always used to be regarded as sufficient proof of their bacterial nature, but this argument has lost much of its force since Bredig and others² have shown that indisputably dead materials like spongy platinum partially lose their power of bringing about chemical changes when treated with antiseptics. Now the soil is a spongy mass, measurably radio-active,³ containing numerous colloidal bodies not much investigated, but conceivably capable of acting as catalysts, and it is possible to imagine a series of catalysts that would bring about all the known changes and

¹ It will be noticed that these processes show certain resemblances to those of sewage purification beds, as worked out by Adeney (2) and Fowler (99). The decomposition in the septic tank, however, and especially in the percolating filter and the contact bed, appears extremely rapid to the agricultural chemist; changes such as nitrification, for which he is accustomed to allow days or even weeks, being brought about in two or three hours even at the low temperature.

For the decomposition of fats, see Rahn (232).

² Cf. Bredig and Ikeda, *Zeit. Physikal Chem.*, 1901, xxxvii., 1-68.

³ See, e.g., Joly and Smyth, *Sci. Proc. Roy. Dublin Soc.*, 1911, xiii., 148-61.

be put out of action by antiseptics. Hypotheses of this nature have indeed been put forward from time to time: some ammonia is known to be produced by chemical processes in the soil, Sestini (263) has supposed that it is oxidised catalytically by the ferric oxide always present to nitrites and nitrates, while Loew (182*b*) states that nitrogen can be catalytically "fixed" and converted into nitrates. Russell and Smith (242) failed to reproduce these changes catalytically. Indeed the chief argument in favour of the bacterial hypothesis is that all known soil processes can be reproduced in the laboratory by soil bacteria acting under conditions comparable with those known to obtain in nature, whilst they have not been produced by catalysts. The bacterial hypothesis, therefore, remains the simplest and most satisfying, but there is room for more evidence before it can be regarded as positively established.

It is certain that living bacteria occur in the soil in addition to those present as spores. Some idea of the relative proportions of these two forms was obtained by making gelatin plate cultures of soil before and after treatment with toluene, which destroys living forms but not spores, or at any rate not all spores (Table XLVI.). Spores only form about 25 to 30 per cent. of the total numbers, and for some unknown reason do not accumulate. The bacterial numbers are seen to be very high, but even these figures do not represent the true totals, and no medium has yet been devised that allows of the growth of all the organisms known to occur in the soil.

TABLE XLVI.—NUMBERS OF ACTIVE BACTERIA AND SPORES OCCURRING IN SOILS AND CAPABLE OF GROWTH ON GELATIN PLATES. (RUSSELL AND HUTCHINSON (240*c*).) MILLIONS PER GRAM OF DRY SOIL.

	Arable Soil.	Rich Green-house Soils.
Forms killed by toluene (<i>i.e.</i> , active forms) .	7.4	39.6
Spores surviving toluene	2.9	13.3
Total growing on gelatin	10.3	52.9

The active forms must be held responsible for some at least of the oxygen absorption, carbon dioxide evolution and decomposition going on. Under comparable soil conditions a distinct relationship exists between the productiveness of the soil and the amount of bacterial activity, although it cannot be expressed in any definite form. Counts of the numbers of bacteria by any particular method fail to give results sharply connected with productiveness (although there is a general re-

lationship) because the organisms are of the most varied description (III), and of widely different efficiency as food makers. Nor, on the other hand, have the methods of physiological grouping helped much, since they necessitate growth in culture media wholly different from the soil under temperature and water conditions that never obtain in nature. Not until the fundamental difficulty has been overcome of synthesising a soil identical with natural soil will it be possible fully to interpret the many interesting observations that soil bacteriologists are now accumulating.

CHAPTER VI.

THE BIOLOGICAL CONDITIONS IN THE SOIL.

IT is now necessary to study the soil conditions that determine the growth not only of plants but also of the micro-organisms that, as we have seen, make new plant food out of old plant residues, and render possible the continuation of vegetable life on the earth. These conditions are water supply, air supply, temperature, food supply, and absence of injurious factors.

The Water Supply of the Soil.

The rain water falling on the soil immediately begins to soak in, but during its passage a certain amount is retained on the surface of the particles and never drains away; it forms a series of continuous films exhibiting, as Briggs (55*a*) has shown, all the special properties associated with the surfaces of liquids. Thus, the water remains on the particles against the force of gravity. Further, it tends to distribute itself evenly throughout a uniform mass of soil by moving from places where the curvature of the films is flat to places where the curvature is sharp. How far this tendency is an important factor in the distribution of water in the soil is not known; Leather's results at Pusa (167*a*) indicate that it may not be very marked. There are at least three factors that complicate the problem.

1. Evaporation is continually reducing the thickness of the films, and finally breaks them altogether, so that the soil becomes dry. It then remains dry till more rain falls, because the waxy material on the particles, like grease on a surface of glass, prevents the spread of the films, and may even make wetting by the rain a matter of some difficulty.

2. The pores of the soil are so small that there is considerable friction, retarding very much the speed of the water movements. In clay soils this retardation is particularly marked, and not uncommonly causes soils to crack with drought even within two or three feet of a stream. Not only are the film movements affected but the downward percolation also, so that free water is retained near the surface for a

considerable time, often over the interval between one shower and another. In sandy soils the pores are larger and the water movements more rapid.

3. The soil colloids absorb water without, however, holding it very strongly. It loses all power of movement and no longer forms an actual free film, but it still appears to be available for the use of micro-organisms and plant roots.

These facts explain the law empirically set out many years ago by Schübler (254) that the moisture content of a soil is a function of its structure. A sandy soil soon becomes wet, but dries again rapidly. Its large pores allow rapid percolation of the free water; its relatively small total surface (a consequence of the large size of its particles) holds a proportionately small amount of water; it possesses but little colloidal material to absorb and retain water. Addition of easily decomposable organic matter increases the amount of colloid and thus increases the water-holding capacity; addition of clay increases the colloids and the total surface, and also partially blocks up the pores, the two last effects being due to the smallness of the clay particles. Under equal conditions of water supply, clay soils and soils rich in organic matter are, therefore, much moister than sandy soils: illustrations are given in Fig. 6 (p. 72) and in Table XLVII.

TABLE XLVII.—MOISTURE CONTENT OF SANDY, LOAMY, AND CLAY SOILS AT WOBURN LYING NOT FAR APART AND UNDER APPROXIMATELY EQUAL RAINFALL CONDITIONS. RUSSELL.¹

	Sandy Soil (Clay = 5.0 per cent.).	Loamy Soil (Clay = 9.3 per cent.).	Clay Soil (Clay = 43.0 per cent.).
Highest observed	14.0	16.5	35.0
Lowest observed	1.1	6.0	15.8
Mean of all observations . . .	9	12	27

We can gain a better idea of the meaning of these results by translating them into volumes. The soil is a porous mass, and a large part of it is not occupied by solid matter at all but by air and water. Comparison of the true specific gravity determined by the specific gravity bottle with the apparent density obtained by weighing a block of soil of which the *in situ* volume is known, shows that the solid matter forms 50 to 65 per cent., leaving 50 to 35 per cent. of pore space. Organic matter increases the pore space in consequence of its "lightening" action (p. 71). This is shown in Table XLVIII. (p. 140).

¹ The determination is made by drying at 40° C.

TABLE XLVIII.—PORE SPACE, WATER CONTENT, AND AIR CONTENT OF CERTAIN SOILS. RUSSELL.

Soil.	Specific Gravity of Dry Soil.		Volume occupied in Natural State by		Volume of Water.		Volume of Air.	
	Apparent.	True	Solid Matter.	Air and Water (Pore space).	In Normal Moist State.	After Period of Drought. ¹	In Normal Moist State.	After Period of Drought.
Poor heavy loam (Rothamsted) (Loss on ignition, 4.3 %).	1.57	2.36	65.9	34.1	23.2	17	10.9	17.1
Heavily dunged arable soil (Rothamsted) (Loss on ignition, 10.0 %).	1.46	2.31	61.8	38.2	30.3	20	7.9	18.2
Pasture soil (Loss on ignition, 13.0 %).	1.17	2.22	52.7	47.3	40.0	22.3	7.3	25

The actual quantity of water present in the soil is constantly changing from the saturation quantity, which completely fills the pore spaces, to the minimum amounts recorded in Table XLVIII., but the extreme values only persist for a very short time in normal soils, the usual fluctuations being between much narrower limits. Thus, a considerable bulk of the soil is really water spread as films over the particles or held up in the pore spaces, but unfortunately the actual thickness of the films cannot be calculated from the available data.

The whole of this water is not generally available for any one plant. Water must be supplied to the plant at least as quickly as it is lost by transpiration, otherwise wilting sets in. Now the rate of supply of soil water is simply the speed at which water can move in the soil, and this, as we have seen, depends on the amounts of clay and colloidal matter present; it may easily fall below what is wanted for maintaining equilibrium in the plants growing on soils rich in clay or organic matter. Another factor also comes into play. The soil water is not pure, but contains dissolved substances which do not necessarily enter the plant simultaneously with it. As removal of the water goes on the solution becomes more concentrated, and may finally reach a point where it is too concentrated to enter the plant. Thus, wilting will often set in on clay or humus soils containing several per cents. of water.

Determinations have been made by Heinrich (128), Briggs (556) and Crump (73) of the water still remaining in the soil when wilting begins, and it is customary to speak of this as "unavailable" water. The ex-

¹ Driest periods of 1909 and 1910. During the abnormal drought of 1911 the numbers fell to 6 and 8 for the first two soils.

pression is unfortunate, because it entirely disregards the water that would be utilised if only it could travel quickly enough to the root, and assumes that the whole of the untouched water is present in some state other than the free state. Unfortunately wilting is so difficult to characterise, and is affected by so many external circumstances, that in any case it affords only a comparatively rough method of studying the "availability" of the soil water for the plant.

The relationship between the composition of the soil and the amount of hygroscopic moisture has been discussed by Briggs and Shantz (55*c*), who have suggested the following formula:—

Hygroscopic coefficient = $0.007 \text{ sand} + 0.082 \text{ silt} + 0.39 \text{ clay}$ where sand, silt and clay are expressed in American units (p. 58).

Alway (3) has modified the formula to make it fit the semi-arid or transition soils of Nebraska:—

Hygroscopic coefficient = $0.005 \text{ coarser fractions} + 0.07 \text{ "very fine sand"} + 0.082 \text{ silt} + 0.39 \text{ clay}$.

In these investigations the hygroscopic coefficient is defined as the moisture content of the soil when it has come into equilibrium with a saturated atmosphere: it is obviously necessary in determining it to begin with a dry soil.

Briggs and Shantz also give formulæ showing the relationship between the other coefficients: wilting coefficient, moisture-holding capacity, etc., and the composition of the soil.

Pratolongo (226) has made a detailed study of the rate of dehydration and rehydration of six soils, the chemical and physical properties of which he also determined.

The results given on p. 99 *et seq.* indicate that there is no break in the state of the soil water, and that these various coefficients represent equilibrium points.

Micro-organisms require less moisture than plants, because they do not pump out water into the air, and it often happens that the production of nitrate and ammonia still continues in soils too dry to admit of plant growth.

Air Supply.

The figures given in Table XLVIII. show that about 10 per cent. of the volume of a normally moist soil is occupied by air, but this volume is perpetually varying inversely as the amount of water varies. These changes alone would lead to a renewal of the air supply in the soil, but other factors, diffusion, changes in pressure, air movements, etc., come in, making the gaseous interchange still more complete. At soil depths

142 SOIL CONDITIONS AND PLANT GROWTH

TABLE XLIX.—COMPOSITION OF THE AIR OF SOILS, PER CENT. BY VOLUME.

Soil.	Usual Composition.		Extreme Limits Observed.		Analyst.
	Oxygen.	Carbon-dioxide.	Oxygen.	Carbon-dioxide.	
Arable, no dung for 12 months	19-20	0·9	—	—	Boussingault and Léwy (48a).
Pasture land	18-20	·5-1·5	10-20	·5-11·5	Schloesing fils (246).
Arable, uncropped, { sandy soil { loam soil no manure, { moor soil Sandy soil, dunged and cropped (potatoes), 15 cm. Seradella, 15 cm.	20·6 20·6 20·0 20·3 20·7	·16 ·23 ·65 ·61 ·18	20·4-20·8 20·0-20·9 19·2-20·5 19·8-21·0 20·4-20·9	·05-·30 ·07-·55 ·28-1·40 ·09-·94 ·12-·38	Lau (158) mean of determinations made frequently during a period of 12 months. Values at depths of 15 cm., 30 cm., and 60 cm. not widely different. (30 cm. values given here.)
Arable land unmanured .	20·4	0·2	18·0-22·3	0·01-1·4	Russell and Appleyard (240g).
" " dunged	20·3	0·4	15·7-21·2	0·03-3·2	
Grass land	18·4	1·6	16·7-20·5	0·3-3·3	

(Atmospheric air contains 21 per cent. of oxygen and ·03 per cent. of CO₂.)

reached by plant roots—some 6 to 12 inches—the soil air presents no abnormal features: there is some accumulation of carbon dioxide, because this gas diffuses out more slowly than water vapour, oxygen, or nitrogen, but the percentage volumes of oxygen and nitrogen are nearly the same as those of the atmosphere. Of course, if the air supply is cut off by an accumulation of water on the surface, the oxygen may fall considerably in volume, but this case is exceptional. At still lower depths the volume of carbon dioxide may rise above 1 per cent.¹

As might be expected, the carbon dioxide is higher in amount in summer than in winter, and higher in grass land than in arable. It may rise considerably in grass land, or in land recently dunged.

The Temperature of the Soil.

The temperature of the surface layer of soil, which in turn determines the temperature of the lower layers, is the resultant of several different effects. The actual amount of heat reaching the surface is that portion of the sun's rays that passes unabsorbed through the atmosphere, and is therefore dependent on the climate. The intensity of distribu-

¹ Pottenkofer's determinations at Munich at depths $1\frac{1}{2}$ -4 m. below the surface are published in *N. Rep. Pharm.*, 1873, xxi., 677-702, and abstracted in *Journ. Chem. Soc.*, 1873, 361, and 1874, 36.

tion of the heat over the surface depends on the slope of the land, and is greater the more nearly the land lies at right angles to the mid-day rays: thus, in our latitudes a south slope is warmer than a north slope, so much as often to produce marked vegetation differences. Many of the rays may be intercepted by vegetation, consequently land densely covered by plants is cooler and moister than bare land; advantage is often taken of this fact in tropical countries to protect soil from intense evaporation by the growth of "shade" crops. Of the rays that do finally reach the surface not all are absorbed, an unknown fraction being reflected back again into space: although no actual measurements have been made, the loss from this cause is probably greater on a white chalky soil than on a black humus soil.

The extent to which a given quantity of absorbed heat raises the temperature of a soil depends on its specific heat and this again on its water content. Dry soil has a specific heat of 0.2, while wet soil has a specific heat approximating more closely to 1, hence under equal sunshine conditions a dry soil will attain a higher temperature than a moist one. Not infrequently the surface layer of the soil is hotter than the air, especially on a sunny day.

As a result of the interaction of these factors marked temperature variations occur over comparatively small areas of soil, being produced by differences in aspect, moistness, vegetation cover, looseness and so on. Illustrations are afforded in Table L. These variations are, however mainly confined to the surface layer; the passage of heat through the soil is slow and consequently the fluctuations at a depth of 3 inches are less marked, especially in dry, loose soils. The thermal conductivity of a soil is increased by moistening and by compacting.

For ordinary working purposes the following summary will be found useful:—

- (1) A south slope is warmer than a north slope.
- (2) Bare land is warmer than land covered with vegetation, excepting during winter months.
- (3) Soil exposed to the sun's rays is often hotter than the air, and is subject to considerable temperature variations which, however, only slowly affect layers 3 or more inches deep.
- (4) Moist soil, being a better conductor than dry soil, is much more uniform in temperature.
- (5) At a depth of 4 to 12 inches soil is generally a little cooler than the air in summer, and warmer in winter.

Continuous records over periods of some months have been published by Wollny (319) and by Thiele (282). English data are rather

scanty and generally refer only to 6 inch or 12 inch readings; they have, however, been collected and worked up by Mawley and by Mellish.¹ Systematic readings are taken at the Radcliffe Observatory, Oxford,² and also at Kew. Detailed records of soil temperatures at East Lansing, Mich., have been taken by Bouyoucos (49) who has also discussed their effect on the physical properties of the soil.

TABLE L.—TEMPERATURES OF SOIL AT DIFFERENT DEPTHS UNDER VARYING CONDITIONS. RUSSELL.

Effect of Weather.

	Air Temp.	Temperature of Bare Soil.					
		Untouched.			Surface Stirred by Hoe.		
		$\frac{1}{2}$ inch.	3 inch.	6 inch.	$\frac{1}{2}$ inch.	3 inch.	6 inch.
Hot sunny day, 20th June, 1910	30°	35°	30°5°	27°	31°5°	29°8°	26°5°
Cold cloudy day, 27th June, 1910	18°	17°5°	16°7°	15°8°	17°	16°3°	15°5°

Effect of Vegetation.

	Warm Weather, 5th Oct., 1910, Air Temperature, 17°.			Cold Weather, 4th Jan., 1911, Air Temperature, 3°5°.		
	$\frac{1}{2}$ inch.	3 inch.	6 inch.	$\frac{1}{2}$ inch.	3 inch.	6 inch.
Bare soil	17°	16°7°	15°5°	3°	2°5°	2°5°
Soil covered with living vegetation (grass land)	15°5°	15°	14°5°	3°	3°	3°
Soil covered with dead vegetation (mulched land)	15°5°	15°	14°5°	2°5°	2°0°	2°0°

Food Supply.

In spite of numerous investigations our knowledge of the plant food in the soil is very limited. On physiological grounds it is supposed that the whole of the nutrient material coming from the soil enters the plant in the dissolved state, but whether the actual soil solution is all the plant gets, as Whitney and Cameron suppose (see p. 104), or whether the carbon dioxide respired from the roots³ effects

¹ See *Quart. Journ. Roy. Meteor. Soc.*, 1899, xxv., 238-65.

² See Rambaut, A. A., *Radcliffe Observations*, 1901, 48, 1-245 and 1911, 51, 193-204, also *Phil. Trans.*, 1901, 195A, 235-8.

³ At one time it was supposed that special acids were excreted by plant roots to dissolve insoluble food materials in the soil. This idea, which was a survival of the mediæval view that plants are wholly analogous to animals, persisted into our own times, but has been shown to be untenable by Czapek. So far as is known CO₂ is the only acid excreted. The evidence is of the negative kind and is therefore not entirely satisfying, so that the problem is periodically brought up again; recently, for instance, Pfeiffer and Blanck stated that other acids also are given off (264d). Cf. (275) and footnote, p. 25.

the solution of more material than is already dissolved, has not been ascertained. The soil solution may safely be regarded as the minimum food supply, which is reinforced to an unknown extent by the soluble substances in the soil. All attempts to get any further have broken down, partly because the soil solution cannot be separated and subjected to examination (p. 68), and partly because the soil compounds cannot be sharply divided into two groups, one soluble and the other insoluble.

Nitrogen nutrition presents a tolerably simple case because plants growing on cultivated soils probably absorb all their nitrogen as nitrates, which are readily and completely dissolved by water, whilst plants in undisturbed soil—grass land, etc.—probably utilise ammonium compounds as well. Potassium and phosphorus nutrition present greater difficulties because very little is known about the compounds of these elements in the soil. This particular problem is of such technical importance that it has been necessary to do something empirically, and by common agreement the small fraction of the phosphorus and potassium compounds soluble in dilute acids is called “available” food material, while the rest is said to be “unavailable”.¹ Here, however, the agreement ends, for no two dilute acids give the same results and no two Associations of Agricultural Chemists recommend the same dilute acid. Dyer’s 1 per cent. citric acid (91) is adopted in Great Britain, and its use has been justified by Wood’s investigations (320 and 321) and by those of Hall and Plymen (117). N/200 hydrochloric acid has been recommended in the United States, 2 per cent. hydrochloric acid by Nilson in Sweden, aspartic acid in Hawaii, and so on. Mitscherlich (201c) uses a saturated solution of CO₂ as being the nearest approach to natural conditions. A 2 per cent. citric acid solution has been suggested by Bergu.² Bogdanow³ in his investigations of Russian soils used 2 per cent. acetic acid. The German “Verband landwirtschaftlicher Versuchsstationen” recommends both 25 per cent. and 10 per cent. hydrochloric acid (see 224e). Lastly Ramann proceeds in a different manner altogether and adopts a method depending on the interchange of bases. The results obtained by different acids are shown in Table LI. Similar results have been obtained by Engels (95).

Even strong hydrochloric acid only dissolves a part of the potash

¹ Daubeney (78) originated this distinction, using the terms “active” and “dormant”.

² *Landw. Versuchs-Stat.*, 1901, 55, 19, also by Engels (95).

³ *Expt. Station Record*, 1900, 11, 130; 1901, 12, 725.

and phosphoric acid, the remainder not coming out till after treatment with hydrofluoric acid.

TABLE LI.—AMOUNTS OF K_2O AND P_2O_5 EXTRACTED BY ACIDS FROM ROTHAMSTED SOILS, PER CENT. OF DRY SOIL. HALL AND PLYMEN (118a).

K_2O .	Strong HCl.	Dilute Acids Equivalent to 1 per cent. Citric Acid.			
		Citric Acid.	HCl.	Acetic Acid.	Carbonic Acid.
Broadbalk unmanured . .	0.380	0.0043	0.0147	0.0082	0.0111
„ minerals only . .	0.463	0.0458	0.0522	0.0307	0.0215
„ dung . .	0.453	0.0400	0.0684	0.0451	0.0380
P_2O_5 .					
Broadbalk unmanured . .	0.114	0.0010	0.0021	0.0011	0.0005
„ minerals only . .	0.228	0.0510	0.0360	0.0098	0.0058
„ dung . .	0.209	0.0477	0.0224	0.0166	0.0095

The different action of the various dilute acids has been adduced as evidence of the existence in soils of a considerable number of phosphorus and potassium compounds of varying degrees of solubility, but no such assumption is necessary. It more probably represents the division of these compounds between two solvents, the weak acid and the colloidal complex in which they are present in the soil (see p. 90).

More definite information can be obtained about the nitrogen compounds. The amount of ammonia and of nitrate can be ascertained in any desired depth of soil. On cultivated land the amount is not generally more than enough for one year's crop, any balance being liable to be washed out in winter, so that the plant depends in spring on the activities of the decomposition processes for a regular supply of nitrogenous food. This is one of the factors that produce the marked retardation of plant growth in spring when the soil is wet and cold, especially after a wet winter when the washing-out process is complete, and it further accounts for the remarkable benefits produced by even small additions of nitrate of soda to the soil at this period.

In dry regions the accumulation of plant food and other soluble decomposition products in the soil may be too great to admit of plant growth, and bare patches or regions arise known as "alkali soils" from the circumstance that sodium and potassium carbonates are often present. In wetter climates the soluble substances tend to be washed out more completely, but notable quantities often persist in heavy clay soils, especially where the drainage is bad, and may produce injurious effects on vegetation.

In all discussions of the plant food in soils it is assumed that the only significant plant nutrients are nitrates, phosphates, sulphates and salts of potassium, calcium, magnesium and iron, commonly called the "essential" plant foods. Perfect plants can be raised in water cultures containing only these substances. Reference to Fig. 5 (p. 41), however, shows that productiveness is not always maintained indefinitely simply by supplying these salts, and not nearly so well as when the complex farmyard manure—excreta, litter, etc.—is used. It is known also that certain other compounds besides the "essential" foods may increase plant growth (p. 47). Further, Russell and Petherbridge have shown that on heating soil to 100° something is formed that stimulates root production to a remarkable degree. Are these effects the results of nutrition or of stimulation? Are the manganese, lithium, etc., compounds and the beneficial soil constituents indispensable nutrients of which only traces are required, or are they, as Armstrong expresses it, "condimental" foods?

It would be attractive to think that some of the vague physiological conditions that trouble the grower are to the plant what beri-beri and similar diseases are to the animal—the result of withholding some essential or useful "accessory substance". Bottomley¹ considers that certain substances obtained in the bacterial decomposition of peat are of this nature. Still more recently Mazé has published some remarkable results² showing that maize fails to grow in water cultures containing all the recognised nutrient salts if these are chemically pure, but it grows normally as soon as tap water is introduced. No combination of added salts has as good an effect as the tap water.

TABLE LII.—GROWTH OF MAIZE IN WATER CULTURES. MAZÉ,² 1915.

Culture solution (pure)	+ Compounds of boron and arsenic	10
" "	+ " " and aluminium	24
" "	+ " " aluminium and arsenic	16.5
" "	+ " " aluminium, arsenic and iodine	36.6
" " (tap water)	. . . . .	43

A considerable amount of work has obviously to be done before the problem can even be clearly stated. And against all this is the fact, abundantly demonstrated by Dr. Brenchley, that barley and peas make full growth in nutrient solutions containing only the ordinary "essential" foods (54*d*).

¹ Bottomley, W. B., *Proc. Roy. Soc.*, 1914, 88, 237-247.

² Mazé, *Compt. Rend.*, 1915, 160, 211.

The Nature of the Medium on which the Soil Life goes on.

It is a mistake to suppose—and this point cannot be too strongly emphasised—that the medium on which the soil organisms live and which is in contact with the plant roots, is the inert mineral matter that forms the bulk of the soil. Instead the medium is the colloidal complex of organic and inorganic compounds, usually more or less saturated with water, that envelops the mineral particles; it is, therefore, analogous to the plate of nutrient jelly used by bacteriologists, while the mineral particles serve mainly to support the medium and control the supply of air and water and, to some extent, the temperature. As yet our knowledge of the detailed composition of this medium is still slight but it is steadily improving (see Chap. IV.); and we shall get a very false idea of the conditions of life in the soil unless we recognise the main fact of its existence and fundamental significance. Gola (108*b*) has discussed the influence of the colloidal complex in determining plant habitats, and Söhngen (268) its effect on the activities of micro-organisms.

The Reaction of the Soil.

Most fertile soils are neutral or feebly alkaline to litmus paper and contain so much basic material that interaction with dissolved salts leads only to an interchange of bases without turning the solution acid.

But many infertile soils are acid to litmus paper, and so poor in basic material that on interaction with a dissolved salt they give an acid solution.

As shown on p. 93 the cause is not completely understood. The effect on both plants and micro-organisms is very striking, however. The greater the "acidity" or "lack of basicity" the smaller the number of plants that can survive, till finally vegetation becomes very restricted. In England clovers are the first to disappear and Yorkshire fog and sorrel the last. Inspection of the vegetation therefore affords a useful indication of "acidity," but it has to be done judiciously; it is not the presence of sorrel that is symptomatic, for sorrel will grow quite well on chalk soils: it is rather the presence of sorrel combined with absence of clover. The close connection between vegetation and "acidity" is shown by Hutchinson and McLennan (140*a*), who determined the "lack of basicity" of soils from a number of spots on a restricted area on Harpenden Common. Their results are given in Table LIII.

TABLE LIII.—LIME REQUIREMENT AS RELATED TO VEGETATION. HUTCHINSON AND McLENNAN (1904).

Average Lime Requirement of Soil.	Dominant Flora.
Approx. 0.22 per cent. CaCO_3	Wild white clover (<i>Trifolium repens</i>)
" 0.26 " "	Fescues (<i>F. ovina</i> and <i>rubra</i>)
" 0.31 " "	Mixed, Yarrow, woodrush and moss
" 0.39 " "	Gorse
" 0.43 " "	Yorkshire fog
" 0.53 " "	Sorrel

Similarly there is a close relation between the micro-organic flora and the lack of basicity. Christensen (69a) found that azotobacter was especially sensitive, its occurrence depending sharply on a sufficiency of base: so much so, indeed, that he uses the presence or absence of azotobacter as a test of the need of adding lime to soil. This test is generally adopted in Denmark. Some of his results are as follows:—

Percentage of CaO soluble in NH_4Cl Percentage of cases in which azotobacter develop ¹	Below 0.05	0.06-0.10	0.11-0.15	0.16-0.20	0.20-0.25	0.26-0.30	0.31-0.35	0.36-0.40	Above 0.40
	0	0	5	11	44	56	70	91	84

Nitrifying organisms are also sensitive: they still occur even in acid soils, but their activity becomes much more marked after adding lime. Hall and Miller (118b) found nitrification going on slowly on the Rothamsted grass plots receiving 600 lb. of ammonium salts annually, and now become so acid that only three or four species of plants survive.

Fred and Graul² found that organic compounds nitrified more rapidly than sulphate of ammonia in acid soils but more slowly in normal soils.

Other organisms are affected though they are less sensitive: experiments are recorded in the papers by Hutchinson and McLennan, and by Christensen.

The total effect of additions of lime on the whole flora engaged in the soil decompositions is to increase their activity and produce a

¹ The culture solution contains no CaCO_3 but is inoculated with the soil only. Hence the experiment demonstrates the sufficiency or otherwise of the CaCO_3 in the soil for the needs of the organism. A parallel test is made using the full culture solution so as to show whether the organism is present in cases where negative results are obtained.

² *Soil Science*, 1916, 1, 317.

larger amount of nitrogenous plant food. Quantitative measurements are given by Blair and McLean.¹

Are Toxins Present in the Soil?

A persistent idea that one crop may poison another is current among practical men. Early in the last century De Candolle formulated the hypothesis that plants excrete from their roots toxins that remain in the soil for some time and injure other plants of the same species, but not necessarily plants of different species. He thus explained the well-known fact that a rotation of crops is more effective than a system of continuous cropping; in a rotation the toxin excreted by a particular crop is innocuous to the succeeding crop and disappears from the soil before the same plant is sown again.

The hypothesis was tested in a classical research by Daubeny at Oxford (78), but could not be justified. Eighteen different crops were grown continuously on the same plots, and the yields compared with those obtained when the same crops were shifted from one plot to another, so that no crop ever followed another of the same kind. No manure was supplied. The results showed a gradual decrease in the yield in almost every instance, and the decrease was generally greater when the crop was repeated year after year on the same plot than where it was shifted from one to another. Nevertheless the difference between the yields in the two cases was not sufficient to justify any assumption of the existence of a toxin, except perhaps in the case of *Euphorbia lathyris*; in the other seventeen cases it was attributed to the more rapid removal from the continuous plots of the mineral nutrients required by the plant. This explanation was supported by analyses of the plant ash and of the soil—analyses which led to the important distinction between “available” and “unavailable” plant food.

Pot experiments made by the writer at Rothamsted have led to the same conclusions. Six crops of rye were grown in succession in sand to which only nutrient salts were added so as to maintain the food material at a constant amount. A seventh crop was then taken and at the same time a crop was grown on perfectly fresh sand, on which no crop had ever grown before, but which was supplied with an equal amount of the same nutrient salts. There was no significant difference in the two crop yields. A similar experiment was made with buckwheat, another with spinach, and a parallel series was made in soil

¹ The influence of lime on the yield and nitrogen content of corn (*Soil Science*, 1926, 1, 489-504).

cultures. In all cases but one the result was the same; the 1910 weights were as follows :—

	Sand Cultures.			Soil Cultures.		
	Weight of dry matter found, grams (mean of 4 pots).			Weight of dry matter found, grams (mean of 4 pots).		
	Rye.	Buckwheat.	Spinach.	Rye.	Buckwheat.	Spinach.
Cropped six times previously	30·4	5·4	33·3	26·4	23·9	20·0
Fresh sand or soil	31·3	13·5	29·5	27·1	25·2	20·8

Both sand and soil contained 2 per cent. of calcium carbonate.

If either the rye, buckwheat or spinach excreted any toxin the amount accumulating during the growth of six successive crops was insufficient to cause any appreciable depression in yield in the next crop; the exceptional result given by buckwheat in sand could not be confirmed.

These and similar experiments show that no lasting toxic effect is produced by any of the crops studied, and they rule out any toxin hypothesis as an explanation of the advantages of rotations¹ where there is always a lengthy interval between the crops. They do not, however, show that there is no transient effect, and they are thus quite consistent with some remarkable observations by Pickering on the effect of grass on apple-trees (225). It was found at Woburn—and the observation has since been confirmed elsewhere—that the effect of growing grass round apple-trees is to arrest all healthy growth and absolutely stunt the tree. The leaves become unhealthy and light coloured, the bark also becomes light coloured, while the fruit loses its green matter and becomes waxy yellow, or brilliant red. Where the grassing was done gradually the trees accommodated themselves somewhat to the altering conditions, but never grew so well as when grass was absent.

This effect might have been due to various causes: changes in aeration, temperature, water supply, food supply, or physical condition of the soil, but careful experiments failed to show that any of these factors came into play. Covering the soil with cement excluded air at least as thoroughly as grass, and yet did not produce the grass effect, nor was it suppressed by wet seasons, liberal watering, or a supply (in pot experiments) of sufficient water or nutrient solution to keep the soils of grassed and ungrassed trees equally moist, or equally well sup-

¹ Some curious problems are thus left unsolved, some of which are discussed more fully by the author in *Science Progress*, July, 1911, p. 135.

plied with food. On the other hand, the grass effect was produced when perforated trays of sand containing growing grass were placed on the surface of the soil in which trees were growing, so that the washings from the grass went straight down to the tree roots. There seemed no possibility of the grass roots in the trays abstracting anything from the soil, and the only explanation appears to be that a toxin is excreted by the grass. Such a toxin, however, must be very readily decomposed, because no toxic properties could be discovered by laboratory tests either in soil that had been removed from the grass roots or in the washings from the above-mentioned trays. Pickering has since shown that the phenomena are general and hold whatever crops are grown in the pots and trays. In consequence we must be prepared to consider possible toxic effects of one plant on another *growing alongside of it*, and the part such effects may play in determining natural plant associations and in explaining some of the bad effects of weeds.

Pickering's results agree with the hypothesis already put forward by Whitney, and developed by him and Cameron, Schreiner (306, 67*b*, 249, etc.) and their colleagues at the Bureau of Soils, Washington. Certain soils are supposed to contain toxins, which are not necessarily plant excretions, but may arise by decomposition of organic matter in the soil. The genesis of this hypothesis is interesting. Reference has already been made to Whitney's view that the soil solution furnishes the food of plants and is of the same composition and concentration in all soils, from which it follows that infertility of any soil cannot be due to lack of food. But in certain cases this fertility is transmitted to the aqueous extract of the soil, and must, therefore, arise from some soluble toxin. As an example Whitney and Cameron (305) selected two Cecil clays of very different productiveness but of identical chemical and physical constitution, prepared aqueous extracts and used them as culture solutions for wheat seedlings. The extracts contained in parts per million :—

	NO ₃ .	PO ₄ .	K.	Ca.
Good soil . . .	3.2	1.6	3.6	3.2
Poor soil . . .	3.5	1.6	2.0	2.8

and were thus identical in their content of plant nutrients; they were also both neutral. Yet they produced very different effects on the wheat seedlings: the "good soil" extract caused a larger and healthier development of root and a somewhat better development of leaves.

In other cases it has been found that growth in extracts of poor soils is even worse than in distilled water. The productiveness of the extract could be raised, according to Livingstone (179), by dilution, shaking with calcium carbonate, precipitated ferric or aluminium oxide, animal charcoal, or soil; results which are explained by supposing that these agents precipitate a toxin. Addition of fertilisers, and especially of an aqueous extract of farmyard manure, improved the solution; these substances also were supposed to precipitate the toxin.

A double set of experiments was therefore began by Schreiner and his colleagues: a careful search was made in the soil for such organic compounds as could be identified (see p. 79); and the effect of these and similar compounds on plant growth was studied by elaborate water cultures. Considerable attention has been devoted to dihydroxystearic acid. This substance is toxic to plants in water culture, and is almost invariably present in infertile soils, especially such as are badly drained, badly aerated, too compact, and deficient in lime (251); soils, in short, that in England are called "sour".

On the other hand, Russell and Petherbridge could not obtain any aqueous extract toxic to plants from greenhouse "sick" soils. These soils, however, are rich in organic matter, in plant food, and in calcium carbonate.

The present position may briefly be summed up as follows: There is no evidence of the presence of soluble toxins in normally aerated soils sufficiently supplied with plant food and with calcium carbonate, but toxins may occur on "sour" soils badly aerated and lacking in calcium carbonate, or on other exhausted soils. There is no evidence of any plant excretions conferring toxic properties on the soil, but the Woburn fruit tree results show that a growing plant may poison its neighbour. The effect does not appear to be specific; any plant will be injured by any other within its range, and it may suffer less from one of another kind than from one of its own kind.¹

Bacterio-toxins.—Several observers, including Greig-Smith (113), Bottomley (42) and others, have claimed to find soluble bacterio-toxins in soils. Russell and Hutchinson, on the other hand, obtained wholly negative results, and concluded that soluble bacterio-toxins are not normal constituents of soils, but must represent unusual conditions wherever they occur. But the possibility of the existence of toxins insoluble in water still remains.

¹ Thus Burmester (*Fühl. Lander. Zeit.* 1914, 63, 547-556; see *Rome Bull.* 1914, 1691) found that conch increased the yield of oats, and Dr. Brenchley found that certain weed had the same effect on the yield of wheat *per plant* (*New Phytologist*, 1917).

CHAPTER VII.

THE RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN THE MICRO-ORGANIC POPULATION OF THE SOIL AND THE GROWTH OF PLANTS.

THE soil is inhabited by a great variety of micro-organisms, but their precise relationship to the growing plant is difficult to determine because we know so little about them. The micro-organic population is certainly highly complex: it is known to contain many kinds of bacteria, moulds, protozoa and other animals, and new members are discovered almost every month.

Usually they are picked out by some culture method, and their physiological effect is studied in an arbitrary culture solution: sometimes the results are applied straightway to the soil without further ado. The method is defective for two reasons. Firstly, micro-organisms are considerably influenced by the medium in which they happen to find themselves, and may effect one change under one set of circumstances but quite another change under other circumstances. Secondly, most micro-organisms exist in two states: an active or trophic state, and a resting state, and it is reasonable to suppose that the resting forms are comparatively unimportant. Probably in many cases no sharp line exists between the two, the active forms changing to the resting stage or back again as the soil conditions alter; but it is never safe to assume without proof that any organism discovered by culture methods is active in the soil. The main difficulty in applying the results is that soil cannot be sterilised¹ because of its chemical instability, nor can it be made up artificially; in consequence one cannot begin with a sterile soil and inoculate into it a particular set of organisms so as to observe their behaviour under natural conditions. These difficulties have not proved insuperable, and a considerable number of organisms have been discovered which have been divided into three great groups. The first include those that affect the growth of plants either by direct action on the plant, or by bringing about some change of fundamental importance to the plant.

¹ Intermittent sterilisation at 80° causes less decomposition, but it does produce change (Coleman, Lint, and Kopeloff, *Soil Science*, 1916, 1, 259).

The second produce no effect themselves on the plant, but act on those that do. The third have no action direct or indirect on the plant growth: the existence of this group, however, is a matter of inference only, it being impossible to establish the negative proposition that any particular organism is without effect on the plant. But it is convenient to retain the group if only as a reminder that all soil organisms are not necessarily engaged in doing work of importance to plants and incidentally to ourselves.

The groups may be further divided as follows, and they will be discussed in this order:—

I. Organisms affecting plant growth.

(A) By exerting a direct action on the plant.

(1) Parasitic and disease organisms: Eel-worms, *Plasmodiophora*, Wilts, etc.

(2) Symbiotic forms—the clover organism, Mycorrhiza.

(B) By bringing about soil changes of importance to the plant.

(3) Changes harmful to the plant: supposed production of toxins, removal of nitrates, competition.

(4) Changes beneficial to the plant: production of humus substances, of ammonia and nitrates.

II. Organisms not acting on the plant but on the organisms of group I.

Certain amœbæ.

Certain flagellates.

III. Organisms acting neither on the plant nor on groups I. and II.

None known with certainty.

Some of the organisms cannot yet be placed in these groups because their action has not yet been determined. Algæ and free-living nematodes are both common and widely distributed, but little is known of their effect in the soil.

I. (A). Organisms Acting Directly on the Plant.

(1) *Parasitic and disease organisms.*

The study of these organisms has developed into a special branch of Economic Biology, and we need therefore only briefly refer to them here. The commonest are the eel-worms, the myxomycete *Plasmodiophora*, some of the "wilts," and certain organisms that attack potatoes.

Of the numerous kinds of eel-worms occurring in the soil, about six are known to attack and enter the plant root, and do considerable

direct injury besides opening the way for the entrance of fungi, bacteria, etc. The commonest are *Heterodera radiculicola*, which causes swellings or "knots" on the roots of tomatoes, cucumbers and other plants, and *Tylenchus devastatrix* which attacks oats, causing tulip root, and clover, bringing on one form of clover sickness. In some soils, especially those short of lime, another pest is common: the myxomycete *Plasmodiophora*, which enters the roots of swedes, turnips and other plants of the *Brassica* tribe, causing the disease known as finger-and-toe.

(2) *Symbiotic Organisms*.—In normal conditions leguminous plants possess nodules on their roots which contain numbers of bacteroids living in association with the plant. This organism, *Bacterium radiculicola*, enters the plant roots at an early stage and, having brought about the formation of the nodule, proceeds to manufacture nitrogen compounds for the plant from the gaseous nitrogen of the air (see p. 128).

Certain trees and shrubs (notably beech, heather, etc.) become associated with mycorrhiza, fungi which grow on their roots and aid in the nutrition of the plant. These were first investigated by Frank and have received considerable attention from mycologists.¹

I. (B). Organisms Bringing About Changes of Importance to the Plant.

From time to time indications have been obtained that some of the soil bacteria bring about changes harmful to the plant, but the evidence is not sufficiently good to justify any detailed discussion here. It has been supposed that plant toxins are produced (p. 152), that soil nitrates are decomposed (p. 132), and that the food, air and water which should otherwise be available to the plant are taken up by the micro-organisms.² A careful and critical examination of this whole subject of bacterial interference is badly needed.

The change that has been most frequently studied, and must therefore claim most of our attention, is the production of nitrates and humus substances during the decomposition of the organic matter of the soil. The initial material consists in the residues of roots, stems and leaves shed by earlier generations of plants: material which is not itself helpful to plant growth and indeed may be detrimental through opening up the soil too much. Under the influence of earth-worms, fungi, bacteria, and other organisms it breaks down to form humus and

¹ Frank's paper is in *Botan. Ztg.*, 1891, 9, 244-253, where references to his earlier papers are given. Recent investigations have been made by M. C. Rayner, *Annals of Botany*, 1915, 29, 97-133.

² See, e.g., Dachnowski (Ohio), *Expt. Sta. Record*, 1910, 23, 122.

nitrate, both of great importance for the plant. Agricultural chemists have been so interested in these two substances that they have tended to overlook the effect of any others that may be produced. Schreiner and Skinner (252) deal with some of these, and show that nucleic acid, hypoxanthine, xanthine, guanine and others which may well be formed in the decomposition, are all beneficial to plants grown in water cultures, while picoline carboxylic acid and guanidine were harmful. It does not follow that these effects are produced in the soil, but the investigation shows the necessity for a broader outlook. For the present, however, the lack of material leaves us with no option but to confine ourselves to the activities of the organisms producing humus and nitrates.

The work on the biological side has been just as restricted as on the chemical side; investigators have confined themselves almost exclusively to bacteria, ignoring other organisms. It is known, however, that certain fungi, especially the actinomyces, play an important part in the formation of humus. Of recent years these have begun to receive attention, but little has been done as yet beyond identifying some of the forms and making preliminary attempts to count them. The student seeking further information can find it in papers by :—

Miss E. Dale, *Annal. Mycol.*, 1912, 10, 452-477 and 1914, 12, 32-62.

Krainsky, *Centr. Bakt. Par.*, 1914, 41, 649-688.

Jensen, C. N., *New York (Cornell) Bull.* 315, pp. 415-501.

Waksman and Curtis, *Soil Science*, 1916, 1, 99-134.

Kopeloff, *Soil Science*, 1916, 1, 381-403.

Several methods have been adopted to ascertain whether any relationship can be traced between the activity of bacteria and the growth of plants. The direct method consists in picking out definite organisms and studying them in conditions calculated to throw light on their action in the soil. This has proved very difficult, and has been successfully achieved only by a few of the best bacteriologists; instances are afforded by the work of Winogradsky (pp. 117, 122), Beijerinck (p. 123) and others.

Three indirect methods have therefore been used :—

(1) Soil is inoculated into various media each arranged to bring out one group of organisms, and the amount of decomposition is taken as a measure of the number and vigour of the members of the group. This is often called the method of physiological grouping.

(2) Counts are made of the numbers of colonies developing on gelatin or agar plates, and these are expressed as millions of bacteria per gram of soil.

(3) Chemical analyses are made at stated intervals to determine the rate of progress of the various changes going on—the absorption of oxygen, the evolution of carbon dioxide and the production of nitrates.

The difficulty with the first or direct method is to imitate the soil conditions, and the history of the subject affords many instances of the danger of getting away from them: in example Krzemieniewski's work on the nitrogen-fixing organisms may be quoted (p. 125). It is impracticable for reasons already given to keep to the soil as the medium for work, and most investigators have therefore used the indirect method.

Physiological Grouping.—This method was introduced by Remy (237*a*) and has been developed by Löhnis (183*c, f, g*) and become very popular. Four distinct media are in use, arranged respectively to favour nitrification, ammonia production, nitrogen fixation and denitrification. The experiments are easy to carry out, but they require skilful interpretation and the results may prove treacherous unless carefully handled. The fundamental objection to the method is that the reaction goes on in a medium very different from ordinary soil, so that it throws no light on the relationships obtaining in the soil itself. The results really only prove that the bacteria from one soil will flourish better in a certain artificial medium than those from another.

The medium for studying nitrification is either that suggested by Omelianski or Ashby's modification (p. 116); it is inoculated with a definite weight of soil and incubated: the nitrates produced after a certain time are determined. By working under uniform conditions (which each investigator fixes for himself) the results obtained are comparable for the series of soils under investigation. The amount of nitrate produced by unit weight of soil is called the "nitrifying power". The actual figure is obviously arbitrary, depending on the conditions selected, and it has meaning only in relation to the other soils in the same set of experiments. Several investigators, however, have found that nitrifying power shows some relation to plant growth, the soils most favourable to plants having on the whole the highest nitrifying power. The results obtained at Rothamsted by Ashby (7*a*) and at Fallon, Nevada, by Kellerman and Allen¹ are given in Table LIV.

Withers and Fraps (314*a*) have modified the method, and use sterilised soil as the medium for the growth of the organisms.

A careful distinction must be made between the nitrifying power ascertained from culture media and the rate at which nitrates accumu-

¹ Bacteriological Studies of the Soil of the Truckee-Carson Irrigation Project, Karl F. Kellerman and E. R. Allen. U.S. Dept. of Agric. Bureau of Plant Industry, *Bull.* No. 211, 1911. See also Ehrenberg (93*b*).

late in the soil. The experiments in culture media measure the rate of nitrification under the circumstances of the experiment: the accumulation of nitrate in the soil on the other hand measures the rate of ammonia production (p. 116).

TABLE LIV.—NITRIFYING POWERS OF VARIOUS SOILS OF KNOWN PRODUCTIVENESS.

Ashby, Rothamsted (7a).	Nitrifying Power.	Kellerman and Allen ¹ (Fallon, Nevada) (Order of Productiveness).	Nitrifying Power.	Bacterial Numbers. Millions per gram.
Agdell Field, A. 3, most productive	93	Very productive	54	0.02
Agdell Field, A. 2, intermediate	38	Pro- ductive { Plot 40	20	0.21
Agdell Field, A. 1, poorest	26	plots { Plot 190	36	0.003
		{ Plot 290	30	0.27
		{ Plot 10	4	0.44
		Poor { Plot 30	3	0.16
		{ Plot 180	5	0.06

The "ammonifying power" or "putrefactive power" is determined by inoculating soil into a 1 per cent. peptone solution, and determining the ammonia formed after incubation at 20°. Remy found that certain soils known to give good crop returns for organic manures also possessed high putrefactive power. He incubated for four days, but Russell and Hutchinson (240c) found that better results were obtained by taking definite intervals and plotting curves showing the respective rates of ammonia production by the different soils. Löhnis has used this method a good deal (183b) as also has J. G. Lipman who, however, modifies it considerably, and among other things uses sterilised soil as the medium and substitutes dried blood or cotton seed meal² for peptone (176). Percy Brown (63) used a similar modification in his studies of Iowa soils, and found that the "ammonifying power" ran along with the "nitrifying power" and, in four out of the six plots, with the crop-producing power also (Table LV.).

But, as the figures indicate, the differences are very small, and would be considered within the error of experiment were it not for the fact that three other sets of determinations came out in practically the same order. Stevens and Withers (271) bring other evidence to show the limited nature of the connection between ammonifying power and plant growth.

¹ Bacteriological Studies of the Soil of the Truckee-Carson Irrigation Project, Karl F. Kellerman and E. R. Allen. U.S. Dept. of Agric. Bureau of Plant Industry, Bull. No. 211, 1911. See also Ehrenberg (93b).

² Sackett (*Colorado Bull.* 184, 1912) has shown that these cannot be used indiscriminately; in some soils dried blood is ammonified more rapidly than cotton seed meal while in others the reverse holds.

TABLE LV.—BACTERIAL ACTIVITY IN SOILS OF KNOWN PRODUCTIVENESS.
BROWN (63a).

Plot No.	Yield of Maize. Bushels per acre.	History.	Ammonifying Power.	Nitrifying Power.	Nitrogen-Fixing Power.	Bacterial Numbers. Millions per gram.
607	52.7	2 year rotation, maize, oats, clover ploughed in	175	7.1	14.3	2.8
604	50.7	3 year rotation, maize, oats and clover	189	12.6	20.6	3.3
602	46.0	2 year rotation, maize and oats	178	8.1	17.5	2.6
901	43.2	2 year rotation, maize, oats, rye ploughed in	175	6.7	14.3	2.5
601	35.5	Continuous maize	171	5.0	9.5	2.1
609	32.5	2 year rotation, maize, oats, cowpeas ploughed in	180	11.9	18.2	2.7

“Nitrogen-fixing power” is measured by inoculating soil into Beijerinck’s or some similar solution (p. 123) and incubating for a definite time. This reaction only proceeds slowly.

Bacterial Counts.—The method of counting the number of colonies that develop on gelatin or agar plates is admittedly faulty, but it has the advantage of showing whether the numbers are high or low and whether they are increasing or decreasing. It has, unfortunately, three serious defects. No medium is known that brings out all the soil organisms, so that the results are invariably low,¹ and their quantitative appearance is wholly illusory. No medium even distantly resembles the soil in composition or in structure, so that the flora developing on the plates does not necessarily reflect the flora active in the soil; in particular it is impossible to tell which of the forms developing on the plate are active and which are spores in the soil. No account is taken of the kinds of bacteria on the plates; in practice it proves far too laborious to attempt any but the simplest identifications.

This disregard of the nature of the bacteria constitutes a fundamental distinction from the method dependent on physiological grouping, and the two methods do not always give the same results. The counts show fairly correctly whether any given treatment of the soil has raised or has lowered the number of bacteria, but unless the change has been drastic they do not show whether all varieties have been equally affected. Thus they have always to be combined with determinations of the amounts of ammonia and nitrate in the soil.

¹ Comparisons of various media have been made by Cook (*Soil Science*, 1916, 1, 153-161). The higher the results the better the medium.

Chemical Analysis in Conjunction with Bacterial Counts.—The third method of making bacteriological counts in conjunction with chemical analyses, has been largely used in the Rothamsted laboratories. Increases in bacterial numbers are so often associated with increased production of nitrate as to justify the assumption that the two phenomena are causally connected. Two cases have, however, been studied where no such relationship exists.

(1) The soil treatment, while raising the total numbers, has either acted differentially on the organisms and did not encourage the ammonia producers to develop, or it has caused them to transfer their energies to some decomposition that does not give rise to ammonia. The addition of certain organic compounds to the soil has this effect (Table LVI.).

TABLE LVI.—EFFECT OF CERTAIN ORGANIC SUBSTANCES ON BACTERIAL NUMBERS AND ON NITRATE PRODUCTION.

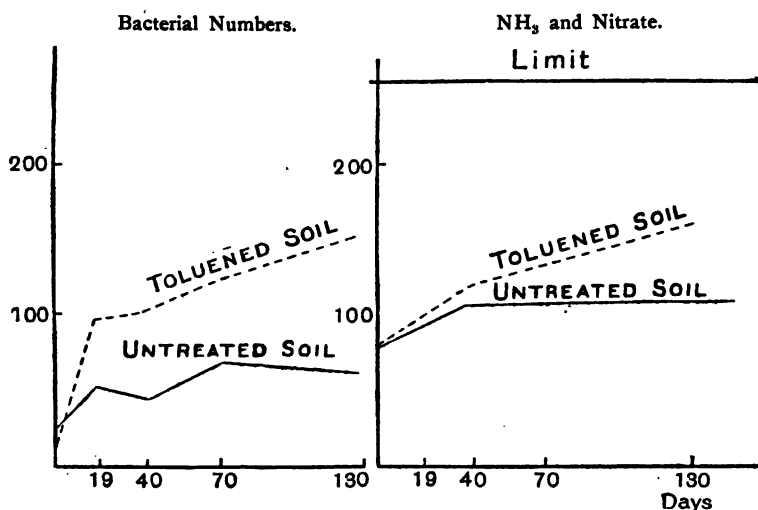
Substance Added.	Bacterial Numbers After 50 Days (millions per gram).		Ammonia and Nitrate Present After 50 Days.		Observers.
	In Control Soil.	In Treated Soil.	In Control Soil.	In Treated Soil.	
Cane sugar (0.25 per cent.)	21	51	32	20	Russell and Hutchinson (240a) Buddin (64a) " "
Amyl alcohol (0.1 per cent.)	30	85	37	35	
Phenol (M/200 per kilo) ¹	27	101	30	33	
Hydroquinone (M/200 per kilo)	16	55	35	44	

(2) Even when the ammonia-producing organisms are caused to multiply they do not increase the stock of ammonia and nitrates in the soil beyond a certain limiting amount. Thus partial sterilisation increases bacterial numbers and usually increases the amount of ammonia and nitrate also, but it fails to do this after a certain quantity has accumulated (Fig. 10).

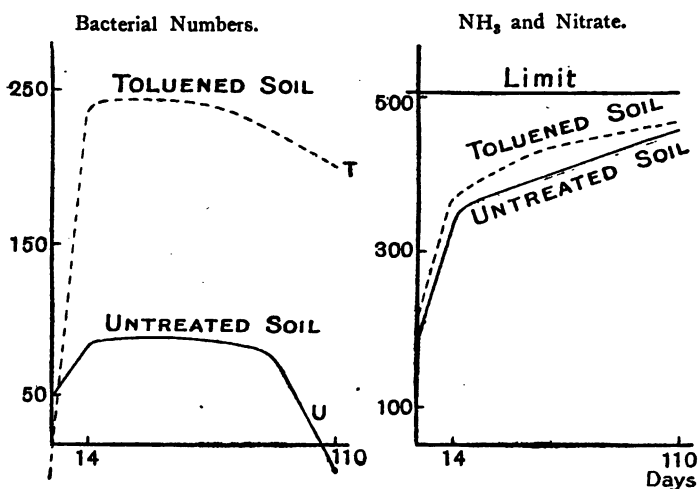
On looking over the figures in Tables LIII. and LIV. it is evident that the numbers of bacteria revealed by this method bear no relationship to the amount of crop growth. Other field experiments have given similar results. Yet in laboratory and pot experiments bacterial counts have often proved most valuable; numerous instances are given in the Rothamsted papers on soil sterilisation (240, 241, etc.).

¹ It is rather striking that phenol should be decomposed by bacteria in the soil. The organisms were discovered by Fowler, Arden and Lockett (*Proc. Roy. Soc.* 1911, lxxiii., 149-56). Other investigations have been made by Wagner (see *Bied. Zentr. Agrik. Chem.*, 1915, 44, 212).

This discrepancy between field and laboratory experience is cleared up by a closer examination of the nature of the relationship between bacterial activity and plant growth. The connection as already pointed



Case 1.—Small amounts of NH₃ and nitrate initially present. A relationship is indicated between bacterial numbers and the rate of production of NH₃ and nitrate.



Case 2.—Large amounts of ammonia and nitrate initially present. No relationship like that in Case 1 is indicated.

FIG. 10.—Relation between Bacterial Numbers and amounts of Nitrate and Ammonia formed.

out lies in the fact that bacteria decompose the organic matter of the soil and make new plant food out of old plant residues. If the factor limiting plant growth happens to be the supply of nitrogenous plant food we may expect to find a close connection between bacterial

activity and soil fertility; if on the contrary the limiting factor is something else—such as water supply, lack of phosphates, etc.—no such connection is necessary. Even here, however, a connection may exist, for bacteria are living things, affected by the same circumstances that influence plants.

Three distinct cases therefore arise :—

(1) Bacterial activity may show no sort of relationship with soil fertility, because fertility is limited by some factor other than the nitrogen supply.

(2) Bacterial activity may be directly related to soil fertility but the relationship is only accidental, both bacteria and plants being affected by the same limiting factor.

(3) Bacterial activity may be directly related to soil fertility and the relationship is causal, fertility being limited by the amount of ammonia and nitrate produced by the bacteria.

Instances of the first are common in arid and semi-arid districts.

The second case is not unfrequent. An admirable illustration is afforded by the experiments of Crowther and Ruston on the effect of acid rain-water on plant growth (72). The pots were watered with solutions of sulphuric acid, some being of the same order of concentration as the Leeds rain-water. The acid depressed the growth not only of plants but of bacteria also, and the effect is very similar in both cases (Table LVII.).

TABLE LVII.—EFFECT OF ACIDULATED WATER ON THE GROWTH OF PLANTS AND BACTERIA. CROWTHER AND RUSTON (72).

	Crop Yields Dry Matter, Grams.	Ammonifying Power.	Nitrifying Power.	Nitrogen Fixing Power.	Bacterial Numbers, Millions per gram.	Oxygen Absorption m.m.	Ammonia and Nitrate left in Soil at end of Experiment per million.
Soil watered with Garforth rain-water, neutralised							
1 part H_2SO_4 per 100,000	14.7	13.9	1.02	4.6	5.2	12	9.3
2 " " "	12.0	12.1	0.80	3.3	1.3	8	6.3
4 " " "	8.0	11.2	0.85	3.0	1.1	6	8.2
8 " " "	3.9	10.5	0.52	2.8	0.7	4	8.1
16 " " "	3.7	10.3	0.36	2.4	0.1	4	8.4
32 " " "	nil	10.3	0.28	1.9	0.04	3	8.1
	nil	8.1	0.13	1.8	0.015	0	9.4

At first sight this looks like a close relationship between bacterial activity and plant growth. But the figures in the last column show that the failure of the crop is not due to the failure of the bacteria to

produce ammonia and nitrate, for relatively large amounts of these substances are left at the end of the experiment.

In similar manner the growth both of bacteria and of plants may be helped by the same cause. Fred and Hart have shown that bacteria are stimulated to greater activity by dressings of phosphate, etc.¹ Speaking generally, it is found that the bacterial numbers increase as the intensity of the farming increases. Thus Stoklasa and Ernest (273*a*) found only 1 to 2 million organisms per gram in their barley land, 3 to 5 millions on the better treated sugar-beet land, and 7 to 8 millions on the clover land. Again, the addition of plant residues or of farmyard manure to the soil increases the bacterial numbers by furnishing the organisms with additional food;² it also increases the crop. Moorland soils contain only few bacteria and are very unsuited to the growth of most plants. But after cultivation and treatment with lime and manures they become much better media both for plants and bacteria. Fabricius and von Feilitzen (96*a*) found 0.1 millions of bacteria per gram in the raw moorland soil, but 7 millions in similar soil that had been cultivated and manured.

So close is the similarity between ordinary crops and azotobacter in relation to soil acidity that an azotobacter test is used in Denmark for determining the need of lime (p. 149).

It may often be difficult in practice to determine whether the relationship between the bacterial numbers and plant growth is causal or accidental, but the principle is perfectly clear; the relationship is causal only when the plant growth is limited by the supply of compounds produced by bacterial activity. The recognition of this central principle greatly facilitates investigation, for it shows the futility of haphazard attempts to correlate bacterial activity and plant growth over a set of soils that are not strictly comparable. The better course is to narrow down the problem and confine it to the elucidation of the connection between bacterial activity and nitrate production.

Bacterial Activity and Nitrate Production.

Effect of Temperature.—Bacteria being living organisms it is natural to expect that their activity increases with the temperature up to a certain point. The amount of nitrate does show this expected increase but the bacterial numbers do not, there being no steady rise as the temperature of storage increases (Table LVIII.).

¹ *Wisconsin Research Bull.* 35, 1915.

² Examples are given by Brown, P. E., *Iowa Research Bull.* No. 13, 1913, and by Heinze, *Landw. Jahrbücher*, 1910, 39; *Ergänz. Bd.* 3, 314-43.

TABLE LVIII.—EFFECT OF TEMPERATURE OF STORAGE ON BACTERIAL NUMBERS AND NITRATE PRODUCTION. RUSSELL AND HUTCHINSON (240a).

Temperature of Storage.	Bacteria, millions per gram of Dry Soil.			Nitrate and Ammonia, parts per million of Dry Soil.		
	At start.	After 10 days.	After 50 days.	At start.	After 10 days.	After 50 days.
7°-12°	16	16	16	17	18	22
20°		12	21		16	30
30°		15	14		24	36
40°		9	14		55	76

Effect of Moisture.—Increasing moisture supply causes increases in bacterial numbers, but they are not regular. Nitrate production does not appear to be much affected (240a).

Effect of Dissolved Oxygen Supply.—Russell and Appleyard (240g) found that rainfall has a much more definite effect than moisture in increasing bacterial numbers and biochemical changes in the soil. They attribute this action to the oxygen dissolved in the rain-water which renews the dissolved atmosphere in the soil and gives the organisms a new lease of activity.

Effect of Added Organic Matter.—It is shown in Table LVI. that the addition of organic matter to the soil may increase the bacterial numbers without, however, affecting the production of nitrates, indeed sugar actually leads to nitrate decomposition.

Effect of Previous Treatment of the Soil.—Prolonged drought affects the soil even after it has passed away and the soil has become moistened. The rate of production of nitrate and the bacterial numbers both increase (240).

Field Observations.—The general phenomena observed in the laboratory can be seen also in the field, but it is less easy to disentangle the various factors, and particularly to separate the effects of moisture and of temperature. Russell and Appleyard (240g) have studied the problem in some detail at Rothamsted, and have determined the bacterial numbers, and the nitrate in the soil, and the amount of CO₂ in the soil air, at frequent intervals for a period of two seasons on several of the plots. The experimental data do not represent the amounts of production but only of accumulation; nevertheless the curves are found to give useful information as to production.

In the first instance it is observed that the curves are all sufficiently alike to justify the view that in the soil, as in the laboratory, the phenomena of nitrate production and CO₂ evolution are closely related to the numbers of bacteria. When the bacterial numbers rise there is

a rise in the amount of CO_2 and of nitrate. But the nitrate curve does not sharply agree with the others: it is displaced, showing a lag of two or three weeks: this has already been discussed (p. 116).

The general results are illustrated by the curves in Fig. 11. During the winter months there is very little activity. But as soon as the temperature rises above 5°C . change sets in: bacterial numbers, CO_2 ,¹ and nitrates all increase. The rise, however, is not long sustained; it is followed by a fall notwithstanding the continuance of favourable temperature conditions. To some extent this is due to lack of moisture, for the curves now begin to resemble the soil moisture curves. Still more, however, it is due to lack of something supplied by rain—presumably dissolved oxygen—for the rainfall curves more closely fit the CO_2 and bacterial number curves. This period of summer sluggishness is followed by one of considerable activity in autumn and this in turn by the period of winter inertness. The growing crop appears to hinder the biochemical changes (p. 179).

These periods of spring activity, summer sluggishness, and autumn activity seem to be fairly general, and they have been recorded elsewhere. In consequence the bacterial numbers are not closely connected with the temperature, and not always with the moisture content of the soil. Numerous counts bringing out all these points were made by Hiltner and Störmer (136) from plots of cropped ground, and of unmanured and dunged fallows. Some of these are recorded in Table LIX.

TABLE LIX.—BACTERIA IN CROPPED AND FALLOW SOILS, MILLIONS PER GRAM.
HILTNER AND STÖRMER (136).

	1901.			1902.		
	10 May	27 Aug.	18 Oct.	1 Feb.	12 June	18 Aug.
Cropped land, grass and clover	8.3	3.2	6.4	6.6	8.1	4.9
Cultivated fallow, unmanured	8.0	4.2	4.0	4.1	5.7	4.1
" " dunged ²	11.0	10.5	11.0	9.3	7.2	8.4

The only marked effect is that of the dung; the net result of the clover and grass has only been small in spite of the organic residues shed by the roots. On no plot has the warm summer weather increased the bacterial numbers.

Later on Engberding (94) made a more extensive series of counts

¹ The very sharp rise of CO_2 in May and August appears to be associated with the crop (240g).

² Dung applied in July at the rate of 130 to 140 Centner pro Morgen (10 to 11 tons per acre).

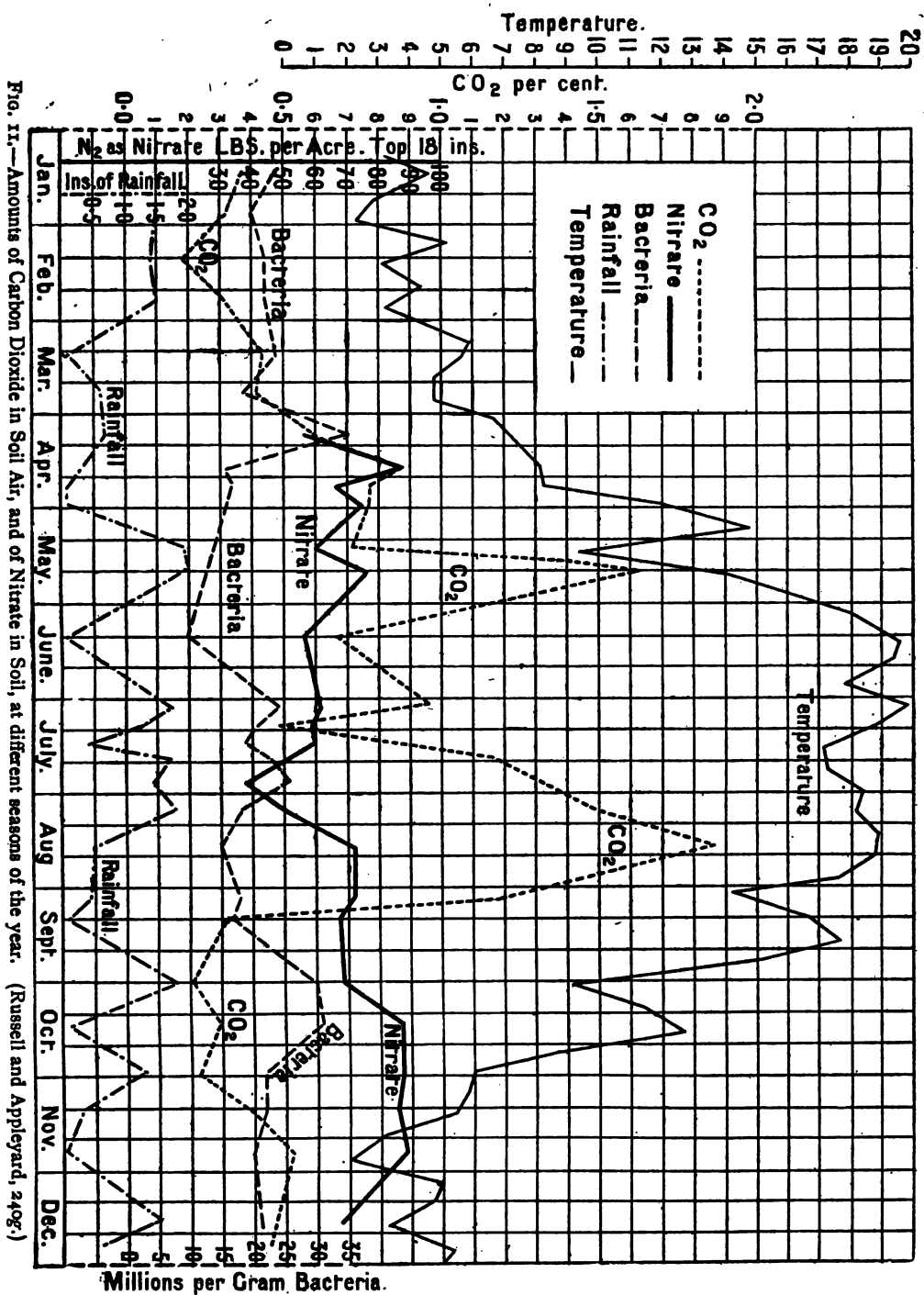


FIG. 11.—Amounts of Carbon Dioxide in Soil Air, and of Nitrate in Soil, at different seasons of the year. (Russell and Appleyard, 1909.)

of the bacteria in plots of ground under known treatment and published his results in very complete form, giving details of temperature, moisture content, etc. Here again no connection could be traced between temperature or moisture content and bacterial numbers. A very similar result was obtained by King and Doryland (148) in their numerous counts. Neither temperature nor moisture changes produced any systematic increases in numbers, and the only factor that did have this effect was deep ploughing.

Some of Waksman's results (292*a*) with a garden soil at New Jersey are given in Table LX.

TABLE LX.—BACTERIA IN GARDEN SOIL, NEW JERSEY, MILLIONS PER GRAM.
WAKSMAN (292*a*).

Date of sampling	1915. Jan. 30	Feb. 12	Mar. 1	Mar. 23	Ap. 16	May 8	June 3	July 7	Aug. 8	Sept. 10	Oct. 21	Nov. 30	1916. Jan. 4
Nos. of bacteria, millions per gram	8.7	6.0	8.8	4.3	10.7	4.8	6.9	7.8	5.0	8.8	5.9	6.9	9.2
Moisture content, per cent.	15	14	13	8	9	9	9	9	12	10	9	9	19

These figures are for the top inch: samples were taken at six different depths with similar results.

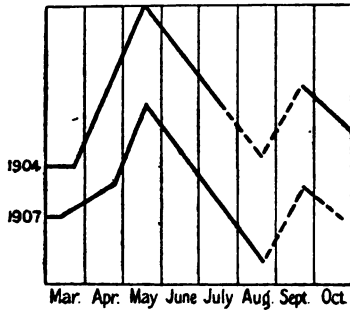
Using Remy's method of physiological grouping Löhnis and Sabaschnikoff at Leipzig (183*e*) obtained a curious and wholly unexpected set of curves suggesting some remarkable seasonal relationships. The urea-decomposing power, nitrifying power, nitrogen-fixing power and to a less extent the denitrifying power all reached a maximum in spring, a minimum in summer and a maximum again in September. Müntz and Gaudechon (209*a*) also showed by a somewhat different method that the nitrifying power is at a maximum in spring. Conn (71) obtained a similar curve for the bacterial numbers in his plots, the numbers of bacteria being high in February when the land was frozen, they fell in summer but rose again in autumn (Fig. 12). Brown and Smith at Iowa (63*d*) also found the highest numbers in frozen soils, but Wojtkiewicz (314*b*) on the other hand found the maximum later on in spring, the winter numbers being much lower.

Leather (167*b*) and Jensen (144) have obtained parallel results for the amount of nitrate in the soil.

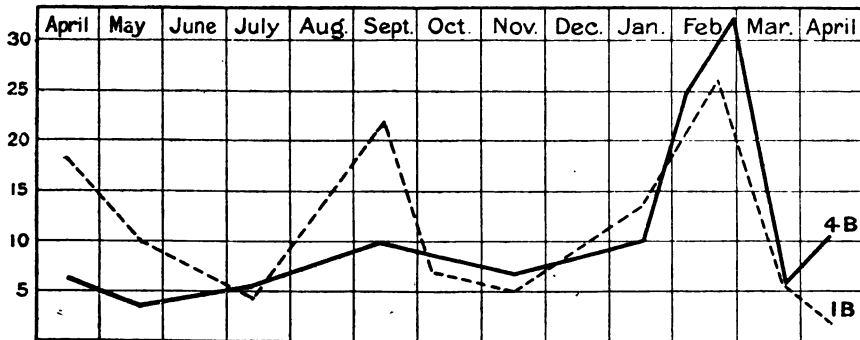
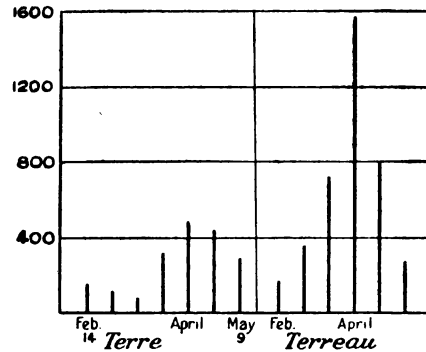
Reviewing the whole of the preceding results, it seems clear that in normal soils we are dealing with something more than a bacterial decomposition. The erratic results obtained with changes in temperature and moisture are difficult to explain unless one supposes that other organisms are also present interfering with the activity of the

soil bacteria. This view arose out of the work on partial sterilisation which revealed the presence on the second great group of organisms, and which we must now proceed to discuss.

Rate of Decomposition of Cyanamide
(Löhnis).



Le Réveil de la Terre (Müntz and Gaudechon)
Rate of Nitrification.



Bacterial numbers in soil: plots 1B and 4B. Cropped with millet: unmanured. (The curve showing moisture content is very similar to that for 4B.) (Conn.)

FIG. 12.—Bacterial activity in soils at different seasons of the year.

II. Organisms not Directly Affecting Plant Growth but Acting on those that do.

Investigation on the Partial Sterilisation of the Soil.

The earliest observations that soil is altered by an apparently inert antiseptic arose out of attempts to kill insect pests in the soil by means of carbon disulphide. This substance, which for fifty years has been known as an insecticide, was used in 1877 by Oberlin (218), an Alsatian vine-grower, to kill phylloxera, and by Girard (106) in 1887 to clear a piece of sugar-beet ground badly infested with nematodes.

In both cases the subsequent crops showed that the productiveness of the soil had been increased by the treatment.

The first piece of scientific work came from A. Koch in 1899 (151a), who, working with varying quantities of carbon disulphide, concluded that it stimulates the plant root to increased growth. Four years later Hiltner and Störmer (136) showed that the bacterial flora of the soil undergoes a change. The immediate effect of the antiseptic was to decrease by about 75 per cent. the number of organisms capable of developing on gelatin plates; then as soon as the antiseptic had evaporated, the numbers rose far higher than before, and there was also some change in the type of flora. It was argued that the increased numbers of bacteria must result in an increased food supply for the plant, and it was claimed that the new type of flora was actually better than the old, in that denitrifying organisms were killed, nitrogen-fixing organisms increased, and nitrification only suspended during a period when nitrates were not wanted and might undergo loss by drainage. In a later publication Hiltner (137) shows that other volatile or easily decomposable antiseptics produce the same effect. The important part of this work is unquestionably the discovery that the organisms in the treated soils ultimately outnumber those in the original soil.¹ The hypothesis that the new type of flora is actually more efficient than the old rests on less trustworthy evidence, and has indeed been modified in some of its details by Hiltner himself.

The effect of heat on the productiveness of the soil was first noticed by the early bacteriologists. It had been assumed that heat simply sterilised the soil and produced no other change, until Frank (100) in 1888 showed that it increased the soluble mineral and organic matter and also the productiveness. Later work by Pfeiffer and Franke (224b) and by Krüger and Schneidewind (156) showed that plants actually take more food from a heated than from an unheated soil. Heat undoubtedly causes decomposition of some of the soil constituents quite apart from its effect on the soil flora; it also produces physical effects.²

The writer's investigation on this subject began in the first instance as the result of an accident. In virtue of its large population of micro-organisms soil absorbs a considerable quantity of oxygen, and evolves

¹ Sewage investigators have found that the disinfection of sand filters leads to increases in the numbers of bacteria. This was observed in the typhoid epidemic at Lincoln in 1904 and also in the experimental sewage filter at Guildford in 1907 (Houston and McGowan, *Fifth Report, Sewage Commission*, Appendix 4, Cd. 4282, 1910, p. 111).

² For chemical effects see 240a and also Pickering, *Journ. Ag. Sci.*, iii., 171-78; Seaver and Clark, *Biochem. Bull.*, 1912, 1, 413, and Schreiner and Lathrop, U.S. Dept. of Ag. Bureau of Soils, *Bull.* 89, 1912. For physical effects see Czermak, *Landw. Versuchs Stat.*, 1912, 76, 75.

a corresponding amount of carbon dioxide. An experiment had been arranged to demonstrate the well-known fact that soil heated to 130° C., and therefore completely devoid of micro-organisms, lost much of its power of absorbing oxygen. By an accident the autoclave was not available; the soil was therefore only heated in the steam oven, and it gave the remarkable result that its power of absorbing oxygen instead of falling, as was expected, considerably increased. Now the steam did not kill all the organisms, but spared those capable of forming spores; *i.e.* sterilisation was only partial. Partial sterilisation by means of volatile antiseptics gave the same result. The conclusion was drawn that partial sterilisation increased the bacterial activity, and consequently the amount of decomposition. The increased quantity of plant food thus formed is shown by the amounts taken up by the plant. Table LXI. contains a typical series of results.

TABLE LXI.—WEIGHT AND COMPOSITION OF CROPS GROWN ON PARTIALLY STERILISED SOILS. RUSSELL AND DARBISHIRE (240b).

	Dry Weight of Crop.	Percentage Composition of Dry Matter.			Weight of Food taken by the Plant from Soil, grams		
	Grams.	N.	P ₂ O ₅ .	K ₂ O.	N.	P ₂ O ₅ .	K ₂ O.
Buckwheat.							
Untreated soil . .	18·14	2·75	1·87	5·62	·499	·339	1·019
Soil treated with carbon disulphide	23·27	3·15	2·34	5·97	·733	·544	1·389
Mustard.							
Untreated soil . .	15·88	2·30	1·00	4·20	·367	·159	·668
Heated soil . .	24·33	4·43	2·08	5·02	1·077	·506	1·221

Further investigations by Russell and Hutchinson (240c) led to the following conclusions:—

(1) Partial sterilisation of soil, *i.e.* heating to a temperature of 60° C. or more, or treatment for a short time with vapours of antiseptics such as toluene, causes first a fall then a rise in bacterial numbers. The rise sets in soon after the antiseptic has been removed and the soil conditions are once more favourable for bacterial development; it goes on till the numbers considerably exceed those present in the original soil.

(2) Simultaneously there is a marked increase in the rate of accumulation of ammonia. This sets in as soon as the bacterial numbers begin to rise, and the connection between the two quantities is normally so close as to indicate a causal relationship; the increased ammonia production is, therefore, attributed to the increased numbers of bacteria.

172 SOIL CONDITIONS AND PLANT GROWTH

There is no disappearance of nitrate; the ammonia is formed from organic nitrogen compounds.

TABLE LXII.—AMMONIA AND NITRATE ACCUMULATING IN A SOIL KEPT TWENTY-THREE DAYS AT ABOUT 15° C. IN A MOIST CONDITION, PARTS PER MILLION OF DRY SOIL.

	Nitrogen present as Ammonia.		Nitrogen present as Nitrate.		Total Nitrogen present as Ammonia and Nitrate.		
	At beginning.	After 23 days.	At beginning.	After 23 days.	At beginning.	After 23 days.	Gain in 23 days.
Untreated soil	1.8	1.7	12	16	13.8	17.7	3.9
Soil heated 2 hours to 98° C.	6.5	43.8	13	12	19.5	55.8	36.3
Soil treated with toluene, which was then evaporated	5.0	27.8	12	12	17.0	39.8	22.8
Soil treated with toluene, which was not removed .	7.2	14.5	11	10	18.2	24.5	6.3

(3) The increase in bacterial numbers is the result of improvement in the soil as a medium for bacterial growth and not an improvement in the bacterial flora. Indeed the new flora *per se* is less able to attain high numbers than the old. This is shown by the fact that the old flora when reintroduced into partially sterilised soil attains higher numbers and effects more decomposition than the new flora. Partially sterilised soil plus 0.5 per cent. of untreated soil soon contains higher bacterial numbers per gram and accumulates ammonia at a faster rate than partially sterilised soil alone.

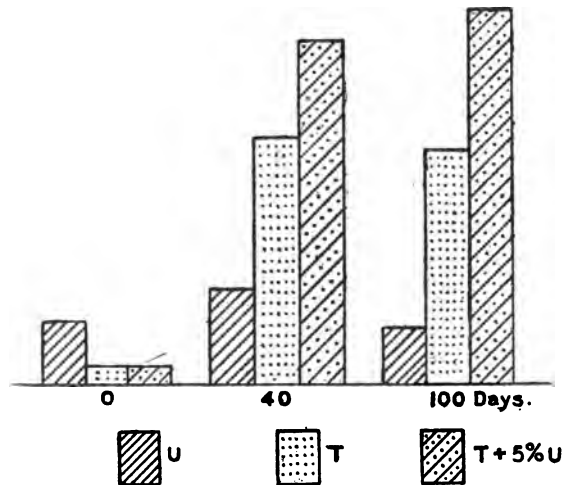
(4) The improvement in the soil brought about by partial sterilisation is permanent, the high bacterial numbers being kept up even for 200 days or more. The improvement, therefore, did not consist in the removal of the products of bacterial activity, because there is much more activity in partially sterilised soil than in untreated soil. Further evidence is afforded by the fact that a second treatment of the soil some months after the first produces little or no effect.

It is evident from (3) and (4) that the factor limiting bacterial numbers in ordinary soils is not bacterial, nor is it any product of bacterial activity, nor does it arise spontaneously in soils.

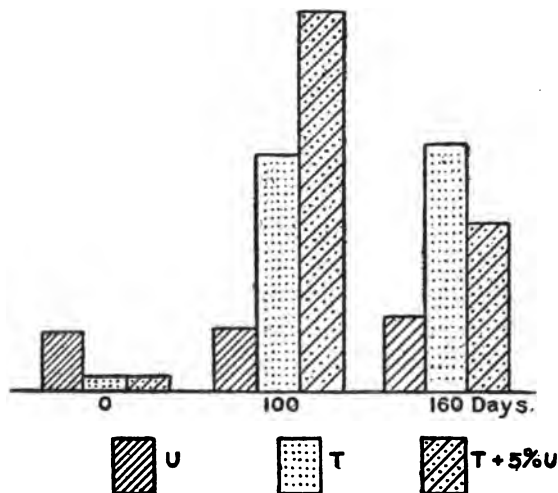
(5) But if some of the untreated soil is introduced into partially sterilised soil, the bacterial numbers, after the initial rise (see (3)), begin to fall. The effect is rather variable, but is usually most marked in moist soils that have been well supplied with organic manures; *e.g.* in dunged soils, greenhouse soils, sewage farm soils, etc. Thus the limiting factor can be reintroduced from untreated soils.

(6) Evidence of the action of the limiting factor in untreated soils

is obtained by studying the effect of temperature on bacterial numbers



(a) 1st period, where an increase is produced through the activity of the added bacteria.



(b) 2nd period, where a depression is produced through the slower development of the harmful organisms.

FIG. 13.—Columns showing the effect on bacterial numbers of introducing untreated soil into partially sterilised soils.

Untreated soils were maintained at 10°, 20°, 30° C., etc., in a well-moistened aerated condition, and periodical counts were made of the

numbers of bacteria per gram. Rise in temperature rarely caused any increase in bacterial numbers; sometimes it had no action, often it caused a fall. But after the soil was partially sterilised the bacterial numbers showed the normal increase with increasing temperatures.

TABLE LXIII.—EFFECT OF TEMPERATURE OF STORAGE ON BACTERIAL NUMBERS IN SOILS, MILLIONS PER GRAM.

Temperature of Storage °C.	Untreated Soil.				Soil Treated with Toluene.			
	At Start.	After 13 Days.	After 25 Days.	After 70 Days.	At Start.	After 13 Days.	After 25 Days.	After 70 Days.
5°-12°	65	63	41	32	8.5	73	101	137
20°	65	41	22	23	8.5	187	128	182
30°	65	27	50	16	8.5	197	145	51
40°	65	14	9	33	8.5	148	52	100

Similar results were obtained by varying the amount of moisture but keeping the temperature constant (20° C.). The bacterial numbers in untreated soil behave erratically and tended rather to fall than to rise when the conditions were made more favourable to trophic life; on the other hand, in partially sterilised soil, the bacterial numbers steadily increased with increasing moisture content. Again, when untreated soils are stored in the laboratory or glass-house under varying conditions of temperature and of moisture content the bacterial numbers fluctuate erratically; when partially sterilised soils are thus stored the fluctuations are regular.

(7) When the curves obtained in (6) are examined it becomes evident that the limiting factor in the untreated soils is not the lack of anything¹ but the presence of something active.

(8) This factor, as already shown, is put out of action by antiseptics and by heating the soil to 60° C., and once out of action it does not reappear. Less drastic methods of treating the soil put it out for a time, but not permanently: *e.g.*, heating to 50°, rapid drying at 35°, treatment with organic vapours less toxic than toluene (*e.g.*, hexane), incomplete treatment with toluene. In all these cases the rise induced in the bacterial numbers per gram is less in amount than after toluene treatment and is not permanent; the factor sets up again. As a general rule, if the nitrifying organisms are killed the limiting factor is also extinguished; if they are only temporarily suppressed the factor also is only put out for a time.

¹ The soils included fertile loams well supplied with organic matter, calcium carbonate, phosphates, etc.

(9) The properties of the limiting factor are :—

(a) It is active and not a lack of something (see (7)).

(b) It is not bacterial (see (3) and (4)).

(c) It is extinguished by heat or poisons, and does not reappear if the treatment has sufficed to kill sensitive and non-spore-forming organisms; it may appear, however, if the treatment has not been sufficient to do this.

(d) It can be reintroduced into soils from which it has been permanently extinguished by the addition of a little untreated soil.

(e) It develops more slowly than bacteria, and for some time may show little or no effect, then it causes a marked reduction in the numbers of bacteria, and its final effect is out of all proportion to the amount introduced.

(f) It is favoured by conditions favourable to trophic life in soil, and finally becomes so active that the bacteria become unduly depressed. This is one of the conditions obtaining in glass-house "sick" soils.¹

It is difficult to see what agent other than a living organism can fulfil these conditions. Search was, therefore, made for larger organisms capable of destroying bacteria, and considerable numbers of protozoa were found. The ciliates and amœbæ are killed by partial sterilisation. Whenever they are killed the detrimental factor is found to be put out of action, the bacterial numbers rise and maintain a high level. Whenever the detrimental factor is not put out of action the protozoa are not killed. To these rules we have found no exception.

TABLE LXIV.—NUMBERS OF BACTERIA AND AMMONIA PRODUCTION IN PARTIALLY STERILISED SOILS.

Soil Treatment.	Numbers of Organisms per gram of Dry Soil, in Millions, Gelatin Plate Cultures.					Protozoa Found.	Ammonia and Nitrate produced after 68 Days.
	At beginning.	After 7 Days.	After 21 Days.	After 68 Days.	After 142 Days.		
Untreated	11	10	12	11	4	C.A.M.	14
Heated to 40°	7	9	10	8	3	C.A.M.	15
" " 56°	2	14	16	38	48	M.	60
" " 70°	2	17	11	24	27	M.	38
" " 100°	0·01	17	22	10	10	—	44

C = ciliates. A = amœbæ. M = monads.

Further, intermediate effects are obtained when a series of organic liquids of varying degrees of toxicity is used in quantities gradually increasing from small ineffective up to completely effective doses. The detrimental factor is not completely suppressed but sets up again

¹ This is dealt with fully in *Journ. Agric. Sci.*, vol. 5, pp. 27-47, 86-111 (1912).

after a time, so that the rise in bacterial numbers is not sustained. But the parallelism with ciliates and amœbæ is still preserved: they are completely killed when the detrimental factor is completely put out of action; they are not completely killed, but only suppressed to a greater or less degree, when the detrimental factor is only partly put out of action.

Now this parallelism between the properties of the detrimental factor and the protozoa is not proof that the protozoa constitute the limiting factor, but it affords sufficient presumptive evidence to justify further examination. The obvious test of adding cultures of protozoa to partially sterilised soil was made, but no depression in bacterial numbers was obtained, instead there was sometimes a rise. But in view of the history of investigations on malaria and other protozoan diseases no great significance was attached to this early failure.

At this stage the investigation was divided into two parts:—

- (1) The study of the soil protozoa.
- (2) The effects of the limiting factor on the biochemical processes on the soil.

No attempt had ever been made in any of the above experiments to identify the protozoa or even to ascertain whether any particular form existed in the soil in the trophic state or as cysts. The variety of forms was considerable, and it soon became evident that a definite protozoological survey of the soil was required.

This was accordingly put in hand. In order to give the survey as permanent a value as possible the investigations were not confined to the narrow issue whether soil protozoa do or do not interfere with soil bacteria, but they were put on the broader and safer lines of ascertaining whether a trophic protozoan fauna normally occurs in soil, and, if so, how the protozoa live, and what is their relation to other soil inhabitants.

The first experiments were made by Goodey mainly with ciliates (110) and indicated that these protozoa were present only as cysts. Subsequent investigations, however, by Martin and Lewin (191) have established the following conclusions:—

- (1) A protozoan fauna in a trophic state normally occurs in soils.
- (2) The trophic fauna found in the soil differs from that developing when soil is inoculated into hay infusions: the forms which appear to predominate in the soil do not predominate in the hay infusions, and *vice versa* the forms predominating in the hay infusions do not necessarily figure largely in the soil.
- (3) The trophic fauna is most readily demonstrated, and is there-

fore presumably most numerous, in moist soils well supplied with organic manures, *e.g.*, in dunged soils, greenhouse soils, sewage soils and especially glass-house "sick" soils.

Finally, the latest experiments by Goodey (110c) have shown that when this trophic fauna is introduced into partially sterilised soils the bacterial numbers are brought down. The earliest attempts to carry out this experiment failed as already stated, only one successful experiment by Cunningham (73a) being on record. It was not till Goodey discovered the conditions for successful inoculation that it could be carried out. Goodey found that mass cultures of protozoa failed when introduced direct from a culture medium into partially sterilised soils, but succeeded when introduced through the medium of some untreated soil. In these circumstances the protozoa lived, and the numbers of bacteria were reduced. The protozoa used in these investigations were *amœbæ* of the *limax* type, these being the forms common in the soil.

Thus it was proved that these protozoa lead an active life in the soil, and that one result of their activity is to keep down the numbers of bacteria.

The further problem was put in hand of finding out how numerous are the protozoa in the soil and how this activity varies with the different conditions obtaining in the field. A dilution method is used somewhat similar to that adopted for enumerating the soil bacteria. The investigation is still only in its early stages, but already it is clear that *amœbæ* and flagellates are present in at least tens of thousands per gram of soil, while ciliates can be found only in hundreds. Some of the organisms appear to be new to science, and many of them are of considerable interest.¹

The presence of protozoa is not peculiar to British soils: they have been found in Germany, the United States and elsewhere. Various methods have been devised by the Rothamsted workers, by Goodey at Birmingham, by Waksman at the Rutgers College (292b), by Kopeloff, Lint and Coleman at the New Jersey experiment station (152), and by others for estimating their numbers and activities. An extensive literature has already sprung up around the subject.

The other part of the investigation consists in studying the effects of these detrimental organisms on the process of food production in the soil. For this purpose it is not necessary to find what the detri-

¹ See for example the paper by Thornton and Smith, "On Certain Soil Flagellates," *Roy. Soc. Proc., B.*, vol. 88, pp. 151-65 (1914), in addition to the papers mentioned above.

mental organisms are ; it is sufficient to divide the soil organisms into two groups in their relations to the processes of food production ; a useful group (most of group I. (4) on p. 155) and a detrimental group (group II.). The latter are, speaking generally, more readily killed than the former. Conditions that are harmful to active life in the soil tend, therefore, to reduce their numbers and lead ultimately to an increased activity of the useful bacteria. On the other hand, conditions favourable to active life tend to keep up the detrimental organisms and therefore to reduce the useful bacterial activity. It is thus possible to account for a number of obscure and paradoxical effects that have hitherto caused considerable perplexity. It has already been observed by practical men in various countries that certain soil conditions harmful to the growth of organisms were ultimately beneficial to productiveness ; such are long continued and severe frosts, long drought (especially if associated with hot weather), sufficient heat, treatment with appropriate dressings of lime, gas lime, carbon disulphide, etc.

Further, it has been observed that conditions which are undoubtedly favourable to life, such as the combination of warmth, moisture and organic manures found in glass-houses, lead to reduced productiveness after a time. This phenomenon is spoken of as "sickness"¹ by the practical man.

It is difficult to account for this result on the old view that the useful plant-food making bacteria are the only active micro-organisms in the soil. On the other hand, the new view that detrimental organisms are also present readily explains the observed facts.

The "sickness" that affects the soils of glass-houses run at a high pitch (such as cucumber-houses) and less slowly those run at a lower pitch (such as tomato-houses) has been investigated in some detail owing to its great technical importance (Russell and Petherbridge, 240e). It was traced to two causes : an accumulation of various pests, and an abnormal development, especially in cucumber-houses, of the factor detrimental to bacteria. The properties of this factor show that it is identical in character with that present in normal soil, and strongly indicate its biological nature. No evidence of a soluble toxin could be obtained. On the other hand some remarkably in-

¹ "Sickness" is a very vague term and no doubt includes many dissimilar cases. Other instances of "sickness," which may refer to something quite different, are recorded by Hudig (*Landw. Jahrb.*, 1911, 40, 613-644) and Loew (*Porto Rico Report*, 1910). Some soil in Orkney was said to be "oat-sick" but experiment revealed nothing (*Aberdeen Leaflet* 15, 1911).

teresting protozoa and allied organisms have been picked out from these sick soils and described by Martin and Lewin (191) and T. Goodey. Finally it has been shown that the whole trouble can be cured by partial sterilisation, and methods suitable for large scale work have been investigated and are now in use in practice. Steam heat at present proves most convenient, but the suitability and detailed effects of lime have been studied by Hutchinson and McLennan (140c) and of various antiseptics by Buddin (64a).

The Action of the Plant on the Micro-organic Population of the Soil.

The whole existence of the soil population is intimately bound up with the growing plant: from this source it obtains its supplies of energy and of those nitrogen compounds the changes in which form the chief theme of soil bacteriology. These effects are mainly exercised by the residues of dead vegetation; there are, however, others hardly less potent produced by the living plant.

A growing plant removes a considerable amount of soluble material from the soil, and thus modifies the composition of the soil solution which serves as part of the medium in which the organisms live. Further, the plant roots are continually giving off carbonic acid. It might be supposed that this would cause the surrounding medium to become strongly acid, but as a matter of fact the contrary happens and the medium becomes alkaline. This has been known for some time in the case of water cultures; the explanation offered is that the plant takes up the acid radicle of the sodium nitrate and leaves behind the base, which immediately appears as the carbonate. Hall and Miller (118b), and subsequently Maschhaupt (192) have obtained evidence of a similar action in the soil, the calcium nitrate formed during nitrification being converted into calcium carbonate while the nitrate radicle is taken by the plant. These effects are favourable to micro-organisms; others are unfavourable, such as the removal of moisture by the plant and the evolution of carbon dioxide from the roots. Some investigators have supposed that the plant secretes part of the mineral matter which it has taken up but no longer needs, and if so this would affect the micro-organisms. The evidence, however, tends to show that the plant retains all it takes up.¹

We have now to ascertain how these various effects react on the soil micro-organisms. Several attempts have been made to correlate

¹ See Le Clerc, *U.S. Dept. of Agric. Year Book*, 1908, 389-402; also André, *Compt. Rend.*, 1910, 151, 1378-82.

bacterial numbers with the nature of the crop, but the data hitherto obtained are inadequate for satisfactory discussion. There is, however, considerable evidence to show that nitrate accumulates more readily on uncropped than on cropped soils even after allowance is made for the quantity absorbed by the plant. Table LXV. gives some of the results obtained at Rothamsted.

TABLE LXV.—NITRATES IN CROPPED AND UNCROPPED SOILS AT ROTHAMSTED EXPRESSED AS N. lb. PER ACRE. RUSSELL (2407).

	June, 1911.		July, 1912.	
	Fallow Land.	Cropped Land.	Fallow Land.	Cropped Land.
N. as nitrate in top 18 in. of soil (June)	54	15	46	13
Nitrogen in crop lb. per acre		23		6
Total lb. per acre	54	38	46	19
Deficit in cropped land lb. per acre		16		27

expressed as N. parts per million.

N. as nitrate 0 to 9 in. depth	12	4	8	2
9 to 18 in. depth	9	2	10	3

To some extent climatic factors come into play, the cropped land frequently being somewhat cooler and drier than the fallow. But this does not hold universally, and the phenomenon has been observed under such widely different conditions that climatic factors seem to be ruled out. In 1905 Warington showed that the amount of nitrate in the drainage waters from Broadbalk field was considerably less than was expected from the manure supplied and the crop reaped. He thought that denitrification might account for some of the discrepancy but not for all, as it could hardly be supposed to act in dry summer weather; he further suggested that the nitrate might be taken up by the plant and then somehow lost before harvest. More recently Lyon and Bizzell (185) found more nitrate on land cropped with maize (after allowing for the nitrogen present in the crop) than on fallow land of similar history, and concluded that the growing maize plant in some way stimulated nitrification. During the latter part of the life of the plant less nitrate was found in the cropped than in the fallow land, and the further conclusion is drawn that nitrification is inhibited by the conditions accompanying the decreasing activities of the roots. On the other hand where oats and potatoes were grown the nitrates were never so high in the cropped as in the uncropped

land, again, apparently, after allowing for what has been absorbed by the crop. The following amounts of nitrogen as nitrate occurred in parts per million of soils are given in Table LXVI. :—

TABLE LXVI.—NITROGEN AS NITRATE IN CROPPED AND UNCROPPED SOILS, ITHACA, N.Y. (LYON AND BIZZELL). PARTS PER MILLION.

1908.	Fallow Land.	Land Carrying Maize.	1909.	Fallow Land.	Land Carrying Oats.
May 19	4.9	3.9	April 22	19.0	10.9
June 22	10.9	9.3	June 24	12.6	2.5
July 6	14.5	14.2	July 12	12.5	1.0
July 27	42.1	43.2	August 7	18.4	0.8
August 10	40.3	37.3			

It is interesting to observe that the figures are generally of the same order as at Rothamsted excepting only in July and August, 1908. We have never observed, however, any increase in nitrate on cropped land such as is recorded in their maize experiments; our results with wheat and barley have always shown a decrease, like theirs with oats. Leather's experiments also show a decrease (167*b*). The nitrate in the drainage water from the fallow gauges at Pusa contained respectively 261.5 and 209.6 lb. per acre during the period 1907-9, while that in the drainage water and crops of the gauges cropped with grass accounted only for 128.4 and 115.6 lb. per acre over the same period. The final rainfall before the account was made up was so heavy as to deplete the gauges of nitrate, so that no error arises through the retention of nitrate in the soil.

Deherain's experiments made at Grignon, near Paris (81*b*), between 1892 and 1897, also showed much more nitrate coming from the fallow lysimeters than from those covered with crops even after allowing for what was absorbed by the crop. In this case, however, it is uncertain how much nitrate was left in the soil, the rainfall probably being insufficient to wash it all out.

Thus it seems to be an established fact that less nitrate accumulates on cropped land than on fallow land, even after allowing for what is absorbed by the crop. Although the actual experimental figures refer only to the accumulation of nitrate, we are probably justified in supposing that they indicate a diminished production of nitrate in cropped land, otherwise we have to assume some destructive process at work in the cropped soil that does not go on in the fallow soil, an assumption for which there is no evidence at all. The wide range of climatic conditions under which the result is obtained seems to pre-

clude any assumption that the diminished production is due to the effect of the crop on the temperature or moisture content of the soil. There appears to remain only the possibility that the growing plant has a direct effect on the decomposition processes going on in the soil. Unfortunately field experiments alone do not enable us to decide this question and the systematic laboratory investigation has still to be undertaken. These effects are reflected in the crop. Numerous field experiments show the very beneficial effects of fallowing. Whether these are wholly the result of the increased bacterial activity or whether other factors come into play has not yet been determined.

Similar phenomena have been observed in paddy soils by Harrison and Aiyer in their investigations already quoted (p. 134). The production of methane and of hydrogen was markedly less on the cropped than on the fallow land. There is no question here of deficient water supply or temperature, and the conclusion of the authors is that the crop reduces bacterial action either by giving out some bacteriotoxin or by absorbing some of the products of the early stages of decomposition.

On the other hand McBeth and Smith (187*a*) obtained results which appear to be contrary to these. Working with the irrigated soils of Utah they found that the "nitrifying power" (*i.e.* the power to produce nitrate when incubated under optimum conditions with dilute ammonium sulphate solution) was higher on cropped than on fallow land. It should be noted, however, that these arid soils differ in many respects from humid soils (see p. 59), and further that the "nitrifying power" only has reference to what can be done under optimum conditions and not to what actually is done in the field. All the same further investigation is very desirable to clear up the apparent discrepancy. And again, Le Clerc found higher bacterial numbers under cow-peas than in the fallow plots.¹

¹ *Journ. Ag. Research*, 1916, 5, 439-447.

CHAPTER VIII.

THE SOIL IN RELATION TO PLANT GROWTH.

WE are now in a position to summarise the effect of the various soil conditions on the growth of plants. The soil serves several functions; it affords a more or less continuous supply of food and water, it regulates the temperature and provides anchorage for the roots without interfering too much with the air supply. The extent to which any of these things is done depends on the nature of the particles and therefore varies from soil to soil. As the requirements of plants also vary in degree, the different soil types have come to possess their own flora made up of those plants that tolerate the conditions better than other possible competitors, and on cultivation they show different agricultural characteristics.

In discussing the relationship between plant growth and the soil it is necessary to take into account not only the *intrinsic* properties of the soil due to the nature of its constituent parts, but the *extrinsic* properties impressed by topographical and climatic factors. A certain indefiniteness thus becomes unavoidable, because none of the latter can be expressed in exact measurements. This point is well illustrated by the water supply. The amount of water in the soil at any time is the balance of gains over losses. The gains depend on the rainfall (*i.e.* climate), and on the amounts of water derived by drainage from higher land (*i.e.* topographical position), or by surface tension from the subsoil; the losses depend on the extent to which the subsoil facilitates drainage and on the rate of evaporation, which in turn depends on the temperature, the exposure of the soil, the velocity of the wind and the mode of cultivation. Five factors have therefore to be considered: (1) the nature of the soil particles, (2) the amount and distribution of the rainfall, (3) the position of the soil in relation to the land round about it, its aspect, shade, and any other factors affecting its relative temperature and water supply, (4) the depth of the soil, (5) the nature of the subsoil, especially its perviousness to air, water and plant roots. Any of these factors may, within certain limits, dominate the rest and profoundly affect the flora and the agricultural value; thus

a sandy soil may, without any change in type, be a dry and barren heath if underlain near the surface with rock or gravel, a highly fertile fruit or market-garden soil if sufficiently deep, or a stagnant marsh giving rise to peat if so situated that water accumulates and cannot drain away.

No sharp division can be drawn between the intrinsic and extrinsic properties. The significant units in the soil that determine its intrinsic properties are the compound particles made up of the ultimate mineral particles—clay, silt, sand, etc.—together with calcium carbonate and organic matter derived from plant remains. Now the nature and amount of the organic matter are greatly influenced by the extrinsic conditions—the temperature and water supply—that have obtained in the past. Moisture, warmth and aeration favour the development of a succulent vegetation which sheds easily decomposable leaves and stems on to the soil; earth-worms and bacteria can now flourish and produce the normal decomposition products that go to make up “mild humus” and a fertile soil. Dryness necessitates a narrow-leaved xerophytic vegetation, the leathery fragments of which mingle with the soil, but afford a very indifferent medium for the growth of earth-worms and bacteria, so that little decomposition goes on and a barren sand results. Wetness and lack of aeration necessitate special vegetation and decomposition agents, and there may result a “mild humus” if sufficient calcium carbonate is present to determine a calcicolous flora, or an “acid humus” in the contrary event. Even such small differences as affect the liability to late frosts may affect the native vegetation and therefore the humus: for example, bracken is more readily killed than heather and is therefore less likely to survive at levels where late frosts are common.

Thus the soil is very much the result of circumstances; its character is determined in part by the rock from which it was derived, and in part by subsequent events, particularly the temperature and water supply it happened to obtain, in other words, its climate. A given set of mineral particles may, under different climatic conditions, give rise to soils wholly different in agricultural value and in natural flora. This thesis was first set up by Hilgard, but it has been greatly developed by the Russian investigators and indeed has been one of their most striking contributions to the study of the soil (85, 265).

Further, the farmer has discovered how to build up these compound particles by cultivation and thus change to a very great extent the relation of the soil to the plant: the process consists in adding dung, or ploughing in green crops, adding lime, exposure to frost and skilful

(but wholly empirical) cultivation, and, although not very rapid, it takes only a few seasons to accomplish.

But while the ultimate mineral particles do not entirely control the relationships of the soil to vegetation they fix the limits within which these relationships may vary and beyond which they cannot pass. Farmers recognise five great divisions: clays, loams, sands, chalky soils and soils rich in organic matter, all shading off into one another and without sharp lines of demarcation, but representing classes of soil that cannot be changed one into the other by any cultivator's artifice.

Calcareous Soils.—The simplest case is presented by soils where the calcium carbonate exceeds about 10 per cent. and dominates every other constituent, becoming the controlling factor in determining the soil properties. The conditions here seem to be extraordinarily well suited to plant and animal life. Bacteria are numerous and active, rapidly oxidising organic matter. Hosts of animals, wireworms, earthworms and others live in the grass land, and even get into the arable land, honeycombing the soil with their passages, puffing it up or "lightening" it considerably, and encouraging the multiplication of moles. Rabbits abound in dry places. Vegetation is restricted on thin exposed soils, but becomes astonishingly varied where there is sufficient depth of soil and shelter to maintain an adequate water supply. Ash is the characteristic tree in the north and beech in the south of England, and there is a great profusion of shrubs—guelder rose, dogwood, hawthorn, hazel, maple, juniper; and especially of flowering plants—scabious, the bedstraws, vetches, ragwort, figwort. Still more remarkable, perhaps, is the fact that a few plants—the so-called calcifuges—do not occur. Where the amount of calcium carbonate becomes too high plants tend to become chlorotic; Chauzit's analyses showed that vines suffered badly when 35 per cent. or more was present, but not when the amounts fell to 3 per cent.¹

The effect of calcareous soils on vegetation is also studied in Porto Rico (105), where a considerable portion of the arable land is sufficiently calcareous to produce nutritional disturbances in crops. It is found that bush beans (*Phaseolus nanus*) and radishes are unaffected by even 35 per cent. of CaCO_3 ; sunflowers, soy beans and sugar canes are somewhat depressed; while sweet cassava (*Manihot palmata*), rice and pineapples were considerably depressed by this amount. The amount of nitrogen, potash and phosphoric acid in the various crops

¹ See *Revue de Viticulture*, 1902, xviii., 15, and also Molz, *Centr. Bakt. Par.*, Abt. ii., 1907, xix., 475.

was apparently unaffected by the carbonate, but the iron was notably depressed.

The reason for these special features is not clear, but is probably not to be found in any one factor. The plants do not require such high amounts of calcium carbonate because they will wander on to an adjacent loam; even the absence of the calcifuges cannot always be attributed to a supposed toxic effect of calcium carbonate because in other regions, or in pot experiments, some at any rate of them may be found growing in its presence. In a prolonged investigation near Karlstadt, Kraus (155) found no plant occurring exclusively on soils with even approximately equal content of calcium carbonate, although some preferred more, e.g. *Festuca glauca*, *Teucrium montanum* and *Melica ciliata*, while others preferred less, e.g. *Brachypodium pinnatum*, *Kæleria cristata*, and *Hieracium pilosella*. True chalk plants were found on the adjoining sand, especially when some calcium carbonate was present, although the true sand plants did not wander on to the chalk. In such cases of displacement or "heterotopy" it was shown that the general physical conditions of the two locations were similar in spite of their wide difference in chemical composition. Kraus, therefore, argues that the true chalk plants inhabit chalk soils not because they need much calcium carbonate, but because they find there the general physical and chemical conditions they require. Dr. Brenchley finds that the calcifuges of the West of England are not all calcifuges in the Eastern counties, while Massart¹ showed that the typical calcifuge, *Calluna vulgaris*, grows on the "limestone pavements" of the West of Ireland.

The fact that a calcareous rock lies beneath is no proof that the soil itself is calcareous: on the contrary the soil may often contain practically no calcium carbonate, either because it has become decalcified by rain, or because it really represents some deposit of wholly extraneous origin.

The agricultural value of chalk soils depends very largely on their depth, and is much greater in valleys where the soil and water collect than on the higher ground where the soil is thinner. The two defects most in need of remedy are the lack of organic matter and the tendency to become light: these are met by additions of dung or other organic manures, by rolling and cultivating with heavy instruments, and above all by feeding animals on the land with the crops actually growing there and with purchased food, a process known as "folding". Heavy

¹*Brit. Assoc. Report*, 1911, 564. The case of *Calluna* is discussed by M. C. Rayner in *Annals of Botany*, 1915, 29, 97-133, and *Sphagnum* by M. Skene, *ibid.*, 1915, 29, 65-87.

wooden ploughs are still in use, and until recently were worked in many places by large teams of heavy oxen. Sheep are by far the most suitable animals to be fed on the land, and they form the centre round which the husbandry of chalk districts has developed, indeed so important are they that each chalk region has evolved its own breed of sheep—South Downs, Hampshires, etc. As fertilisers potassic manures, especially kainit, are generally profitable, superphosphate is needed or turnips, and in wet districts basic slag is useful on the grass land. Skilful cultivation is always necessary, or the soil dries into hard, steely lumps that will not break down. And, lastly, the pre-eminent suitability of the chalk to plant and animal life has its disadvantages; no soils are more prone to carry weeds, turnip “fly,” or wireworm. Skilful management is the keynote of success and it generally obtains, the bad farmers not usually surviving many seasons.

Black Soils or Humus Soils.—In these the organic matter dominates all other factors, but the case is more complex than the preceding, because several varieties of organic matter occur, giving rise to several types of soil.

It is necessary to remember the sharp distinction between :—

(1) True peat, such as is found in moorlands, acid in nature, and commonly occurring in wet districts and regions of high rainfall or low temperature. This again is subdivided into high moor and low moor.

(2) Fen, neutral in nature, occurring more locally: in England mainly in the Eastern counties.

Fen land when drained has a high agricultural value, being worth some £2 per acre annual rent and producing considerable crops of potatoes, celery, and wheat.

True peat, on the other hand, has little agricultural value in its natural state and where high-lying is largely waste land. In this country it may have a certain sporting value, but elsewhere it lacks even this.

Peat Soils.—A number of schemes have been projected for utilising the great peat areas, and they may roughly be grouped into two classes :—

(1) Ameliorating substances (such as lime, artificial manures, etc.) are added, and the peat is cultivated as if it were normal soil. This is only possible when the deposits do not lie too high.

(2) The peat is removed and sold, and if the climate allows the underlying formation is :

(a) Ploughed up, if it is clay or sand.

(b) Covered with town refuse and then cultivated, as at Chat Moss.

- (c) Warped, *i.e.*, systematically flooded with tidal water carrying silt till several feet of soil have been formed; this is only possible in a few areas, *e.g.*, in Lincolnshire, lying below high water level.

The first of these methods is in use in Ireland¹ and on the continent; it is much investigated at the experiment stations at Jonköping (Sweden), Bremen (Prussia), Munich, and Arnheim (Holland). The second has been the subject of many experiments in England.

The removal and sale of peat is perfectly sound in principle. Peat is an asset of considerable value but it is essentially a wasting asset; it disappears at a measurable rate after the drainage that is nowadays necessary. Under modern conditions peat cannot be conserved for future generations, and we are therefore fully justified in using it ourselves even if the process be somewhat wasteful.

Peat may be made to serve three purposes:—

- (a) Fuel, after it has been cut and dried.
- (b) Litter, if it is sufficiently fibrous, or
- (c) It may be decomposed by heat, and made to yield valuable products, such as sulphate of ammonia, power gas, tar, etc.

Fen Soils.—The fen soils form an interesting group in the low-lying areas adjoining the river Ouse and its tributaries in Norfolk, Cambridge, etc. As already stated, the soil water is not acid but contains calcium carbonate: the vegetation is not of the acid-soil type and crops do not respond to lime. The main characteristics of these soils are their richness in lime and their very high content of nitrogen, of which no less than 3 per cent. is found in some cases (see p. 75).

The region was not much in cultivation till the great reclamation schemes of the seventeenth century when Vermuyden the engineer and the Duke of Bedford and other enterprising capitalists took the matter in hand and erected the great dykes, drains and pumps that alone keep the land dry and usable. The water is thus artificially kept down and it can be maintained at any desirable level within the capacity of the pumps: the land is thus subirrigated, a feature which contributes no little to its extraordinary fertility.

Farmers distinguish two types of fen: the clay fen on the western side and the sandy fen on the eastern side of the region; the difference lies probably in the subjacent material, there being little evidence of any difference in the actual fen. The Kimeridge clay on the west lies about 5 feet below, but occasionally it comes above the surface and

¹ See Duncan for experiments in Ireland, *Journ. Dept. Agric., Ireland*, 1915.

forms the rising ground on which alone dwellings could be built before the reclamation—the “eys” or islands of the old days. On the east the fen is underlain by sand.

The most suitable crops are oats, wheat, and above all potatoes, the introduction of which some thirty years ago completely revolutionised fen husbandry. In smaller quantities mangolds, celery, mustard seed, cole seed, rye grass seed, buckwheat and other seeds are grown. Corn crops, however, do not finish well: they start well but do not “corn out”. But where clay lies underneath a complete remedy lies in bringing up the clay and spreading it: this is done about once in twenty years. The soils shrink very much on drying, forming large cracks dangerous to animals and sometimes destructive to cart wheels. Oxidation is continually proceeding at a rapid rate and within living memory the fen has shrunk several feet: in many cases it only has another 5 or 6 feet to fall before disappearing altogether.

Fen soils do not require lime or nitrogenous manures, or, as a rule, potash. But they do respond in a marked degree to superphosphate, as shown by the following experiments made by the Cambridge Department of Agriculture¹:—

With Mangolds.			With Potatoes.		
	Tons.	Cwts.		Tons.	Cwts.
No manure	11	2½	No manure	5	12
3 cwts. superphosphate	16	2	4 cwts. superphosphate	7	15
6 " "	21	13	8 " "	8	10

Bones also give good results, but basic slag appears to be without effect.

In practice the clay fen soils after their periodical claying receive nothing but superphosphate: they are extraordinarily fertile, commonly yielding 8 tons of potatoes, 90 bushels of oats and 56 bushels of wheat per acre. The sandy fen soils are less fertile because they cannot be clayed: the chief need again is for phosphate, but potash also is wanted.

The wonderful black earths of Russia, Canada, etc., are probably akin to the fen soils. The black soils of the Canadian prairies have been described by Shutt (264): under wheat cultivation they require no fertiliser; the similar Tchernozem of Russia and Hungary also carry practically nothing but wheat and receive little or no manure (85, 154*b*).

¹ *Cambridge Farmers' Bull.* No. 6. Two of the soils overlay clay, the third was over gravel.

Clay Soils.—Clay soils are characterised by the presence of 20 to 50 per cent. of "clay" and similar quantities of silt and fine silt; in consequence of this excess of fine particles the size of the pores is so diminished that neither air nor water can move freely. Clay soils, therefore, readily become waterlogged and in time of drought may not sufficiently quickly supply the plant with water; in our climate, however, they are usually moist or wet. The high content of colloidal matter impresses marked colloidal properties: (1) the soil shrinks on drying and forms large gaping cracks which may be several inches wide and more than a foot deep; (2) it absorbs much water, a good deal still being held even when the soil appears to be dry; (3) it readily absorbs certain soluble salts and organic substances. In addition the special clay properties are shown: plasticity and adhesiveness when wet, and a tendency to form very hard clods when dry. All these properties are much modified by calcium carbonate and intensified by alkalis; liquid manure (which contains ammonium carbonate) and nitrate of soda (which gives rise to sodium carbonate in the soil) are both to be avoided.

Clay soils have had rather a chequered agricultural history. Originally covered with oak forest and hazel undergrowth they were early reclaimed for agricultural purposes by draining, applications of lime,¹ and, later, of ground bones. Wheat and beans were the great clay crops, and in the early part of the last century, under the combined influence of high prices, large drainage schemes and artificial stimulus to enclosure, great areas came into cultivation so that now only little unreclaimed clay remains, excepting where the forest was preserved for hunting. Crops grew well but ripened late; a wet harvest was a terrible calamity. Bare fallowing was always necessary once in four years and any of the intervening years might, if wet, be lost by the difficulty of getting on the land to sow the crop. When the price of wheat fell in the eighties many of these soils went out of cultivation and became covered with a mixed growth of grass and weed, which was grazed by stock and gradually deteriorated as the old drains choked up and the land became more and more waterlogged. *Aira cæspitosa*, "bent" grass (*Agrostis vulgaris*), yellow rattle (*Rhinanthus Crista-galli*), and in drier places the quaking grass (*Briza media*) and ox-eyed daisy (*Chrysanthemum Leucanthemum*) are among the more obvious plants on these neglected fields; the only relics of the past are the field names and the high ridges or "lands" made years ago to facilitate drainage. But recently marked improvement has set in. Drainage is gradually

¹E.g. see Gervase Markham, *Inrichment of the Weald of Kent*, 1683.

being attended to, whilst additions of lime and phosphates (as basic slag) have markedly improved the herbage, favouring the development of white clover (*Trifolium repens*) and the pasture grasses, and crowding out the weeds. Potassic fertilisers are not usually needed. Only in the dry eastern counties has the old arable cultivation survived.

Many of the ecological and agricultural observations on clay need revising in view of the distinction which has recently been set up between the silty clays and the true clays. The former owe their heaviness to the large amount of fine silt present, and as this substance is not nearly as finely divided as clay it does not show the true colloidal properties, and is not flocculated by lime, frost, etc. Indeed no way is known for ameliorating these soils and they are generally left as rather poor pasture. The true clays are often indistinguishable on casual inspection, but they behave differently on cultivation and respond to lime and good treatment whenever it is deemed worth while to improve them.

Sandy soils are formed of large silica particles deficient in colloidal matter, and therefore possessing little power of cohesion, or of retaining water or soluble salts. Hence they tend to be dry, loose, and poor in soluble substances—"hungry," the practical man calls them. Their behaviour towards vegetation depends very largely on their position, their depth, and the nature of the subsoil, these being the factors that determine the water supply to the crop. The water supply is usually satisfactory when the surface soil contains sufficient clay and not too much coarse sand and gravel, and rests on a deep subsoil containing rather more of the finer particles. It is a further advantage if other land lies higher and furnishes a supply of underground water. In such cases the land is nearly always cultivated; it yields early crops of high quality rather than heavy crops, the tendency to drought inducing early maturation, while the absence of stickiness makes sowing an easy matter at any time. Fruit, potatoes and market-garden produce are often raised, and high quality barley is also grown. The winter feeding of sheep on the land is a common way of fertilising, but crops must be sown early, or the fertilising material is washed out unused, and the young roots have no time to strike into the subsoil before the surface layer dries out. High farming is the only profitable way of dealing with these soils; any carelessness in cultivation lets in hosts of weeds, such as poppies, knot-weed (*Polygonum aviculare*), spur-rey (*Spergula arvensis*), sorrel, horsetail, convulvulus, creeping buttercup and others. Crops should follow each other in rapid succession, any interval being a period of loss; under good management two or

even three market-garden crops can be secured in the year, while in purely farming districts catch crops should always be taken. Organic manures are very necessary to increase the water-holding capacity: sheep-folding or green-manuring are, therefore, very desirable. Frequent repetition is necessary, as the organic matter speedily disappears. Calcium carbonate is often needed and is better applied as ground chalk or limestone than as lime. Potassium salts are beneficial and may be added as kainit; nitrates often give remarkable results, but phosphates are not usually needed because the soil conditions already tend to promote good root development. Only small quantities of manure must be added at the time, as the soil has little retentive power. Above all, no very costly scheme of manuring should be recommended till preliminary trials have shown its profitability.

A soil underlain at a short distance below the surface by a bed of gravel, a layer of rock, or a "pan," is liable to be either parched or waterlogged, and its water supply is usually so unsatisfactory that cultivation is unprofitable. Under low rainfall the land becomes a steppe, under rather higher rainfall a heath, but the vegetation is always xerophytic, consisting of heather, ragwort, broom, etc., the trees being birch and conifers—the latter often planted in recent times. No method of cultivating these soils has ever been devised, and most of them still remain barren wastes, defying all attempts at reclamation. Two special cases have, however, yielded to treatment:—

(1) When the layer of rock or the pan is only thin and is, in turn, underlain by a rather fine-grained sand, its removal brings about continuity in the soil mass and thus effects a great improvement in the water supply. The soil now resembles the fertile sands, and should be treated in the same way. A good example is afforded by Cox Heath, Maidstone (p. 207).

(2) Where the gravel or rock is not too near the surface, systematic green manuring with lupines and other crops fertilised by potassium salts and calcium carbonate will often effect sufficient improvement to make cultivation profitable. Examples are afforded by the Schultz-Lupitz estate, Germany (255), and Dr. Edwards' experiments at Capel St. Andrews, Suffolk. On such land an industrious cultivator may make a living but not a fortune.

Under favourable conditions recourse may be had to dressings of clay (as in Lincolnshire) or to warping (in the Fens).

Barren conditions also result when, by reason of a thin parting of clay or its low situation, water cannot run away but accumulates and

forms a marsh. Reclamation in such cases is possible as soon as a way out has been found for the water.

Loams.—As the proportion of fine material in the soil increases and that of coarse material falls off, a gradual change in the character of the soil sets in, till finally, but without any sharp transition, a new type is reached known as a loam. The increase of fine material somewhat retards the movements both of air and of water, so that loams are characterised by a more uniform water content throughout the mass than sands. On the other hand loams show less tendency to become waterlogged or to allow plants to become parched in very dry weather than clays. The soil decompositions proceed normally, rapidly producing plant food, with little tendency to "sour"¹ or other abnormal conditions so long as sufficient calcium carbonate is present. In consequence most plants will grow on loams, even some of those supposed to be specially associated with some other soil type. Thus, where a chalk and a loam soil meet, it is not uncommon to find the chalk plants, *e.g.* traveller's joy (*Clematis Vitalba*), guelder rose, etc., wandering on to the loam, and it is much more difficult to find the line of separation of the soils than where the chalk abuts on to a sand or a clay. For the same reason loams allow of very wide choice in the systems of husbandry, and, as they become very fertile under good management, they are usually in this country all cultivated. Closer observation over a limited area shows, however, that a given class of loam is more suited to one crop than to another; the ecologist recognises differences in the sub-associations or facies, and the practical man will distinguish between a potato soil, a barley soil, a wheat soil, etc.: distinctions due no doubt to water and air relationships, and arising from differences in the compound particles. Unfortunately no method of investigating the compound particles has yet been devised, and a study of the ultimate particles by a mechanical analysis is alone possible. But even though the differences are thus attenuated they can still be traced, as shown by the analysis in Table LXVII. of soils in Kent, Surrey and Sussex, known to be well suited to the particular crops.

Low amounts of clay and fine silt, and high amounts of coarse sand whenever the clay begins to approach 12 per cent., characterise the potato soils; these are the most porous of the series, allowing free drainage and aeration. Barley soils on the whole are heavier and other analyses show they may be much shallower. Fruit and hops

¹ See p. 66.

TABLE LXVII.—MECHANICAL ANALYSES OF SOILS WELL SUITED TO CERTAIN CROPS IN THE SOUTH-EASTERN COUNTIES; LIMITS OF VARIATION. HALL AND RUSSELL (122a).

	Potatoes.	Barley.	Fruit.	Hops.	Wheat.	Waste Land.
Fine gravel . . .	0·1-3	0·2-2·5	0·3-2·3	0·3-2·3	0·4-6	0·1-7
Coarse sand . . .	2-47	1-53	0·8-9·5	0·7-9·5	0-13	0·3-69
Fine sand . . .	23-68	20-45	30-55	25-39	15-31	18-64
Silt . . .	3·5-21·4	5-33	13-44	20-45	11-35·5	2·5-20
Fine silt . . .	5-9	3·5-16·4	6-11	6-11	9·5-24	2-10
Clay . . .	5·5-12·6	4-19	10·5-14·6	11·5-15	13-24	0·2-6

both require deep soils, and only seem to find their most favourable circumstances in a restricted class of soils: the fruit soils generally contain rather more sand and less silt than the hop soils. But the fruits differ among themselves; the best nursery stock is raised on soils of the potato class, where the conditions are for some unknown reason very favourable to fibrous root development; strawberries prefer the lighter and apples the heavier kinds of fruit soil. Even different varieties of the same plant show distinct preferences for one class of soil over another: the finest varieties of hops are found only on the typical hop soils, and have to be replaced by coarser varieties directly it is desired to grow hops on heavier soils. Preferences for certain soil conditions are also shown by varieties of the common crops, oats, barley, wheat, etc.; unfortunately these can only be discovered by direct field trials, and even then the results only hold so long as similar conditions prevail and may often be reversed in a different climate or season.

Still more subtle differences may be observed: one and the same variety of a crop will acquire one habit of growth on one soil and a different habit on another. Wheat growing under the best soil conditions will produce stiff straw and ears well set with corn, so that a crop of 50 or 60 bushels per acre may be raised without difficulty; on soil rather different in type, and especially under somewhat different climatic conditions, only 30 or 40 bushels can be raised, because the ears are less thickly set and the straw is too weak to carry a heavier crop, becoming "laid" directly an attempt is made to increase production by increased manuring.¹ Whether some unknown nutrient is absent from these soils, or whether the adjustment of the air and water supply is wrong, is not known; but the limitation of yield arising from this unsuitability of soil conditions is one of the most serious problems of our time. Another instance may be given:

¹ Further illustrations are given by the author in *Science Progress*, 1910, v., 286.

in Romney Marsh pastures commonly occur carrying a vegetation of rye grass and white clover, with crested dog's-tail and agrostis, easily capable of fattening sheep in summer without any other food. All round these pastures are others, with *the same type of vegetation*, but the plants grow more slowly, produce more stem and less leaf, are less nutritious and *incapable of fattening sheep*. The soils are identical in mechanical analysis and in general water and temperature relationships, although certain differences have been detected (122a). Again: grass grown on lower lias pastures in Somersetshire and Warwickshire causes acute diarrhoea ("scouring") in cattle, whilst grass on adjoining alluvial pastures does not (105a). Harmful effects of a wholly different nature are recorded from certain Swiss pastures.¹ Some of the South African grazing lands tend to give the animals a serious disease, Lamziekte, which is attributed to a harmful quality in the herbage and not to any particular plant or organism.² Lastly: potatoes grown in the Dunbar district are remarkable for their quality, they will stand boiling and subsequent warming-up without going black. The same varieties of potatoes grown in the same way in the Fens blacken badly under the same treatment, and consequently command a much lower price in the market (8). Instances might be multiplied; enough have been given to show that the plant responds in a remarkable degree to variations in soil conditions. Our knowledge of these variations is fragmentary and wholly empirical, and would be much furthered by close and detailed study, jointly by a botanist and a chemist, of the factors causing differences in plant associations in two nearly similar habitats.

The agricultural treatment of loams, as already indicated, admits of considerable variety. The old plan was to apply a good dressing of dung every third or fourth year and a smaller intermediate dressing; clover was also grown every fourth year, and, on light loams, the root crop was eaten by animals on the land. At long intervals lime was applied and sometimes bones. The modern movement is towards specialisation, each man producing the crops he can best grow and managing them in the way he finds most profitable, but the system usually involves feeding a good deal of imported food to sheep and cattle, either on the land or in yards, and utilising the excretions as manure, buying nitrate of soda, sulphate of ammonia, and manufacturers' waste products (generally those derived from imported animal or vegetable products) to supply more nitrogen, and buying also im-

¹ *Jahrb. Schweiz.*, 1898, 104-5.

² See Ingle, *Journ. Agric. Sci.*, 1908, 3, 22-31, and Green, H. H., *ibid.*, 1916.

ported phosphates and potassium salts. Thus the fertility of highly-farmed countries like England tends to increase at the expense of new countries that export large amounts of animal and vegetable produce. But the transfer is prodigiously wasteful; enormous losses arise in virgin countries through continuous cultivation (p. 111), and at this end in making dung (p. 120), and especially through our methods of sewage disposal. It seems inevitable that these losses must make themselves felt some day, unless the movement for the conservation of natural resources ever becomes a potent factor in international life.

Soil Fertility and Soil Exhaustion.

From the preceding paragraphs it is clear that fertility is not an absolute property of soils, but has meaning only in relation to particular plants. Plant requirements vary; a soil may be fertile for one plant and not for another; every soil might conceivably prove fertile for something. But in practice the agriculturist can only find use for a very limited number of plants; he, therefore, has to select those combining the double features of saleability in his markets and suitability to his conditions of soil and climate. To a certain extent it is possible to bridge the gap between plant requirements and soil conditions: the former may be permanently altered by breeding if suitable plants cannot be found by selection, and the latter may be changed by such processes as draining, liming, etc. When all has been done that is economically possible there may still remain a divergency between the conditions ideal for the plant and those it finds in the soil; this divergency is the measure of the infertility of the soil for the crop.

The problem has to be simplified by restricting attention to the common agricultural crops and interpreting fertility to mean the capacity for producing heavy crops regardless of any subtle distinctions of quality. Three factors then come into play: an adequate supply of air and water to the roots, a sufficiently rapid production or solution of food material, and absence of harmful agencies. These have already been discussed in Chapters III. and VI., where also it is shown that the three are not independent, but related to one another, inasmuch as they are all directly bound up with the nature of the compound particles, and, therefore, with the ultimate particles as revealed by mechanical analysis, and with the amounts of calcium carbonate and of organic matter.

We have seen that the compound particles can be altered considerably by human efforts, within limits fixed by the properties of the un-

alterable ultimate particles. In trying to improve a soil, therefore, four courses are open :—

(1) The water supply may be increased by deepening the soil, *e.g.*, by breaking a “pan,” by enriching the lower spit, or other device, while the air supply can be increased by drainage.

(2) The compound particles may be built up by proper cultivation and the addition of organic matter (*e.g.*, dung, green manuring, etc.) and of calcium carbonate.

(3) Sufficient calcium carbonate must be added for the needs of the crop and the micro-organisms—nothing but a field trial can determine what this is.

(4) The food supply can be increased by the addition of fertilisers, the ploughing-in of green leguminous crops, feeding cake on the land, etc.

Conversely the “exhaustion” of soil is limited in our climate to the removal of organic matter, calcium carbonate, and some of the food (often the nitrogen compounds), and the destruction of the desirable compound particles; the ultimate particles, and all the possibilities they stand for, remain untouched. A distinction is therefore made between the temporary fertility or “condition” within the cultivator’s control, and the “inherent” fertility that depends on the unalterable ultimate particles. Of course the distinction is very indefinite and, in practice, wholly empirical, no proper methods of estimation having yet been worked out, but it is of importance in compensation and valuation cases.

Serious soil exhaustion did not arise under the old agricultural conditions where the people practically lived on the land and no great amount of material had to be sold away from the farm. Phosphate exhaustion was the most serious occurrence, and as the original supplies were not as a rule very great, it must have become acute by the end of the eighteenth century in England, for remarkable improvements were, and still are, effected all over the country by adding phosphates. Then began a process, which has gone on to an increasing extent ever since, of ransacking the whole world for phosphates; at first the search was for bones, even the old battle-fields not being spared if we may believe some of the accounts that have come down; later on (in 1842) Henslow discovered large deposits of mineral phosphates to which more and more attention has been paid.

The crowding of the population into cities, and the enormous cheapening of transport rates, led during the nineteenth century to the adoption in new countries, particularly in North America, of what is

perhaps the most wasteful method of farming known : continuous arable cultivation without periodical spells of leguminous and grass crops. The organic matter was rapidly oxidised away, leaching and erosion increased considerably when the cover of vegetation was removed, while the compound particles that had slowly been forming through the ages soon broke down. Nothing was returned to the soil, the grain and other portable products were sold and the straw burnt. The result has been a rate of exhaustion unparalleled in older countries, and wholly beyond the farmer's power to remedy, consequently he left the land and moved on. The excellent experimental studies of Hopkins (139) at the Illinois Experimental Station, of Whitson (307) at Wisconsin, and other American investigators, have shown that additions of lime, of phosphates and sometimes of potassium salts, with the introduction of rotations, including grass and leguminous crops, and proper cultivations will slowly bring about a very marked improvement.

CHAPTER IX.

SOIL ANALYSIS AND ITS INTERPRETATION.

WHEN an agricultural chemist is asked to analyse a soil he is expected to give some information about the crops to which it is best suited, and the manures that must be applied; he has, therefore, a much more complex problem than the mineralogical or geological chemist who simply has to report on the actual constituents he finds. It has been shown in the last chapter that the vegetation relationships of soils are not determined solely by the nature of the soil, but also by its position, subsoil, climate, and other circumstances, so that it is manifestly impossible for the chemist to make a satisfactory report on a sample of soil on the basis of analytical data only. He cannot even give a complete account of the soil itself, since he has no method of estimating the compound particles on which the water and air supply, the temperature and the cultivation properties depend, but he can only get at the ultimate particles out of which they are built.

Soil analysis is, therefore, restricted to: (1) comparisons between soils, showing which are fundamentally identical and in what respects others differ; (2) the tracing of such correlations as exist between the chemical and physical properties of the soils of a given area and the crops and agricultural methods generally associated with them. In order to carry out either of these satisfactorily it is necessary to make a systematic soil survey, a task that is certainly laborious but by no means impossible, since each agricultural chemist usually confines his attention to a definite region—a county or so—and is not called upon to deal with outside soils.

In planning a soil survey it must be remembered that the basis of the whole work is empirical: the agricultural and vegetation characteristics have first to be ascertained by field trials, and then systematised and amplified by aid of the laboratory data. It is necessary to begin, therefore, by going over the whole region very carefully and dividing it up in areas within which similar agricultural or vegetation characteristics prevail. In general the areas differentiated in the geological drift maps will be found identical with the vegetation areas, especially

if the drift map is interpreted in the light of the *Memoirs of the Geological Survey*. But as agriculture is influenced by altitude and rainfall, the investigator must also use an ordinary contour map and a rainfall map which, unfortunately, he must construct for himself from data in *British Rainfall*. Within each vegetation area a number of soil samples must then be taken from points representing the area as closely as possible: situated, for example, on level regions or long gentle slopes, and not on made ground, steep slopes, or places of local disturbance, etc.

In seeking for typical places the investigator is likely to meet with a good deal of discouragement; farmers will tell him that half a dozen or more different kinds of soil occur on their particular farms, while the vegetation of a wild area may show considerable changes. But these differences often arise from differences in the compound particles and not in the ultimate particles; small variations in the amount of calcium carbonate or of organic matter, or differences in the water supply, or management, may considerably affect the ease of cultivation and the vegetation relationships and give the impression of a wholly different type of soil. So little does cropping, cultivation, etc., affect the ultimate particles that it is quite immaterial for the purpose of a soil survey whether the sample is taken from pasture land or arable land, but it is well to take a number of samples from both. With a little practice abnormal places are easily avoided. It is necessary to take a large number of samples not only to get at the type, but also to trace out the causes of the phenomena noted by the farmer, and to discover the main factors determining the cultivation and vegetation relationships of the soil. Very full inquiries must be made on the spot as to the agricultural value of the land, the crops and manures most suitable, its behaviour during drought and wet weather, and any special points to be observed during cultivation. Information is also wanted about the most troublesome weeds, the native vegetation, hedgerow and other timber, etc., and note must be taken of the position of the soil in regard to water supply, the nature of the strata down to the permanent water table, etc. The most reliable information is obtained only by properly conducted manurial trials.

It is usual to take the sample to a depth of 9 inches and a lower sample to a depth of 18 inches, but if any marked change occurs in the soil the sample should only be taken to the point where it sets in. The subsoil sample does not characterise the formation any better than the surface sample, but it affords a useful check and helps in detecting abnormalities.

The vegetation areas correspond with the geological formations only so long as the lithological characters remain constant. Some formations are very uniform, *e.g.* the Folkestone beds of the Lower Greensand, but, in general, certain changes are observed. Where the formation has been laid down in an estuary of no very great size, the coarser particles are deposited near the old shore and the finer particles farther out, so that a gradual change from finer to coarser soil is observed in travelling along the formation, necessitating a soil division into two or three vegetation areas; the Hythe beds of the Lower Greensand and the London clay afford illustrations. Considerable trouble often arises when the formation consists of a number of strata of sands and clays, and the outcrops are so narrow that no one type persists over any large area. The simplest method of procedure is to map out any uniform areas that possess sufficient agricultural importance, and then group the remaining less important soils simply into gravels, sands, loams, and clays. In dealing with drift soils, it is well first to map the uniform areas and then look out for lines of uniformity and make up regions within which the agricultural characteristics vary between a higher and a lower limit. The investigator must be guided by the importance of the region from the particular point of view in deciding how closely he is to map out the country.

Absolute uniformity cannot be expected over any considerable area, and even such uniformity as existed has often been upset by subsequent rearrangements of the soil which result in the original surface being covered up with a later deposit or being washed away, leaving the original subsoil to become the new soil. Such changes are readily detected by mechanical analysis of the surface and subsoils; examples are given in Table LXVIII. At Merton the subsoil on the lower ground appears to have been the original surface soil because of its identity with the surface soil and its marked difference from the subsoil of the land higher up; it has been covered with a deposit identical with and presumably derived from the higher lying soil. The same thing has happened at Hamsey Green. At Woodchurch, however, it appears that the old surface of 69, now the subsoil, has been covered with rather a lighter soil; it is equally possible, however, in this particular case that 70 has lost its original surface soil, the present surface being the bared subsoil. This kind of variation is common on clay soils and often leads to differences in agricultural value that are fairly marked, but not sufficient to affect the type. Normally the subsoil contains more clay than the surface soil (as in 110, 69 and 70) and any deviation should be carefully investigated.

TABLE LXVIII.—VARIATION IN SOIL DUE TO WASHING OR FLOODING.

Formation . .	London Clay.				Clay-with-Flints.				Weald.			
Locality . .	Merton, Surrey.				Hamsey Green, Surrey.				Woodchurch, Kent.			
	Lower Ground.		On the Hill.		Soil 109.		Soil 110, 200 yards away.		Soil 69.		Soil 70.	
	Surface.	Subsoil.	Surface.	Subsoil.	Surface.	Subsoil.	Surface.	Subsoil.	Surface.	Subsoil.	Surface.	Subsoil.
Fine gravel .	1'7	1'3	1'5	0'3	1'6	3'1	1'7	1'4	0'5	0'6	0'9	0'7
Coarse sand .	18'4	23'6	16'9	8'4	9'5	6'7	5'3	7'1	2'5	1'9	1'1	1'1
Fine sand .	12'7	11'3	12'4	12'7	22'3	28'0	28'7	25'1	14'7	13'0	9'3	9'0
Silt .	16'6	18'0	16'6	13'4	25'4	22'5	26'3	17'6	24'2	27'8	25'9	18'8
Fine silt .	11'1	11'4	10'1	9'8	9'9	12'6	10'2	9'5	23'7	23'3	24'4	26'5
Clay .	24'6	24'9	26'7	41'7	16'0	16'4	16'4	28'3	20'1	28'9	28'6	37'8

The characterisation of soil types is sufficiently effected by mechanical analysis and determinations of calcium carbonate and organic matter. A representative set of soils should, however, be subjected to chemical analysis, the clay fractions being, if possible, broken up by ammonium fluoride and analysed completely. Soils about which precise information has been obtained by manurial and other trials should be very completely examined in order that they may serve as standards in the analysis of other soils from the same area.

The problem set by the farmer is wholly different. He does not want to know to what type his soil belongs, but how he must manure it, etc. If the analyst has an adequate knowledge of the soil type and the locality he can readily ascertain in what respects the soil differs from the type, and then, from the known results of manurial and other trials on that type, he can give the information wanted with a reasonable degree of probability; otherwise his report can only be a matter of guesswork. In short, the farmer's problem can be satisfactorily solved, and the manurial trials fully interpreted, only when a complete soil survey has been made.

The analyst must consider the soil from three points of view: (1) its physical properties, especially those relating to the ease of movement of the soil water; (2) its store of plant food, actual and potential; (3) the rate at which potential food can be converted into actual food.

The Interpretation of Mechanical Analyses.¹

The properties of the various fractions have already been given in Chapter III., but some little practice is necessary before they can be used for the interpretation of an analysis. A few illustrations are therefore given from Hall and Russell's survey of Kent, Surrey, and Sussex (122a): the data are set out in Table LXIX.

The Chilworth soil contains so little clay and fine silt and so much coarse sand that it has very little power of retaining water. As it lies too high to obtain any seepage water from the neighbouring formations it is dependent on the immediate rainfall, and is therefore not in cultivation but has always been heath land. Owing to its bad constitution and its high situation it could not by any known method be made suitable for farming.

TABLE LXIX.—MECHANICAL ANALYSES OF SOILS AND THEIR INTERPRETATIONS.

Formation . .	Folkestone Beds.		Thanet Beds.		Brick Earth.		London Clay.	Weald Clay.	Alluvium.	
Locality . . .	Chilworth.	Shalford.	Goldstone.	Barton.	Ickham.	Oving.	Tolworth.	Shadoxhurst.	Ewhurst.	
Gravel . .	1'2	2'5	0'2	0'2	0'3	0'9	0'4	0'2	0'7	0'1
Coarse sand . .	65'9	52'6	15'3	2'3	0'7	1'3	12'8	1'5	1'0	0'5
Fine sand . .	23'7	26'2	44'9	34'7	24'7	16'0	25'5	11'0	19'8	19'3
Silt . . .	2'4	4'8	17'3	36'2	44'8	35'5	11'3	19'6	28'4	13'0
Fine silt . .	2'0	3'5	6'3	6'3	8'6	13'3	11'1	26'8	12'1	20'0
Clay . . .	0'9	3'8	8'9	11'5	14'7	15'9	23'7	22'1	19'7	26'9
Calcium carbonate . .	nil	0'3	0'08	0'18	0'40	0'75	2'0	0'16	0'05	0'28
Loss on ignition	2'6	3'3	3'1	4'3	4'6	6'5	5'6	9'8	10'2	11'3

The Shalford soil lies lower down and has a better water-supply, less coarse sand and more clay and fine silt. But its water-holding capacity and its retentive power for manures are still very low; artificial manures are of much less value than organic manures, and the best treatment of the land is to grow green crops and fold them off to sheep. It is better suited to special purposes like the production of malting barley or market-garden crops than to ordinary mixed farming.

The Goldstone soil contains more clay and fine silt, and has therefore better power of retaining water and manures, and is more productive and more generally useful. But as the coarse sand exceeds the clay in amount it is still distinctly light; it responds better to organic than to artificial manures and suffers rather in droughty weather in

¹ See Appendix for Methods of Analysis and p. 58 for details as to dimensions and composition of fractions.

spite of lying not far above the marshes. It contains 45 per cent. of fine sand and therefore tends to cake on the surface after rain and to form steely lumps if worked when wet. Under proper management, however, it produces good crops and is equally suited for ordinary arable and for fruit or potato cultivation.

The next three soils may be taken as illustrations of the very best loams in the three countries. Silt forms the largest fraction and therefore the soils possess sufficient, but not too great, a power of retaining water. The fine silt is always lower than the clay; the latter varies between 12 and 16 per cent., a very satisfactory amount where the rainfall is not too high. As there is a considerable amount of fine sand and no excess of fine silt and clay, the absence of coarse sand is no disadvantage.

The Tolworth soil is highly productive arable land but almost too heavy for profitable cultivation; only by dressings of dung (fortunately obtainable cheaply from town) can it be kept workable. It contains rather too much clay and would no doubt have gone down to grass had there not been so much coarse sand present.

The Shaddoxhurst soil is bad. It contains much clay and still more fine silt, consequently its texture is not improved as much as might be expected by liming. There is practically no coarse sand and not much fine sand to keep the soil open, it has always and deservedly been in bad repute. It is best as pasture land, and, after drainage and treatment with basic slag, it may be made useful but never first rate.

The Ewhurst soils are both in pasture, being too heavy for arable cultivation on account of their high clay and low coarse sand content. The first has the better constitution; silt is the predominant feature, the clay is not too high, nor is the fine silt. It has all the characteristics of a good, if heavy, soil, and is indeed known to be an excellent bullock pasture. The second is not so good; it contains too much clay and fine silt, and too little silt and coarse sand. It has no great agricultural value.

Factors Modifying the Interpretation of a Mechanical Analysis.

The Amount of Organic Matter.—Organic matter at the proper stage of decomposition has the effect of binding a loose soil and lightening a heavy one; thus it reduces the difference between a light sand and a heavy clay, bringing them both closer to the loams. When 10 to 15 per cent. of organic matter is present it so impresses its properties on the soil that the mechanical analysis loses much of its significance, and all the analyst can do is to point out what the soil would become

if by persistence in certain methods of management the organic matter were reduced below a certain point.

It is, however, essential that the organic matter should be properly decomposed. Barren sandy wastes not infrequently contain 5 to 10 or even 15 per cent. of organic matter, but much of it is simply dried bracken or other vegetation that has not broken down and has no value, but rather the reverse, in improving the physical conditions. If the drainage is bad a good deal of peat may form; further, the water fills up the soil, making its condition bad whatever its composition may be.

The Amount of Calcium Carbonate.—In interpreting a mechanical analysis it must be remembered, as shown on page 67, that 1 or 2 per cent. of calcium carbonate may greatly modify the clay properties and give a considerable degree of friability to a soil which otherwise would be very intractable. When the percentage rises to much higher amounts the soil becomes very chalky and the mechanical analysis loses its meaning, just as when much organic matter is present.

Water-supply and the Interpretation of Mechanical Analysis.

It has already been pointed out that a mechanical analysis can be interpreted and discussed with any degree of completeness only in terms of the water-supply; the rainfall, the coolness of the climate, the presence of moving underground water, and the nature of the subsoil all have to be taken into account.

Effect of the Rainfall.—The effect of a high rainfall is to bring into prominence the "sticky" properties of the fine fractions, and to put into the background their water-holding capacity. Thus a light soil under a high rainfall behaves like a heavier soil under a low rainfall; it is as well supplied with water and on the whole behaves in the same kind of way on cultivation. For example, the Stedham soil (Table LXX.) is rather lighter than the Swanley soil, and yet in virtue of its extra rainfall is more useful for farming purposes; indeed the Swanley soil is essentially a market-garden soil, requiring large dressings of dung for successful cultivation. The North Chapel soil is physically as good as the East Farleigh soil but agriculturally much inferior; owing to the higher rainfall it becomes somewhat too sticky to cultivate profitably and so is in rather poor grass; the East Farleigh soil, on the other hand, is from a highly fertile hop garden.

Coolness of Climate.—Soils containing so much coarse sand or fine sand that they would scorch or burn in a dry warm district may prove very suitable for cultivation in a cooler district where evaporation is lessened. Potato soils afford some good illustrations; potatoes require a

206 SOIL CONDITIONS AND PLANT GROWTH

light soil, but it must be cool and moist. The Nutfield soil (Table LXX.) fulfils these conditions ; it is on a slope facing northwards not very far above a stream, and, therefore, does not quickly dry out, hence it is very good for main crop potatoes. The Tolworth soil, on the other hand, although similar in composition, is so placed that it quickly dries and is of much less value. Some of the potato soils of Dunbar, analysed by S. F. Ashby (8), have all the appearance of soils readily drying out, but in their cool climate this property does not show itself to an injurious extent.

TABLE LXX.—WATER-SUPPLY AND INTERPRETATION OF MECHANICAL ANALYSIS.

	Swanley.	Stedham.	North Chapel.	East Farleigh.	Tolworth.	Nutfield.	Dunbar.	
Fine gravel	1'2	1'4	0'9	2'3	0'6	2'9	3'0	1'0
Coarse sand	10'2	9'3	11'4	9'5	37'8	46'6	33'8	23'7
Fine sand	58'6	68'5	43'2	30'6	33'1	22'9	28'0	38'2
Silt	13'3	3'6	13'0	19'7	7'7	3'5	5'5	6'8
Fine silt	5'1	5'6	10'2	11'1	4'7	8'8	10'8	11'8
Clay	5'5	5'5	10'9	13'3	7'6	6'9	6'6	9'5
Loss on ignition . .	2'9	3'4	5'1	5'6	3'6	3'6	6'9	6'2
Calcium carbonate .	'02	'03	'80	1'0	'27	'21	'15	'31
Rainfall in inches (approximate)	24	33	30	24	28	27'5	25	25

Effect of Underground Water.—When the underground water is near the surface, but sufficiently far below to allow of proper root development, the most important property of the soil becomes its power of lifting the water by surface action up to the roots. The silt and sands are in such cases the useful constituents, the clay and fine silt being less necessary. The Weybridge soil (Table LXXI.), at about 3 feet below its surface, has a current of underground water which is brought to the roots by the fine and coarse sand. It therefore grows excellent wheat crops. The Bagshot sands, however, although similar in physical type, have in general no such water-supplies and are sterile because they lack the clay which, in their circumstances, could alone confer an adequate power of holding water from one shower to the next.

TABLE LXXI.—UNDERGROUND WATER AND MECHANICAL ANALYSIS.

	Weybridge.	Bagshot Beds.	Shalford.	Lydd.
Fine gravel	1'3	'1 to '6	2'5	0'1
Coarse sand	38'4	20 to 30	52'6	0'9
Fine sand	39'9	45 to 65	26'2	66'7
Silt	5'6	5 to 10	4'8	7'2
Fine silt	5'1	5 to 10	3'5	11'4
Clay	3'8	3 to 7	3'8	3'9

The Shalford soil is a light sand with too little power of retaining water for pastures to last through a hot summer, consequently the grass-land, except near the brooks, is parched and scorched. The Lydd soil is certainly somewhat finer grained, but not so very different that one would expect to find it much better for pasture purposes, yet it produces one of the best pastures in Romney Marsh, not only carrying but fattening sheep throughout the summer. It has, however, a constant supply of water 3 or 4 feet below the surface, while at Shalford the water level is much lower down.

This underground flow is one of the factors concerned in the proverbial fertility of valleys. Soils lying towards the bottom of a long slope receive not only the rainfall but also the water steadily drifting downwards to the stream or marsh at the bottom, and this advantage is further enhanced by the gradual transport of soil down the slope which increases the depth through which the plant roots can range.

Effect of the Subsoil.—In general the subsoil is rather heavier in type than the surface soil, especially in the case of clays; examples are given in Table LXXII. The rare exceptions to this rule may arise through periodical flooding with water containing much clay in suspension, or through the occurrence of a bed of sand just below the surface.

Two cases described on page 192 may be illustrated here. The bad effect of a layer of impermeable material near the surface is shown by the Loddington soil (Table LXXII.), typical of an area near Maidstone (Cox Heath), much of which was waste land. Its sterility was due to no

TABLE LXXII.—NATURE OF THE SUBSOIL.

	Loddington.		Harting.		Dicker.		Shopwyke.		Wye.	
	Sur- face.	Sub- soil.	Sur- face.	Sub- soil.	Sur- face.	Sub- soil.	Sur- face.	Sub- soil.	Sur- face.	Sub- soil.
Fine gravel .	3'5	2'6	0'6	0'2	1'0	0'6	0'6	0'1	1'0	0'2
Coarse sand .	10'2	9'8	3'3	3'2	2'0	1'1	0'8	0'4	3'0	1'9
Fine sand .	33'5	30'2	31'6	33'9	26'6	23'2	25'0	21'9	27'2	25'3
Silt .	14'6	17'5	17'3	21'3	23'0	15'1	27'3	38'0	40'0	41'4
Fine silt .	14'9	15'5	14'5	13'4	17'8	21'9	16'4	15'2	8'9	9'6
Clay .	12'2	15'3	12'3	16'0	17'9	25'7	11'1	15'7	11'2	14'5

fault in the soil, which is obviously of excellent type, but to a thin layer of rock lying near the surface. When this was removed a very good soil was obtained. The Harting soil lies on the Upper Greensand in West Sussex; the rock comes close to the surface, restricting both the

root range of the plant and the water supply where it lies horizontally, but proving much less harmful where it dips at any considerable angle. The soil itself is good although it has rather too much fine silt, and it becomes very productive when the effect of the rock is counteracted. The Dicker soil, while not of the best type as its fine silt is too high, is far from being hopeless, but it unfortunately lies on a deep bed of stiff clay which keeps it wet in winter and parched in summer. It is therefore very poor, and even with the best management never gives great results.

The second case, over-drainage, is illustrated by the Shopwyke soil in the same table. It is a fair soil, containing too much fine silt to be in the first rank, but it is spoiled by lying on a deep bed of gravel only nine inches or a foot below the surface—the subsoil sample could only be taken in one or two instances. Consequently it dries out badly in summer and does not repay much expenditure in the way of manures.

The Wye soil is given as an instance of the normal case where a soil becomes rather heavier in its lower depths, with the result that the movement of water is somewhat impeded without being stopped. Thus the subsoil furnishes a reserve of water for the surface, yet even in wet weather it does not hold up too much water and in dry weather does not constitute too great a barrier against the upward capillary movement. The Wye soil contrasts with the Dicker soil, the usual case in a clay, where the subsoil contains much more true clay than the surface.

Chemical Analysis of Soils.¹

Recourse is had to chemical analysis to discover the amounts of potential and actual plant food in the soil, and the rate at which potential food is likely to become available. But as the problem is vague, so the methods are empirical and the interpretation of the results often very difficult.

Organic Matter.—The analyst should note whether the organic matter is fairly well decomposed, or whether it still shows definite plant structure, also whether or not it is acid to litmus paper. He can then interpret his observations as shown on pages 70, 74, and 186.

Nitrogen.—Unlike the other soil constituents nitrogen and carbonates are determined absolutely. The amount of nitrogen is closely related to the loss on ignition, of which in a large proportion of cases it is about 3 per cent. As a guide to fertility it is therefore subject to the same limitations; a high nitrogen content may be associated either

¹ See Appendix for methods of analysis.

with a rich soil containing abundance of valuable non-acid organic matter, or with a soil where the conditions are so unfavourable that organic debris does not decompose, or only forms accumulations of peat. On the other hand some of the best loams, where the conditions are most favourable to rapid decomposition and nitrification, contain but little nitrogen. A few typical examples are given in Table LXXIII.

TABLE LXXIII.—NITROGEN AND LOSS ON IGNITION.

	Fertile Arable Soils.				Poor Arable Soils.				Barren Wastes.		
Loss on ignition .	4·65	6·58	3·70	4·65	4·13	6·23	3·60	5·14	5·94	7·00	5·81
Nitrogen . . .	·120	·220	·133	·141	·128	·143	·182	·152	·130	·195	·167
Loss on ignition in subsoil . . .	3·00	4·94	2·81	3·29	3·74	5·50	2·58	4·14	—	—	2·70
Nitrogen in subsoil .	·078	·139	·081	·097	·112	·104	·061	·096	—	—	·058

Soils containing much calcium carbonate are as a rule rich in nitrogen, partly no doubt because of the rather high nitrogen content of the rock and partly also because they are folded, green manured, cropped with leguminous plants like sainfoin, lucerne, etc., all of which tend to increase the nitrogen supply. The nitrogen in some chalk soils is as follows :—

Nitrogen in surface soil . . .	·25	·194	·331	·258	·249	·419
" subsoil . . .	·128	·130	·162	·192	·196	·180
Calcium carbonate in surface soil . . .	18·1	3·70	49·7	66·0	65·6	44·0
Calcium carbonate in subsoil .	11·37	14·9	61·3	55·2	54·8	71·6

All are arable soils, excepting the last, which is open downland.

Carbonates.—The analyst is often asked whether or not a particular soil contains sufficient calcium carbonate, and in endeavouring to answer this question he must bear in mind the twofold function of this substance, to prevent "sourness" (p. 66), and to flocculate the clay. Where only a small amount of clay—say 8 per cent. or less—is present the flocculating action is less needed and a smaller amount of calcium carbonate suffices. The Stedham soil (Table LXX.) is an example ; it is near the bottom of a slope along which water containing calcium bicarbonate in solution is drifting, and therefore shows no tendency to become sour. The 0·03 per cent. of calcium carbonate present, hopelessly inadequate as it appears, suffices for its needs and no increase in crop is obtained by applying lime. Grégoire¹ also found soils practi-

¹ *Ann. Stat. Agron., Gembloux, 1913, 2, 87.*

cally free from carbonate and yet not acid, and presumably not needing lime. The Lydd soil (Table LXXI.) contains only '02 per cent., but is also well supplied with calcareous water from below and shows no sign of sourness. Similar soils that have not this advantage of position stand in great need of lime even when 0'1 per cent. is present. As the amount of clay increases, the need for lime becomes greater because flocculation is now wanted; soils with 20 per cent. or more of clay need two or three times as much lime as sandy soils. It is impossible to fix limits that shall hold universally. Before an analyst recommends lime or chalk on a sandy soil he should satisfy himself that acidity is indicated by the vegetation, and before he states that lime is not necessary on a clay he should be quite sure that further additions would have no beneficial flocculating effect. The need of lime is indicated:—

(1) If clover fails to start well, or to stand the winter, or looks bad in spring.

A Suffolk farm was recently examined by the writer where lucerne was failing in patches in the field and weeds were consequently getting a firm hold. A similar occurrence was investigated on a Norfolk farm. The amounts of lime in the soil were:—

On the good parts: Suffolk, 0'8, Norfolk, 0'6 per cent. calcium carbonate.

On the bad patches: „ 0'07, „ 0'2 „ „ „

(2) If swedes, turnips, or cabbages get finger-and-toe rather badly.

The Armstrong College experiments have shown that 2 tons per acre of ground lime, or $3\frac{1}{2}$ tons per acre of ground limestone, afford suitable dressings in this case.¹

(3) If mayweed springs up vigorously among the wheat, or if spurrey, sorrel, or bent grass become prevalent.

Land that has been laid wet through the winter ought to have lime in the spring: otherwise uneven patches may arise in the field causing the crop to ripen unevenly, and giving weeds a good chance to develop.

Neither lime nor limestone, however, should be applied to potatoes or oats unless actual trials have shown that benefit will be obtained; as a general rule these two crops respond less than others: and in the Kilmarnock trials,² lasting over eight years, potatoes were actually injured by lime, though oats benefited by it.

Basic slag reduces the need for lime, but superphosphate does not.

¹ *Armstrong College Bull.* No. 12, 1915.

² *West of Scotland Agric. Coll. Bull.* No. 55, 1911 (pp. 193-222).

SOIL ANALYSIS AND ITS INTERPRETATION 211

Sulphate of ammonia increases the need for lime. The following soils were known to respond to lime :—

Sandy Soils.			Loams and Clays.		
No. of Soil. ¹	Percentage of Clay.	Percentage of Calcium Carbonate.	No. of Soil. ¹	Percentage of Clay.	Percentage of Calcium Carbonate.
126	7·8	·04	207	11·1	·02
675	8·9	·08	119	10·4	·03
193	6·0	·18	118	11·5	·18
189	3·8	·35	152	12·2	·26
	.		215	13·0	·45
			127	13·3	1·00

Alumina.—In general, in the much weathered soils of the south of England the alumina is approximately equal in amount to one-third of the clay fraction, indicating that the acid treatment breaks down some definite group of silicates associated mainly with the clay fraction in the soil. The following examples may be quoted :—

Formation.	Bagshot Sands.			London Clay.		Thanet Beds.		Sand-gate Beds.	Folke-stone Beds.	Weald Clay.
Percentage of clay in soil .	3·6	4·9	7·1	36·8	21·3	11·5	7·1	15·3	6·9	33·8
Percentage of Al_2O_3 in soil	·92	1·43	1·94	11·75	6·78	3·46	2·66	5·14	1·99	10·45
Ratio $\frac{Al_2O_3}{clay}$	·25	·29	·27	·31	·31	·31	·37	·33	·28	·31

Exceptions to the rule occur when much fine silt is present, the alumina then being markedly less than one-third of the clay.

Formation.	Weald Clay.			Lower Wealden Beds.			Upper Greensand.		Gault.
Percentage of fine silt in soil .	27·4	35·8	25·9	15·8	21·5	14·3	15·9	14·5	14·0
" clay in soil .	21·5	22·1	19·4	5·4	12·5	9·7	13·1	12·3	11·8
" Al_2O_3	5·02	5·42	5·68	·17	1·66	2·38	2·48	2·39	5·11
Ratio $\frac{Al_2O_3}{clay}$	·23	·25	·29	·03	·13	·24	·18	·19	·43

Iron Oxide.—The iron oxide is present in quantities comparable with those of alumina, but no close relationship is observable, nor does the amount of iron oxide afford any indication of the fertility of the

¹ The numbers are those used in *Soils and Agriculture of Kent, Surrey, and Sussex* (Hall and Russell).

soil. Light soils, good or bad, contain about 1 to 2·5 per cent., good loams and poor clays contain 3·5 to 5 per cent. Larger amounts of iron oxide are not common. Soils containing ferrous compounds are generally of no great fertility.

Lime and Magnesia.—About ·1 to ·5 per cent. of magnesia is found in the soils we have examined, and in general the $\frac{\text{lime}}{\text{magnesia}}$ ratio falls between 1 and 3, but ratios of 4 and 5 are not uncommon, while on chalk soils they may rise very high. No connection could be traced between the $\frac{\text{lime}}{\text{magnesia}}$ ratio and the productiveness of the soil, indeed Table LXXIV. shows that very good and very poor soils may have practically identical ratios.

TABLE LXXIV.— $\frac{\text{LIME}}{\text{MAGNESIA}}$ RATIO IN VARIOUS SOILS.

Barren Wastes.				Poor Cultivated Soils.				Fertile Soils.			
No. of Soil.	CaO.	MgO.	Ratio $\frac{\text{CaO}}{\text{MgO}}$	No. of Soils.	CaO.	MgO.	Ratio $\frac{\text{CaO}}{\text{MgO}}$	No. of Soil.	CaO.	MgO.	Ratio $\frac{\text{CaO}}{\text{MgO}}$
170	·05	·06	1·0	45	·43	·23	1·9	183	·56	·40	1·4
192	·13	·08	1·6	242	·30	·13	2·3	222	·46	·28	1·6
168	·21	·13	1·6	106	·48	·21	2·3	152	1·02	·41	2·5
50	·15	·08	1·9	255	·89	·27	3·4	122	·60	·22	2·7
197	·21	·08	2·6	196	·43	·12	3·6	211	1·79	·40	4·5
91	·08	·03	2·7	287	1·19	·29	4·0	72	1·94	·42	4·6
241	·22	·07	3·1					127	2·14	·40	5·4
13	·58	·14	4·1								

Potash.—The amount of potash is closely associated with that of alumina, being commonly about one-tenth; it is, therefore, about one-thirtieth of the clay in the south of England soils. Some examples are:—

No. of Soil.	Percentage of Al_2O_3 .	Percentage of K_2O .	Ratio $\frac{\text{K}_2\text{O}}{\text{Al}_2\text{O}_3}$.	Percentage of Clay.	Ratio $\frac{\text{K}_2\text{O}}{\text{Clay}}$.
112	4·07	·45	·11	13·1	·034
120	2·84	·31	·11	10·4	·029
100	3·83	·40	·10	11·2	·035
133	3·67	·44	·12	11·7	·037
103	3·66	·30	·08	11·9	·025
161	7·97	1·08	·14	27·7	·039
67	11·75	1·44	·12	36·8	·039
118	3·46	·404	·12	11·5	·035
79	5·14	·40	·08	15·3	·026
43	10·45	·76	·07	33·8	·022
147	7·88	·96	·12	22·5	·043

The "available" potash¹ shows no kind of regularity, but varies between 5 and 50 per cent. of the quantity extracted by strong acids. In deciding whether or not sufficient is present, attention must be paid to the soil, the crop and the rainfall. Thin chalky soils, sandy soils and soils rich in organic matter are peculiarly responsive to potassic manures, whilst clay soils generally are not. Carbohydrate-making crops, like sugar-beet, mangolds, and potatoes also invariably want more potash than they find in the soil or in dung. Potassic manures also tend to prolong the life of the plant, and, therefore, to increase the yield in dry districts where the conditions all tend to early stoppage of growth. Illustrations are afforded in Table LXXV. where soils in dry districts, known to respond profitably to potassic manures, are compared with soils in places of much higher rainfall where potassic manures do not prove profitable.

TABLE LXXV.—"AVAILABLE" POTASH IN SOILS OF KNOWN BEHAVIOUR TOWARDS POTASSIC MANURES.

	Soils Responding to Potassic Manures.				Soils not Responding to Potassic Manures.			
	East Kent.		Surrey.	Sussex.	West Sussex.			Kent.
	Newington.	Barton.	Redhill.	Patching.	Oving.	Rogate.	Stedham.	Yalding.
Available K ₂ O .	·013	·015	·010	·007	·014	·024	·010	·044
K ₂ O extracted by conc. HCl .	·200	·404	·181	·260	·43	·18	·14	·59
Clay .	6·0	11·5	7·8	25·5	15·9	6·7	5·5	9·1
Rainfall .	22·5	23	27·7	28·6	28	33	33	24

All are arable soils. The chalk pastures on the South Downs usually contain less than ·01 per cent. of available potash (*e.g.* the Patching soil), and they respond to potassic manures. It will be observed that ·015 per cent. is insufficient in East Kent where the rainfall is 23 inches, whilst ·010 per cent. suffices in West Sussex under 10 inches higher rainfall and generally better water-supply in the soil.

Phosphoric Acid.—Generally speaking, the largest amount of phosphoric acid is found in chalk soils, 0·2 to 0·25 per cent. being present; about 0·15 to 0·2 per cent. is found in good loams, sandy loams contain about 0·1 per cent. while poor clay pastures and poor sands contain still less. Little if any direct connection can be traced between the phosphoric acid and the productiveness; in general it tends to increase as

¹ *i.e.*, extracted by 1 per cent. citric acid.

the clay, fine silt, and silt increase—the poor clay pastures form a readily explained exception—but it does not appear to be closely associated with any one fraction like the potash. The amounts of “available” phosphoric acid vary enormously; Kentish hop gardens commonly contain from .05 to .18 per cent.; well-farmed arable soils contain some .015 per cent., while in poor worn-out pastures the quantity may sink as low as .002 per cent. In most cases these quantities are insufficient for some of the crops grown, especially where high quality or feeding value is aimed at; hop growers regularly, and, they maintain, profitably, apply phosphates to gardens already containing .05 per cent. of available phosphoric acid, whilst arable farmers use them for swedes when .015 per cent., or sometimes even more, is present. The exceptions to this rule are the light soils sufficiently provided with moisture and a forward climate; on these the need for phosphates appears to be less. But in all cases where much purchased food is fed on the land phosphates appear to be of advantage to the succeeding crop.

Rainfall does not appear to have so marked an effect in controlling the need for phosphates as it has for potassic manures. The explanation is to be found in the fact that phosphates are useful both in dry and in moist situations: they tend to promote root development, an obvious advantage in a dry soil where the plant will fail unless the roots strike into the deeper, moister layers; they also stimulate the vital processes going on at the end of the season and are thus valuable in wet, cold districts. But rainfall and water-supply are important factors in determining the choice of phosphates; basic slag proves less useful than superphosphates on dry soils, and at least as useful on moister soils or under higher rainfall. The amount of chalk in the soil is not the determining factor, but the moistness; if, as often happens, a chalky soil is dry, superphosphate will prove the more useful; where the soil is moister, basic slag is as good, and of course cheaper.

The Relative Advantages of Mechanical and Chemical Analysis.

The fundamental distinction between mechanical and chemical analysis is that the former deals with the whole of the soil, which it sorts out into fractions of varying sizes, while the latter only deals with the part that is readily dissolved by acids. Mechanical analysis therefore gives a complete picture while chemical analysis does not; it is in consequence eminently suited for the purpose of a soil survey, the chief object of which is to classify and describe the soils. Further, it enables the investigator to explain with some degree of completeness the ob-

served water relationships of the soil when sufficient is known about the water supply, and also to account for many of the peculiarities observed in cultivation. It enables him to say, as far as can be said on our present knowledge, whether any observed defects are due to defects in the soil or its situation, or to the system of management that has been adopted. As it cannot be interpreted fully without a knowledge of the amounts of organic matter and calcium carbonate present these two quantities must be determined in every sample.

We have seen that there is a close correlation between the potash, the alumina and the clay. For purposes of a survey it seems superfluous to determine these two bases in every sample taken. The iron oxide shows a general but by no means so close a correlation with the others; but no connection could be traced between iron oxide and fertility in the soils examined by the author, the iron oxide being almost always less than 5 per cent. in amount. Nor did it appear that the ratio of lime to magnesia in these soils was significant. The nitrogen is closely correlated with the organic matter, *i.e.*, the loss on ignition. The total phosphoric acid does not show very great variations in the different soils, but the available phosphoric acid, like the available potash, varies greatly with the management of the soil. Thus the figures obtained by chemical analysis, apart from the loss on ignition and the calcium carbonate, fall into two groups: the nitrogen, potash and alumina, which are so closely correlated with quantities already determined in the mechanical analysis that their separate determination is almost superfluous; and the iron oxide, magnesia, lime, etc., which do not give sufficiently useful indications to be worth determining in every case. Since chemical analysis fails to characterise the soil with sufficient completeness Hall and Russell recommend that for purposes of a survey a large number of soils should be submitted to mechanical analysis, including the determination of organic matter and of calcium carbonate, and then a carefully chosen representative set should be analysed chemically. They agree with Whitney that mechanical analysis should form the basis of the survey, because it alone takes account of those physical functions—the regulation of the water supply and therefore of the temperature, of the air supply, ease of cultivation, etc.—that play so large a part in determining the value of a soil.

But, on the other hand, mechanical analysis is restricted in its application and breaks down altogether on chalk soils, acid humus or peat soils, and neutral humus soils, while it gives useful indications only on the mineral soils, *i.e.*, sands, loams and clays. Agricultural soils belong

so largely to this group that the method is really applicable in by far the great majority of cases.

Among the mineral soils there are indications of chemical groups cutting across the mechanical classification, but it is not easy to trace them because so much of every soil is silica. When, however, the clays are separated out and subjected to hydrofluoric acid treatment or fusion with alkalis and then analysed, they are seen to fall into two or more types as shown in Table XXV. (p. 61). Further evidence of dissimilarity among the clays is obtained by a study of the results of the acid extraction of the soil; in general the alumina is about one-third of the clay in amount and the potash is roughly one-tenth of the alumina; in exceptional cases, however, and usually where the abnormal clay occurs, very different relationships obtain. It will be necessary to accumulate many more analyses of clays before we shall have the material for chemical classifications.

APPENDIX.

THE METHODS OF SOIL ANALYSIS.

How to Take the Sample of Soil.—Owing to the variation in composition of the soil at different depths it is particularly necessary that the sample should always be taken to the same depth and with a tool making a clean vertical cut. Samples taken with a spade are of very doubtful value and do not justify any lengthy examination. A simple tool is shown in Fig. 14 and consists of a steel tube 2 inches in diameter and 12 inches long, with a $\frac{1}{4}$ inch slit cut along its length and all its edges sharpened. The tube is fixed on to a vertical steel rod, bent at the end to a ring 2 inches in diameter, through which a stout wooden handle passes. A mark is made 9 inches from the bottom so that the boring process can be stopped as soon as this depth is reached. On withdrawing the tool the core of soil is removed by a pointed iron rod. Five or six samples should be taken along lines crossing the field so as to get as representative a sample as possible; the whole bulk must then be sent to the laboratory. Samples should not be taken from freshly ploughed or recently manured land.

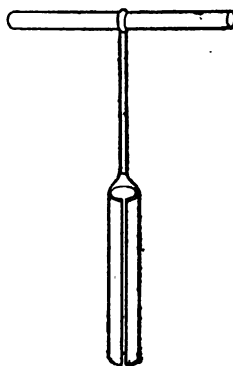


FIG. 14.—Tool for taking Soil Samples.

In very stony soils it is easier to use a 2 inch auger, but this does not in our experience yield as satisfactory a sample as the tool shown here.

For precautions to be taken in drawing the sample see Russell, *Journ. Bd. of Agric.*, 1916, 23, 342, and for a discussion of the magnitude of the experimental error see Robinson, *Journ. Agric. Sci.*, 1915, 7, 144-53, and Leather, *Trans. Chem. Soc.*, 1902, 81, 883-86.

The Analysis.—On arrival at the laboratory the soil is spread out to dry, and is then pounded up with a wooden pestle and passed through a 3 mm. sieve. The stones that do not pass through, and the fine earth that does, are separately weighed, and the proportion of stones to 100 of fine earth is calculated. Subsequent analytical operations are made on the fine earth.

Moisture.—Four or five grams of the soil are dried at 100° C. till there is no further change in weight.

Organic Matter.—No accurate method of estimation has yet been devised. It is usual to ignite at low redness the sample dried as above. The loss in-

cludes organic matter, water not given off at 100° C., and carbon dioxide from the carbonates; allowance may be made for the latter, but not for the combined water. The carbon is sometimes determined either by the ordinary combustion or by some wet combustion method. Methods have also been described for determining "humus," but they have not come into general use. For ordinary purposes it is sufficient to determine the loss on ignition, and to call this organic matter.

Total Nitrogen.—Kjeldahl's method is almost invariably adopted. About 25 to 30 grams of soil are ground up finely in an iron mortar; 10 to 15 grams are then heated in a Kjeldahl flask with 20 to 25 c.c. of strong sulphuric acid for three-quarters of an hour; then 5 grams of potassium sulphate are added, and shortly after a crystal of copper sulphate. The heating is continued till all the black colour has gone. Then cool and dilute the mixture, transfer the fluid part to a distillation flask, but leave as much as possible of the sand behind, wash well to remove all the adhering liquid. Add saturated soda solution till the liquid is strongly alkaline, distil, and collect the ammonia in standard acid.

Nitrates must be determined in a sample taken direct from the field and dried without any delay at 55° C.; 200 to 500 grams of the dried soil are pressed firmly on to a Buchner funnel fitted to a filter flask, and distilled water is poured on. The first 300 c.c. of water passing contains practically all the nitrates, but it is safer to wash more fully. The solution is concentrated in presence of a trace of magnesia, just acidified with acetic acid, and reduced by a zinc-copper couple at 25° C. for thirty hours. The ammonia formed is estimated in the usual way.

Ammonia is estimated by distilling with magnesia and water under reduced pressure (241). For other methods, see Potter and Snyder, *Iowa Research Bull.* No. 17, 1914.

Carbonates are determined by treating a weighed quantity of the soil with dilute sulphuric acid and estimating the carbon dioxide evolved. Large quantities can be determined rapidly and with sufficient accuracy by the Scheibler apparatus, but much better results are obtained by absorbing the CO₂ in potash and determining the amount by titration. The details have been worked out by Amos.¹ Great care is needed when only small quantities are present; the treatment with acid must be effected at as low a temperature as possible to avoid decomposition of organic matter. A simpler method is described by Hutchinson.² Small quantities can also be determined by Hall and Russell's method.³

Lime Requirement.—Hutchinson and McLennan's method for the determination of the lime requirements of the soil is as follows: 10 to 20 grams of the soil are placed in a bottle of 500 to 1000 c.c. capacity together with 200 to 300 c.c. of approximately N/50 solution of calcium carbonate, and the air in the bottle is displaced by a current of carbon dioxide in order to insure against

¹ *Journ. Agric. Sci.*, 1905, i., 322-326.

² *Ibid.*, 1914, 6, 323.

³ *Journ. Chem. Soc.*, 1902, lxxxii., 81-85.

possible precipitation of calcium carbonate during the period of the determination. The bottle is then placed in a shaking machine for three hours, after which time the solution is filtered and an aliquot portion of the filtrate is titrated against N/10 acid, using methyl orange as indicator. The difference in strength of this filtrate and that of the initial solution represents the amount of calcium carbonate absorbed, each cubic centimetre of N/10 acid being equal to 5 mgs. calcium carbonate.

Mineral Substances.—Complete analysis of a soil after the silicates have been decomposed and the silica volatilised by treatment with hydrofluoric acid is only rarely attempted. The British method, adopted by the Agricultural Education Association, is thus described by Hall: "20 grams of the powdered soil are placed in a flask of Jena glass, covered with about 70 c.c. of strong hydrochloric acid, and boiled for a short time over a naked flame to bring it to constant strength. The acid will now contain about 20.2 per cent. of pure hydrogen chloride. The flask is loosely stoppered, placed on the water bath, and the contents allowed to digest for about forty-eight hours. The solution is then cooled, diluted, and filtered. The washed residue is dried and weighed as the material insoluble in acids. The solution is made up to 250 c.c., and aliquot portions are taken for the various determinations. The analytical operations are carried out in the usual manner, but special care must be taken to free the solution from silica or organic matter" (*The Soil*). As a rule only potash and phosphoric acid are determined, but where other bases are wanted they are estimated in the usual way.

Hissink¹ has discussed the value of strong HCl as a solvent in soil analysis.

Potash.—50 to 100 c.c. of the solution are evaporated to dryness after addition of 0.5 gram of pure CaCO₃ if the original soil did not effervesce when HCl was added. Two courses are then open:—

(a) The residue is *gently* ignited over a Bunsen burner till it is completely charred, it is then taken up with water several times till all the potassium chloride is dissolved (Neubauer's method² (212)). To the clear filtrate 5 c.c. of platinum chloride (containing .005 gram Pt per c.c.) are added and the mixture slowly concentrated on the water bath to a very small bulk. The potassium platino-chloride is filtered off in a Gooch crucible, washed with 80 per cent. alcohol, dried and weighed.

or (b) Add 10 c.c. of 5 per cent. baryta solution, evaporate to dryness, ignite and take up with water as in (a), add 2.5 c.c. perchloric acid (sp. gr. 1.12), concentrate till dense fumes are given off, allow to cool, add 20 c.c. 95 per cent. alcohol and stir. Decant off the clear alcohol, add 40 c.c. alcohol containing 0.2 per cent. perchloric acid, transfer to a tared filter paper, wash with 50 to 100 c.c. of 95 per cent. alcohol till the runnings are no longer acid, dry at 100° and weigh as KClO₄.

¹ *Internat. Mitt. Bodenkunde*, 1915, 5, 1-24. For determination of iron see Morison and Doyné, *Journ. Agric. Sci.*, 1914, 6, 97.

² The older method due to Tatlock is still sometimes used. It is described by Dyer (91).

Phosphoric Acid.—The charred residue from which the potassium chloride has been removed is now digested for half an hour on a sand bath with 50 c.c. of 10 per cent. H_2SO_4 and filtered; the filtrate is treated with 25 c.c. conc. NH_4NO_3 solution and warmed to 55°C .; 25 c.c. ammonium molybdate, previously warmed to 55°C ., is added and the whole allowed to stand for two hours and filtered. Wash with 2 per cent. NaNO_3 till the washings are neutral, transfer the precipitate and filter paper to the beaker used for the precipitation, and add a known volume of standard alkali so that the precipitate completely dissolves. Measure the excess by titration, using phenolphthalein as indicator. 1 c.c. of $\frac{\text{N}}{10}$ alkali = .0003004 gms. P_2O_5 .¹

Available Potash and Phosphoric Acid.—Dyer's directions are as follows: 200 grams dry soil are placed in a Winchester quart bottle with 2 litres of distilled water in which are dissolved 20 grams of pure citric acid. The soil is allowed to remain in contact with the solution at ordinary temperatures for seven days, and is shaken a number of times each day. The solution is then filtered, and 500 c.c. taken for each determination; this is evaporated to dryness, and gently incinerated at a low temperature. The residue is dissolved in hydrochloric acid, evaporated to dryness, redissolved, and filtered; in the filtrate the potash is determined. For the phosphoric acid determination the last solution is made, as before, with nitric acid.

Mechanical Analysis.—The object is to obtain information about the size of the ultimate particles of which the soil is composed; the compound particles are therefore broken down by treatment with hydrochloric acid, and after with ammonia. Direct measurement of the ultimate particles is found to be impracticable; indirect methods have to be adopted, depending on the time taken to fall through a column of water of given height. When a body falls through a vacuum the time taken is independent of its size or weight, but if air or any other fluid is present the case becomes more complicated and the proper mathematical relationship has been found by Stokes to be $v = \frac{2ga^2(\sigma - \rho)}{9\eta}$, where v = velocity of the falling particle, σ its density, a its radius (assuming it to be a sphere), and ρ the density and η the coefficient of viscosity of the medium (*Trans. Camb. Phil. Soc.*, 1851, vol. ix., p. 8).

The numerical values at 16°C . are: $g = 981$, $\sigma = 12.5$, $\rho = 1$, $\eta = .011$, and the equation therefore reduces to $v = a^2 \times 29430$, or $a = \frac{\sqrt{v}}{171}$ cm.

The calculated and observed values are found to agree fairly well, differ-

¹ This volumetric method was originally described in *Bull.* 46 (revised) *United States Division of Chemistry* (Washington, 1898). A careful examination has been made by Prescott and the conditions laid down under which it gives satisfactory results (*Journ. Agric. Sci.*, 1914, 6, 111-120). Prescott's modification is given here. The method is applicable for the "available" P_2O_5 , but in this case the residue from the citric acid extraction has first to be heated two hours at 120 to 160° to render the silica insoluble. The older method is described by Dyer (91).

ences being due to the fact that the particles are not true spheres, and to the existence of convection currents produced by changes of temperature. The effect of variations in temperature is discussed by Robinson, in *Journ. Agric. Sci.*, 1914, 7.

The method adopted by the Agricultural Education Association (see *Journ. Agric. Sci.*, 1906, i., 470) is as follows:—

(1) Ten grams of the air-dry earth, which has passed a 3 mm. sieve, are weighed out into a porcelain basin and worked up with 100 c.c. of N/5 hydrochloric acid, the acid being renewed if much calcium carbonate is present. After standing in contact with the acid for one hour, the whole is thrown upon a dried, tared filter and washed until free of acid. The filter and its contents are dried and weighed. The loss represents hygroscopic moisture and material dissolved by the acid.

(2) The soil is now washed off the filter with dilute ammoniacal water on to a small sieve of 100 meshes to the linear inch, the portion passing through being collected in a beaker marked at 10, 8.5, and 7.5 cm. respectively from the bottom. The portion which remains upon the sieve is dried and weighed. It is then divided into "fine gravel" and "coarse sand" by means of a sieve with round holes of 1 mm. diameter. The portion which does not pass this sieve is the "fine gravel". This should be dried and weighed. The difference gives the "coarse sand". If required, both these fractions can also be weighed after ignition.

(3) The portion which passed the sieve of 100 meshes per linear inch is well worked up with a rubber pestle (made by inserting a glass rod as handle into an inverted rubber stopper), and the beaker filled up to the 8.5 cm. mark and allowed to stand twenty-four hours. The ammoniacal liquid which contains the "clay" is then decanted off into a Winchester quart. This operation is repeated as long as any matter remains in suspension for twenty-four hours. The liquid containing the "clay" is either evaporated in bulk or measured, and, after being well shaken, an aliquot portion taken and evaporated. In either case the dried residue consists of "clay" and "soluble humus". After ignition the residue gives the "clay," and the loss on ignition the "soluble humus".

Here minimum value of $v = \frac{1}{10,000}$ cm. per second, and the minimum diameter of the particles works out to .0013 mm.

(4) The sediment from which the "clay" has been removed is worked up as before in the beaker, which is filled to the 10 cm. mark and allowed to stand for 100 seconds. The operation is repeated till the "fine sand" settled in 100 seconds is clean, when it is collected, dried and weighed.

Here minimum value of $v = \frac{1}{10}$ per second; the calculated minimum diameter = .037 mm.

(5) The turbid liquid poured off from the "fine sand" is collected in a Winchester quart, or other suitable vessel, allowed to settle, and the clear liquid

syphoned or decanted off. The sediment is then washed into the marked beaker and made up to the 7.5 cm. mark. After stirring, it is allowed to settle for twelve and a half minutes, and the liquid decanted off. The operation is then repeated as before till all the sediment sinks in twelve and a half minutes leaving the liquid quite clear. The sediment obtained is the "silt," which is dried and weighed as usual. The liquid contains the "fine silt," which, when it has settled down, can be separated by decanting off the clear liquid, and dried and weighed.

For silt minimum value of $v = \frac{1}{100}$ cm. per second, minimum diameter of particles = .012 mm. For fine silt the diameter obviously lies between this value and the one found for clay.

When it is desired to compare the results with American data the fine silt can be divided into two groups: settling for two hours five minutes brings out a group 0.01 to 0.005 mm. diameter, while the rest lies between 0.005 and 0.002 mm. diameter. By simple arithmetic the fractions can then be made to correspond fairly closely with those adopted in the United States.

(6) Determinations are made of the "moisture" and "loss on ignition" of another 10 grams of the air-dry earth. The sum of the weights of the fractions after ignition + loss on ignition + moisture + material dissolved in weak acid should approximate to 10 grams.

(7) It is advisable to make a control determination of the "fine gravel" in a portion of fifty grams of the air-dry earth. The soil should be treated with acid, as in 1, and after that is removed by decantation may be at once treated with dilute ammonia and washed on the sieve with 1 mm. round holes. The "fine gravel" left on the sieve is then dried and weighed. For the effect of the treatment with acid and alkali on the results see p. 102.

The American method is somewhat different. The breaking down of the aggregates is brought about by physical means—e.g. violent shaking—and sedimentation is sometimes hastened by a centrifugal apparatus. Hilgard does not adopt a sedimentation method but proceeds in the converse manner; he collects and weighs the particles carried off by successive streams of water of varying velocity. Full details are given in *Bull. 24, Bureau of Soils, 1904*, and in Wiley's *Agricultural Analysis*, vol. i., where the continental methods are also described. An entirely new method has been described by Oden (2196).

A SELECTED BIBLIOGRAPHY.¹

	Page of text on which reference is made.
1. Abbe, Cleveland, "Relation between Climates and Crops," <i>Weather Bureau Bull.</i> 36, U.S. Dept. of Agric.	31
2. Adeney, W. E., Appendix VI. to <i>Fifth Report of Royal Commission on Sewage Disposal</i> , 1908, pp. 13-20	118, 121, 135
3. Alway, F. J., "The Loess Soils of the Nebraska Portion of the Transition Region," <i>Soil Science</i> , 1916, 1, 299-316, 405-36	141
4. Amos, A., "The Effect of Fungicides upon the Assimilation of Carbon Dioxide by Green Leaves," <i>Journ. Agric. Sci.</i> , 1907, ii., 257-66	50
5. Armstrong, H. E. and E. F., (a) "The Origin of Osmotic Effects".—III., "The Function of Hormones in Stimulating Enzymic Change in Relation to Narcosis and the Phenomena of Degenerative and Regenerative Change in Living Structures," <i>Proc. Roy. Soc.</i> , 1910, lxxxii. B, 588-602	52
(b) "The Function of Hormones in Regulating Metabolism," <i>Annals of Botany</i> , 1911, xxv., 507-19.	
6. Arnd, Th. (of Bremen), <i>Landw. Jahrbücher</i> , 1914, xlvii., 371-442	133
7. Ashby, S. F., (a) "The Comparative Nitrifying Power of Soils," <i>Trans. Chem. Soc.</i> , 1904, lxxxv., 1158-70	116, 159
(b) "Some Observations on Nitrification," <i>Journ. Agric. Soc.</i> , 1907, ii., 52-67	116
(c) "Some Observations on the Assimilation of Atmospheric Nitrogen by a Free-living Soil Organism— <i>Azotobacter Chroococcum</i> of Beijerinck," <i>ibid.</i> , 1907, ii., 35-51	128
8. Ashby, S. F., "A Contribution to the Study of Factors Affecting the Quality and Composition of Potatoes," <i>ibid.</i> , 1905, i., 347-57	195, 206
9. Baumann, A., "Untersuchungen über die Humussäuren," I., <i>Mitt. d. k. bayr. Moorkulturanstalt</i> , 1909, Heft 3, 53-123	78, 93
10. Baumann, A., and Gully, E., "Untersuchungen über die Humussäuren," II., <i>ibid.</i> , Heft 4	78, 93
11. Beijerinck, Martinus W., "Die Bacterien der Papilionaceen-Knollchen," <i>Botan. Ztg.</i> , 1888, xlv., 725-35, 741-50, 757-71, etc.	127, 128
12. Beijerinck, Martinus W., "Künstliche Infection von <i>Vicia Faba</i> mit <i>Bacillus radicola</i> , Ernährungsbedingungen dieser Bacterie," <i>ibid.</i> , 1890, xlviii., 837-43	128
13. Beijerinck, Martinus W., "Over ophooping van atmosferische stikstof in culturen van <i>Bacillus radicola</i> ," <i>Versl. en Mededeel. d. Akad. von Wetensch. Amsterdam. Afd. Naturkunde</i> , 1891, viii. (3), 460-75	129
14. Beijerinck, Martinus W., "Ueber oligonitrophile Mikroben," <i>Centr. Bakt.[Par.]</i> , Abt. II., 1901, vii., 561-82	123
15. Beijerinck, Martinus W., and van Delden, A., "Ueber die Assimilation des freien Stickstoffs durch Bakterien," <i>ibid.</i> , 1902, ix., 3-43	123
16. Beijerinck, Martinus W., "Fixation of Free Atmospheric Nitrogen by <i>Azobacter</i> in Pure Culture, Distribution of this Bacterium," <i>Proc. k. Akad. Wetensch. Amsterdam.</i> , 1908, xi., 67-74	124
17. Beijerinck, Martinus W., "Ueber Chinonbildung durch <i>Streptothrix chromogena</i> und Lebensweise dieses Mikroben," <i>Centr. Bakt. Par.</i> , Abt. II., 1900, vi., 2-12	80
18. Beijerinck, Martinus W., and Minkman, D. C. J., "Bildung und Verbrauch von Stickoxydul durch Bakterien," <i>ibid.</i> , 1910, xxv., 30-63	131
19. Bemellen, Jakob M. van, "Die Absorptionsverbindungen und das Absorptionsvermögen des Ackererde," <i>Landw. Versuchs-Stat.</i> , 1888, xxxv., 67-136	71, 78

¹Most of the papers and books quoted here can be seen in the Rothamsted Expt. Station Library, or in the Patent Office Library, London, and some can be borrowed from the Library of the Board of Agriculture.

20. Bemellen, Jakob M. van, (a) "Das Absorptionsvermögen der Ackererde," *ibid.*, 1878, 23, 265-304 88
- (b) "Die Zusammensetzung der Ackererdenach Anleitung der in den vorigen Abhandlungen mitgetheilten Analysen von gewöhnlichen und vulkanischen Thonböden," *ibid.*, 1890, xxxvii., 347-73 63
21. Bemellen, Jakob M. van, "Die Absorption von Stoffen aus Lösungen," *Zeit. Anorg. Chem.*, 1900, xxiii., 321-72 71
22. Bemellen, Jakob M. van, "Beiträge zur Kenntnis der Verwitterungsprodukte der Silikate," etc., *ibid.*, 1904, xlii., 265-314 60, 61
23. Bemellen, Jakob M. van, "Die verschiedenen Arten der Verwitterung der Silikatgesteine in der Erdrinde," *ibid.*, 1910, lxvi., 322-57.
24. Bemellen, Jakob M. van, "Ueber das Vorkommen, die Zusammensetzung und die Bildung von Eisenanhäufungen in und unter Mooren," *ibid.*, 1899, xxii., 313-79 96
25. Bemellen, Jakob M. van, "Die absorption von Wasser durch Ton," *ibid.*, 1904, xlii., 314-24 63
- (Van Bemmelen's papers are collected by Wo. Ostwald and published by Steinkopff of Dresden in "Die Absorption," pp. 548; a Gedenkbuch is also published by the same firm.)
26. Berthelot, Marcellin, "Fixation directe de l'azote atmosphérique libre par certains terrains argileux," *Compt. Rend.*, 1885, ci., 775-84 17, 122
27. Berthelot, Marcellin, "Sur le dosage du carbone organique contenu dans les sols qui fixent l'azote libre," *ibid.*, 1886, cii., 951-54 17
28. Berthelot, Marcellin, *ibid.*, 1888, cvi., 570 18
29. Berthelot, Marcellin, "Recherches nouvelles sur la fixation de l'Azote, par la terre végétale et les plantes, et sur l'influence de l'électricité sur ce phénomène," *Ann. Chim. Phys.*, 1890, Series 6, xix., 434-92 18
30. Berthelot, Marcellin, and André, G., "Faits pour servir à l'histoire des principes azotés renfermés dans la terre végétale," *Compt. Rend.*, 1891, cxii., 189-94 78
31. Berthelot, Marcellin, and André, G., "Recherches sur les substances humiques," *Ann. Chim. Phys.*, 1892, Series 6, xxv., 364-422 78
32. Berthelot, Marcellin, "Recherches sur les composés alcalins insolubles formés par les substances humique d'origine organique et leur rôle en physiologie végétale et en agriculture," *Compt. Rend.*, 1905, cxli., 433-45 78
33. Berthelot, Marcellin, "Nouvelles observations sur les composés azotés volatils émis par la terre végétale," *Ann. Chim. Phys.*, 1892, Series 6, xxv., 330-34.
34. Bertholon, Abbé, *De l'électricité des végétaux*, Paris, 1783 53
35. Bertrand, Gabriel, "Les engrais complémentaires," *Internat. Congress of Applied Chem.*, Berlin, 1903, Bericht iii., 839-40 48
36. Berzelius, J. J., *Lehrb. d. Chemie, übers. v. F. Wöhler*, 3 Aufl., 1839, Bd. 8 8
37. Bialoblocki, J., "Ueber den Einfluss der Bodenwärme auf die Entwicklung einiger Culturpflanzen," *Landw. Versuchs-Stat.*, 1870, xlii., 424-72 21
38. Bierema, S., "Die assimilation von Ammon-, Nitrat- und Amidstickstoff durch Mikroorganismen," *Centr. Bakt. Par.*, Abt. II., 1909, xxiii., 672-726 133
39. Birner and Lucanus, Benno, "Wasserculturversuche mit Hafer," *Landw. Versuchs-Stat.*, 1866, viii., 128-77.
40. Blackman, F. F., "Optima and Limiting Factors," *Annals of Botany*, 1905, xix., 281-95 23
41. Boerhaave, H., *A New Method of Chemistry*, trans. by P. Shaw and E. Chambers, 1727 3
42. Bottomley, W. B., "Some Effects of Bacteriotoxins on the Germination and Growth of Plants," *Brit. Ass. Repts.*, 1911 153
43. Bouilhac, R., "Sur la fixation de l'Azote atmosphérique par l'association des algues et des bactéries," *Compt. Rend.*, 1896, cxxiii., 828-30 125
44. Bouilhac, R., and Giustiniani, "Sur une culture de sarrasin en présence d'un mélange d'algues et de bactéries," *ibid.*, 1903, cxxxvii., 1274-76 125

- Page of text
on which
reference
is made.
45. Boussingault, J. B., "Recherches chimiques sur la végétation entreprises dans le but d'examiner si les plantes prennent de l'azote à l'atmosphère," *Ann. Chim. Phys.* (II.), 1838, lxxvii., 5-54; 1838, lxxix., 353-67; 1856 (iii.), 46 . 14, 119
 46. Boussingault, J. B., "De la discussion de la valeur relative des assolements par les résultats de l'analyse élémentaire," *ibid.* (III.), 1841, i., 208-46 . 119
 47. Boussingault, J. B., *Economie Rurale considérée dans ses Rapports avec la chimie, la Physique, et la Météorologie*, 2nd ed., 1851, Paris (contains a summary of his work up to that time) . 9
 48. (a) Boussingault, J. B., and Léwy, "Sur la composition de l'air confiné dans la terre végétale," *Ann. Chim. Phys.*, 1853, xxxvii., 5-50 . 142
 - (b) Boussingault, J. B., *Compt. Rend.*, 1873, lxxvi., 22-29. (Boussingault's complete papers were collected in 8 volumes in 1891) . 109
 49. Bouyoucos, G. J., (a) *Michigan Tech. Bull.* No. 17, 1914 . 144
 - (b) "Effect of Temperature on Some of the Most Important Physical Processes in Soils," *ibid.*, No. 22, 1915 . 144
 50. Boyle, Robert, *The Sceptical Chymist*, Part II., 1661 . 2
 51. Breazeale, J. F., (a) "Effect of the Concentration of the Nutrient Solution upon Wheat Cultures," *Science*, 1905, 146-49 . 105
 - (b) "The Relation of Sodium to Potassium in Soil and Solution Cultures," *Journ. Amer. Chem. Soc.*, 1906, xxviii., 1013-25 . 45
 52. Bredemann, G., "Bacillus Amylobacter A. M. et Bredemann," *Centr. Bakt. Par.*, Abt. II., 1909, xxiii., 385-568 . 125
 53. Bretschneider, *Ber. landw. Ver.-Stat. zu Ida Marien hutte*, 1861, iv., 108 (*Abs. in Jahresb. Agric. Chem.*, 1862, 4, 123) . 15
 54. Brechley, Winifred E., (a) "The Influence of Copper Sulphate and Manganese Sulphate upon the Growth of Barley," *Annals of Botany*, 1910, xxiv., 571-83 . 47, 50
 - (b) "On the Action of Certain Compounds of Zinc, Arsenic and Boron on the Growth of Plants," *ibid.*, 1914, 28, 283-301 . 49, 50
 - (c) "The Effect of the Concentration of the Nutrient Solution on the Growth of Barley and Wheat in Water Cultures," *ibid.*, 1916, 30, 77-90 . 51, 105
 - (d) "Inorganic Plant Poisons and Stimulants" (*Camb. Univ. Press*, 1914). (A review of the extensive literature of the subject) . 147
 55. (a) Briggs, L. J., "The Mechanics of Soil Moisture," *U.S. Dept. of Agriculture Bureau of Soils, Bull.* No. 10, 1897 . 138
 - (b) Briggs, L. J., and Shantz, H. L., "A Wax Seal Method for Determining the Lower Limit of Available Soil Moisture," *Bot. Gaz.*, 1911, li., 210-19 . 140
 - " The Wilting Coefficient for Different Plants and Its Indirect Determination," *U.S. Dept. of Agriculture Bureau of Plant Industry, Bull.* No. 230, 1912 . 28, 140
 - (c) "Relative Water Requirement of Plants," *J. Agric. Research*, 1914, iii., 1-64 . 141
 - (d) "Hourly Transpiration Rate on Clear Days as Determined by Cyclic Environmental Factors," *ibid.*, 1916, v., 583-650 . 141
 56. Broounoff, P., "Works on Agricultural Meteorology," Petrograd, 1915. (Dr. Azzi has translated this in *Bull. of Foreign Ag. Intelligence*, Ottawa, vol. 6, Nos. 2-5) . 32
 57. Brown, Adrian J., "The Selective Permeability of the Coverings of the Seeds of *Hordeum Vulgare*," *Proc. Roy. Soc.*, 1909, lxxxi. B, 82-93 . 52
 58. Brown, Horace T., and Morris, G. H., "The Germination of Some of the Gramineae," *Trans. Chem. Soc.*, 1890, lvii., 458-528.
 59. Brown, Horace T., and Escombe, F., (a) "The Diffusion of Gases and Liquids in Relation to the Assimilation of Carbon and Translocation in Plants," *Phil. Trans.*, 1900, cxciii., 223-92. (b) "The Influence of Varying Amounts of Carbon Dioxide in the Air on the Photosynthetic Process of Leaves and on the Mode of Growth of Plants," *Proc. Roy. Soc.*, 1902, lxx., 397-413 . 22, 23
 60. Brown, Horace T., and Escombe, F., "Researches on Some of the Physiological Processes of Green Leaves with Special Reference to the Interchange of Energy between the Leaf and Its Surroundings," *ibid.*, 1905, lxxvi. B, 29-111 . 25
 61. Brown, Horace T., and Escombe, F., "On a New Method for the Determination of Atmospheric Carbon Dioxide Based on the Rate of its Absorption by a Free Surface of a Solution of Caustic Alkali," *ibid.*, 112-17 . 32

	Page of text on which reference is made.
"On the Variations in the Amount of Carbon Dioxide in the Air of Kew during the Years 1898-1901," <i>ibid.</i> , 118-21	32
62. Brown, Horace T., "On the Culture of the Excised Embryo of Barley on Nutrient Solutions Containing Nitrogen in Different Forms," <i>Trans. Guinness Lab.</i> , 1906, i., Part II., 288-99	32
63. (a) Brown, Percy E., "Bacteriological Studies of Field Soils," <i>Centr. Bakt. Par.</i> , Abt. II., 1912, xxxv., 234-72 (see also <i>Journ. Ag. Research</i> , 1916, 5, 855-69)	159, 160
(b) Brown, Percy E., and Kellogg, E. H., "Sulfofication in Soils," <i>Iowa Research Bull.</i> 18, 1914	133
(c) Brown, Percy E., and Johnson, H. W., "Studies in Sulfofication," <i>Soil Science</i> , 1916, 1, 339-62	133
(d) Brown, Percy E., and Smith, R. E., "Bacterial Activities in Frozen Soils," <i>Iowa Research Bull.</i> 4, 1912	168
64. Brunchorst, J., "Ueber die Knöllchen an den Leguminosenwurzeln," <i>Ber. d. Deutsch. Bot. Ges.</i> , 1885, iii., 241-57	17
64a. Buddin, Walter, "Partial Sterilisation of Soil by Volatile and Non-volatile Antiseptics," <i>Journ. Agric. Sci.</i> , 1914, vi.	179
65. Cailletet, L., and Lefèvre, Jules, "Sur l'origine du Carbone Assimilé par les plantes," <i>Compt. Rend.</i> , 1911, clii., 1215-17	10
66. Cameron, Frank K., and Breazeale, J. F., "The Organic Matter in Soils and Subsoils," <i>Journ. Amer. Chem. Soc.</i> , 1904, xxvi., 29-45	77
67. (a) Cameron, Frank K., and Patten, H. E., "The Distribution of Solute between Water and Soil," <i>Journ. Phys. Chem.</i> , 1907, xi., 581-93	89
(b) Cameron, Frank K., "The Soil Solution, or the Nutrient Medium for Plant Growth," <i>Chemical Publishing Co.</i> , Easton, Pa.	68, 105, 152
(c) Cameron, Frank K., and Bell, J. M., "The Mineral Constituents of the Soil Solution," <i>U.S. Dept. of Agriculture Bureau of Soils, Bull.</i> No. 30	68, 105
(d) "The Action of Water and Aqueous Solutions upon Soil Phosphates," <i>ibid.</i> , <i>Bull.</i> No. 41, 1907	68, 105
68. Chick, Harlette, "A Study of the Process of Nitrification with Reference to the Purification of Sewage," <i>Proc. Roy. Soc.</i> , 1906, lxxvii., 241-66	118
69. (a) Christensen, Harald R., and Larsen, O. H., "Untersuchungen über Methoden zur Bestimmung des Kalkbedürfnisses des Bodens," <i>Centr. Bakt. Par.</i> , 1911, 29, 347-80	149
(b) Christensen, Harald R., "Studien über den Einfluss der Bodenbeschaffenheit auf das Bakterienleben und der Stoffumsatz im Erdboden," <i>ibid.</i> , 1915, 43, 1-166.	
70. Coleman, Leslie C., "Untersuchungen über Nitrifikation," <i>Centr. Bakt. Par.</i> , Abt. II., 1908, xx., 401-20	117, 118
71. Conn, H. J., "Bacteria in Frozen Soil," <i>Centr. Bakt. Par.</i> , Abt. II., 1910, xxviii., 422-34; 1914, 42, 510-19	168
72. Crowther, Charles, and Ruston, Arthur G., "The Nature, Distribution and Effects upon Vegetation of Atmospheric Impurities in and near an Industrial Town," <i>Journ. Agric. Sci.</i> , 1911, iv., 25-55; <i>ibid.</i> , 1914, 6	49, 163
73. Crump, W. B., "Water Content and Wilting Point," <i>Journ. Ecology</i> , 1913, 1, 96-100	140
"The Coefficient of Humidity, a new Method of Expressing the Soil Moisture," <i>New Phytologist</i> , 1913, 12, 125-47.	
73a. Cunningham, A., "Studies on Soil Protozoa," <i>Journ. Ag. Sci.</i> , 1915, 7, 49-74	177
74. Daikuhara, G., and Imaseki, T., "On the Behaviour of Nitrate in Paddy Soil," <i>Bull. Imp. Central Agric. Expt. Stat. Japan</i> , 1907, i., No. 2, 7-36	132
74a. Daikuhara, G., "Ueber saure Mineralböden," <i>Bull. Imp. Central Agric. Expt. Sta.</i> , Tokio, 1914, 2, 1-40	94
75. Darwin, C., <i>Earthworms and Vegetable Mould</i> , London, 1881, <i>Trans. Geolog. Soc.</i> , 1837, v., 505	76
76. Darwin, Erasmus, <i>Phytologia, or the Philosophy of Agriculture and Gardening</i> , 1800	5

Page of text
on which
reference
is made.

77. Darwin, Francis, "On the Growth of the Fruit of Cucurbita," *Annals of Botany*, 1893, xxviii., 459-87 27
78. Daubeny, C. G. B., "On the Rotation of Crops and on the Quantity of Inorganic Matters Abstracted from the Soil by Various Plants under Different Circumstances," *Phil. Trans.*, 1845, 179-253 145, 150
79. Davy, Humphry, *Elements of Agricultural Chemistry*, London, 1813 7
80. Dawson, Maria, "'Nitragin' and the Nodule of Leguminous Plants," *Phil. Trans.*, 1900, cxcii. B, 1-28 129
 "Further Observations on the Nature and Functions of the Nodules of Leguminous Plants," *ibid.*, cxciii. B, 51-67 129
81. (a) Dehérain and Maquenne, "Sur la réduction des nitrates dans la terre arable," *Compt. Rend.*, 1882, xcv., 691-93, 732-34, 854-56 132
 (b) Dehérain, "Traité de chimie agricole" 181
82. Delage, A., and Lagatu, H., "Constitution de la Terre arable," *Trav. École. Nat. d'Agric.*, Montpellier, 1904 59
 "Sur les résultats obtenus par l'observation des terres arable en plaques minces," *ibid.*, 1905 59
 "La Terre de Ségala de Druelle et sa Roche d'origine," *ibid.*, 1905. "Étude analytique des Terres Arables," *ibid.*, 1907 59
83. Demoussy, E., "Sur la végétation dans les atmosphères riches en acide carbonique," *Compt. Rend.*, 1903, cxxxvi., 325-28; 1904, cxxxix., 883-85 22
 "Influence sur la végétation de l'acide carbonique émis par le sol," *ibid.*, 1904, cxxxviii., 291-93 22
84. Detmer, W., "Die natürlichen Humuskörper des Bodens und ihre landwirtschaftliche Bedeutung," *Landw. Versuchs-Stat.*, 1871, xiv., 248-300 70
85. Dokoutchoew, W., *Tchernozyème de la Russie d'Europe*, St. Petersburg, 1883 184, 189
- 85a. Doryland, C. J. T., "The Influence of Energy Material upon the Relation of Soil Micro-organisms to Soluble Plant Food," *N. Dakota Agric. Expt. Sta. Bull.*, 116, 1916 133
86. Drabble, E., and Drabble, H., "The Relation between the Osmotic Strength of Cell Sap in Plants and their Physical Environment," *Biochem. Jour.*, 1907, ii., 117-132 28
87. Duclaux, E., "Sur la germination dans un sol riche en matières organiques, mais exempt de microbes," *Compt. Rend.*, 1885, c., 66 18
88. Dumas and Boussingault, *Essai de statique chimique des êtres organisés*, Paris, 1841, 3rd edn., 1844 9, 14
89. Dumont, J., (a) "Les enduits de revêtement des particules terreuses," *Compt. Rend.*, 1909, cxlix., 1087-89 104
 (b) "Sur l'analyse minérologique des terres arables," *ibid.*, 1905, cxi., 1111-13 104
90. Dundonald, the Earl of, *A Treatise Showing the Intimate Connection that Subsists between Agriculture and Chemistry, etc.*, London, 1795 4
91. Dyer, Bernard, "On the Analytical Determination of Probably Available 'Mineral' Plant Food in Soils," *Trans. Chem. Soc.*, 1894, lxxv., 115-67 145, 219, 220
 "A Chemical Study of the Phosphoric Acid and Potash Contents of the Wheat Soils of Broadbalk Field, Rothamsted," *Phil. Trans.*, 1901, cxciv. B, 235-90 145
92. Dymond, T. S., Hughes, F., and Jupe, C. W. C., "The Influence of Sulphates as Manure upon the Yield and Feeding Value of Crops," *Journ. Agric. Sci.*, 1905, i., 217-29 48
93. Ehrenberg, P., (a) "Wirkungen des Zinks bei Vegetationsversuchen," *Landw. Versuchs-Stat.*, 1910, lxxiii., 15-142 50
 (b) "Die bakterielle Untersuchungen in ihrer Bedeutung für die Feststellung der Bodenfruchtbarkeit," *Landw. Jahrbuch*, 1904, xxxiii., 1-139 158, 159
94. Engberding, D., "Vergleichende Untersuchungen über die Bakterienzahl im ackerloden in ihnen abhängigkeit von ausseren Einflüssen," *Centr. Bakt. Par.*, Abt. II., 1909, xxiii., 569-642 166
95. Engels, O., "Die Wirkung einiger Lösungsmittel auf die im Boden enthaltenen Pflanzennährstoffe," *Landw. Versuchs-Stat.*, 1912, lxxvii., 269-304 145

96. Evelyn, J., *Terra, a Philosophical Discourse of Earth*, 1674 4
- 96a. Fabricius and von Feilitzen, "Ueber der Gehalt an Bakterien in jungfräulichem und cultiviertem Hochmoorboden auf dem Versuchsfelde des Schwedischen Moorkulturvereins bei Flahult," *Centr. Bakt. Par.*, Abt. II., 1905, xiv., 161 . . . 164
97. Failyer, G. H., Smith, J. G., and Wade, H. R., "The Mineral Composition of Soil Particles," *U.S. Dept. of Agric. Bureau of Soils Bull.*, No. 54, 1908 . . . 59
98. Fitting, Hans, "Die Wasserversorgung und die Osmotischen Druchverhältnisse der Wüstenpflanzen," *Zeitsch. für Botanik*, 1911, iii., 209-75 28
99. Fowler, G. J., *Bacteriological and Enzyme Chemistry*, London, 1911 135
100. Frank, B., "Ueber den Einfluss welchen das Sterilisiren des Erdbodens auf die Pflanzen-Entwicklung ausübt," *Ber. d. Deutsch. Bot. Ges.* (Generalversammlungs Heft), 1888, vi., lxxxvii.-xcviii. 170
101. Gans, R., "Die Charakterisierung des Bodens nach der molekularen zusammensetzung des durch Salzsäure zersetzlichen silikatischen Anteiles des Bodens," *Internat. Mitteil. Bodenkunde*, 1913, 3, 529-71 93
102. Gaunersdorfer, "Das Verhalten der Pflanze bei Vergiftungen speziell durch Lithiumsalze," *Landw. Versuchs-Stat.*, 1887, xxxiv., 171-206 45
103. Gayon, U., and Dupetit, G., "Sur la fermentation des nitrates," *Compt. Rend.*, 1882, xcv., 644-46 132
- "Sur la transformation des nitrates en nitrites," *ibid.*, 1365-67 132
- "Recherches sur la réduction des nitrates par les infiniment petits," *Mémoires de la Société des Sciences physiques et naturelles de Bordeaux*, 1886 (iii.), ii., 107 pp. in reprint 132
104. (a) Gerlach, M., and Erlwein, "Elektrokulturversuche," *Mitt. d. Kaiser-Wilhelm Institut. f. Landw. Bromberg*, 1909, ii., 424, 1912, iv., 354, 1913, v., 403 . . . 53
- (b) Gerlach, M., and Vogel, I., "Stickstoffsammelnde Bakterien," *Centr. Bakt. Par.*, Abt. II., 1902, viii., 669-74 124
- "Weitere Versuche mit Stickstoffbindenden Bakterien," *ibid.*, 1902, ix., 817-21; 1903, x., 636-43 124
- (c) Gerlach, M., "Untersuchungen über die Menge und Zusammensetzung der Sickerwasser," *Mitt. K. W. Inst. Landw. in Bromberg*, 1910, 3, 351-81 . . . 111
105. Gile, P. L., and Ageton, C. N., "The Effect of Strongly Calcareous Soils on the Growth and Ash Composition of Certain Plants," *Porto Rico Ag. Expt. Sta. Bull.* 16, 1914 185
- 105a. Gimingham, C. T., "The Scouring Lands of Somerset," *Journ. Bd. of Agric.*, 1910, xvii., 529-41; *Journ. Agric. Sci.*, 1914, 6, 328-36 72, 195
106. Girard, Aimé, "Recherches sur l'augmentation des Récoltes par l'injection dans le sol du sulfure de carbone à doses massives," *Bull. Soc. Nationale d'Agric.*, 1894, liv., 356 169
107. Glauber, Johann Rudolph, *Des Teutschlandts Wohlfart* (Erster Theil), *das dritte Capittel, De concentratione Vegetabilium*, 1656, *Miraculum Mundi*, 1656 . . . 2
- 107a. Glinka, K., *Die Typen der Bodenbildung*, 1914.
108. Gola, G., (a) "Saggio di una teoria osmotica dell' edafismo," *Annali di Bot.*, 1910, 8, 275-548 105
- (b) "Osservazioni sopra i liquidi circolanti nel terreno agrario," *Ann. d. R. Accad. Agric.*, Torino, 1911, 54, 37 pp. 105, 148
- (A good summary of these papers is given by Cavers in *Journ. Ecology*, 1914, 2, 209.)
109. Golding, John, "The Importance of the Removal of the Products of Growth in the Assimilation of Nitrogen by the Organisms of the Root Nodules of Leguminous Plants," *Journ. Agric. Sci.*, 1905, i., 59-64 130
- "The Nature of Nitrogen Fixation in the Root Nodules of Leguminous Plants," *Brit. Ass. Rpts.*, 1910 130
110. Goodey, T., (a) "A Contribution to our Knowledge of the Protozoa of the Soil," *Proc. Roy. Soc.*, 1911, 84 B, 165-80 176
- (b) "Investigations on Protozoa in Relation to the Factor Limiting Bacterial Activity in Soil," *ibid.*, 1915, 88 B, 437-56 176

- Page of text
on which
reference
is made.
- (c) "Further Observations on Protozoa in Relation to Soil Bacteria," *ibid.*, 1916, 89 B, 297-314 177
- (d) "Observations on the Cytology of Flagellates and Amœbæ obtained from Old Stored Soil," *Proc. Zoo. Soc.*, 1916, xxi., 309-32 176
111. Gottheil, O., "Botanische Beschreibung einiger Bodenbakterien," *Centr. Bakt. Par.*, Abt. II., 1901, vii., 430, etc. 137
112. Grandeau, M. L., "Recherches sur le rôle des matières organiques du sol dans les phénomènes de la nutrition des végétaux," *Compt. Rend.*, 1872, lxxiv., 988-91 (issued more fully as *Publication de la Station Agronomique de l'Est*, 1872) 10, 80
- Grandeau, M. L., *Chimie et Physiologie appliquées à l'Agriculture et le Sylviculture*, Paris, 1879 53
- Green, H. H., see Löhnis.
113. Greig-Smith, "The Bacteriotoxins and the Agricere of Soils," *Centr. Bakt. Par.*, Abt. II., 1911, xxx., 154-56 153
114. Gully, E., "Ueber die Beziehungen zwischen Vegetation, chemische Zusammensetzung, u. Düngerbedürfniss der Moore," *Mitt. der K. Bayer. Moorkulturanstalt*, 1909, 1-38 75, 78
- (A number of his peat analyses are collected in *Jahresbericht u. Agric. Chem.*, 1906, 9, 112.)
115. Guthrie, F. B., and Helms, R., "Pot Experiments to Determine the Limits of Endurance of Different Farm Crops for Certain Injurious Substances," *Agric. Gazette*, New South Wales, 1905, xvi., 853-60 52
116. Hales, Stephen, *Statical Essays, Containing I. Vegetable Staticks, etc.; II. Hæmastaticks, etc.*, London, 1731-33 3
117. Halket, A. C., "The Effect of Salt on the Growth of *Salicornia*," *Annals of Botany*, 1915, 29, 143-54 45
118. (a) Hall, A. D., and Plymen, F. J., "The Determination of Available Plant Food in Soils by the Use of Weak Acid Solvents," Part I., *Trans. Chem. Soc.*, 1902, lxxxi., 117-44. Part II., Hall, A. D., and Amos, A., *ibid.*, 1906, lxxxix., 205-22 90, 146
- (b) Hall, A. D., and Miller, N. H. J., "The Effects of Plant Growth and of Manures upon the Retention of Bases by the Soil," *Proc. Roy. Soc.*, 1905, lxxvii. B, 1-32 67, 149, 179
119. Hall, A. D., and Morison, C. G. T., (a) "On the Function of Silica in the Nutrition of Cereals," *Proc. Roy. Soc.*, 1906, lxxvii. B, 455-77 48
- (b) "The Flocculation of Turbid Liquids by Salts," *Journ. Agric. Sci.*, 1907, ii., 244-56 64
120. Hall, A. D., and Gimingham, C. T., "The Interaction of Ammonium Salts and the Constituents of the Soil," *Trans. Chem. Soc.*, 1907, xci., 677-87 89
121. Hall, A. D., "On the Accumulation of Fertility by Land Allowed to Run Wild," *Journ. Agric. Sci.*, 1905, i., 241-49 111
122. Hall, A. D., and Russell, E. J., (a) *Agriculture and Soils of Kent, Surrey, and Sussex*, 1911 (Board of Agriculture) 61, 194, 195, 203
- (b) "Soil Surveys and Soil Analysis," *Journ. Agric. Sci.*, 1911, iv., 181-223 199
- (c) Hall, A. D., Brenchley, W. E., and Underwood, L. M., "The Soil Solution and the Mineral Constituents of the Soil," *Phil. Trans.*, 1913, cciv., 179-200 105
123. Hardy, W. B., "A Preliminary Investigation of the Conditions which Determine the Stability of Irreversible Hydrosols," *Proc. Roy. Soc.*, 1899, lxi., 110-25. (See also "Electrolytes and Colloids, The Physical State of Gluten," Wood and Hardy, *ibid.*, 1903, lxxxix., 38-43) 63
124. Harris, J. E., "Soil Acidity," *Mich. Tech. Bull.* 19, 1914 94
125. Harrison, W. H., and Aiyer, S., "Gases of Swamp Rice Soils," *Pusa Mem. Chem. Series*, 1913, 3, 65-106, and 1914, 4, 1-17 134
126. Harrison, F. C., and Barlow, B., "The Nodule Organism of the Leguminosæ: its Isolation, Cultivation, Identification and Commercial Application," *Centr. Bakt. Par.*, Abt. II., 1907, xix., 264-72, 426-41 129, 131

127. Hart, E. B., and Peterson, W. H., "Sulphur Requirements of Farm Crops in Relation to the Soil and Air Supply," *Wisconsin Agric. Expt. Sta. Research Bull.*, No. 14, 1911 48
128. Heinrich, R., "Ueber das Vermögen der Pflanzen, den Boden an Wasser zu erschöpfen," *Jahresber. Agrik. Chem.*, 1875-76, xviii. and xix., Part I., 368-72 140
129. Hellriegel, H., (a) *Beiträge zu den naturwissenschaftlichen Grundlagen des Ackerbaues Braunschweig*, 1883 27, 28
(b) "Die Methode der Sandkulturen," *Arb. Deut. landw. Gesell.*, Heft 34, 1898.
130. (a) Hellriegel, H., and Wilfarth, H., Untersuchungen über die Stickstoffnahrung der Gramineen und Leguminosen," *Zeitsch. des Vereins f. d. Rübensucker-Industrie*, 1888 16, 33, 42
(b) Hellriegel, H., Wilfarth, H., Römer and Wimmer, "Vegetationsversuche über den Kalibedarf einiger Pflanzen," *Arb. Deut. landw. Gesell.*, 1898, 34 39, 40, 42, 45
131. Helmont, Johan Baptista van (1577-1644), *Opera omnia Complexionum atque misionum elementalium fgmentum* 2
132. Hendrick, J., and Ogg, W. G., "Studies of a Scottish Drift Soil: I. The Composition of the Soil and of the Mineral Particles which Compose it," *Journ. Agric. Sci.*, 1916, 7, 458-69 59, 61, 67
133. Hilgard, E. W., (a) *Soils: Their Formation, Properties, Composition and Relations to Climate and Plant Growth in the Humid and Arid Regions*, New York, 1906 77, 80
(b) "Die Böden arider und humider Länder," *Internat. Mitt. f. Bodenkunde*, 1911, 1, 415-29 77, 78, 80
134. Hiltner, L., "Ueber die Ursachen welche die Grösse, Zahl, Stellung und Wirkung der Wurzelknöllchen der Leguminosen bedingen," *Arb. Biol. Abt. für Land. u. Forstwirtschaft am d. Kais. Gesundh. Amt.*, 1900, i., 177-222 . 129
135. Hiltner, L., and Störmer, K., "Neue Untersuchungen über die Wurzel Knöllchen der Leguminosen und deren Erreger," *ibid.*, 1903, iii. 129, 131
136. Hiltner, L., and Störmer, K., "Studien über die Bakterienflora des Ackerbodens, mit besonderer Berücksichtigung ihres Verhaltens nach einer Behandlung mit Schwefelkohlenstoff und nach Brache," *ibid.*, 1903, iii., Heft 5 . . . 166, 170
137. Hiltner, L., "Ueber neue Ergebnisse und Probleme auf dem Gebiete der landwirtschaftlichen Bakteriologie," *Jahresber. Verein. für Angew. Bot.*, 1907, 200 170
138. Home, Francis, *The Principles of Agriculture and Vegetation*, 1756 4
139. Hopkins, C. G., *Soil Fertility and Permanent Agriculture*, 1910, Boston . . 198
140. Hutchinson, H. B., and Miller, N. H. J., (a) "Direct Assimilation of Ammonium Salts by Plants," *Journ. Agric. Sci.*, 1909, iii., 179-94 33
(b) "The Direct Assimilation of Inorganic and Organic Forms of Nitrogen by Higher Plants," *Centr. Bakt. Par.*, Abt. II., 1911, xxx., 513-47 . . . 33
(c) Hutchinson, H. B., and McLennan, K., "The Relative Effect of Lime as Oxide and Carbonate on Certain Soils," *Journ. Agric. Sci.*, 1914, vi., 302-22 . 179
(d) "Studies in the Lime Requirements of Certain Soils," *ibid.*, 1915, vii., 75-105 148, 149
141. Immendorff, H., "Beiträge zur Lösung der Stickstofffrage," *Landw. Jahrb.*, 1892, 21, 281-339 120
142. Ingen-Housz, Jan, *Experiments upon Vegetables, Discovering their Great Power of Purifying Common Air in the Sunshine, and of Injuring in the Shade and at Night*, London, 1779 6
"Essay on the Food of Plants and the Renovation of Soils," *Bd. of Agric. Rpts.*, London, 1796.
143. Javillier, M., "Le zinc chez les plantes et son emploi comme Engrais complémentaire," *Seventh Internat. Cong. Appl. Chem.*: Section 7, *Agric. Chem.*, 163-64, 1910 50
144. Jensen, C. A., "Seasonal Nitrification as Influenced by Crops and Tillage," *U.S. Dept. of Agric. Bur. of Plant Industry, Bull.* 173, 1910 168

- | | Page of text
on which
reference
is made. |
|---|---|
| 145 (a) Kearney, Thomas H., and Cameron, Frank K., "Some Mutual Relations between Alkali Soils and Vegetation," <i>U.S. Dept. of Agric. Rpt.</i> , 71, 1902 | 46 |
| (b) Kearney, Thomas H., and Harter, L. L., "The Comparative Tolerance of various Plants for the Salts Common in Alkali Soils," <i>Bull.</i> 113, <i>Bur. of Plant Industry, U.S. Dept. of Agric.</i> , 1907 | 46 |
| 146. Keen, B. A., "The Evaporation of Water from Soil," <i>Journ. Agric. Sci.</i> , 1914, 6, 456-75 | 99 |
| 147. Kidd, F., "The Controlling Influence of Carbon Dioxide in the Maturation, Dormancy and Germination of Seeds," <i>Proc. Roy. Soc.</i> , 1914, 87 B, 408-21, 609-25, and 1916, 89 B, 136-56 | 51 |
| 147a. King, F. H., <i>Annual Reports of the Wisconsin Experiment Station</i> , 6th Rpt., 1889, and onwards. <i>The Soil</i> , 1899 (Macmillan); <i>Physics of Agriculture</i> , Madison, U.S.A. | |
| 148. King, Walter E., and Doryland, Chas. J. T., "The Influence of Depth of Cultivation upon Soil Bacteria and their Activities," <i>Kansas Agric. Coll. Bull.</i> , 161, 1909 | 168 |
| 149. Kirwan, Richard, <i>The Manures most Advantageously Applicable to the Various Sorts of Soils and the Cause of their Beneficial Effects in Each Particular Instance</i> , fourth edition, London, 1796 | 4 |
| 150. Knop, <i>Lehrbuch der Agrikultur Chemie</i> , Leipzig, 1868. <i>Die Bonitierung der Ackererde</i> , 1871 | 88 |
| 151. (a) Koch, Alfred, "Untersuchungen über die Ursachen der Rebenmüdigkeit mit besonderer Berücksichtigung der Schwefelkohlenstoffbehandlung," <i>Arb. Deut. Landw. Gesell.</i> , 1899, Heft 40 | 126, 170 |
| (b) Koch, Alfred, Litzendorff, J., Krull, F., and Alves, A., "Die Stickstoffanreicherung des Bodens durch freilebende Bakterien und ihre Bedeutung für die Pflanzenernährung," <i>Journ. f. Landw.</i> , 1907, lv., 355-416 | 126, 127 |
| (c) Koch, Alfred, <i>Mitteilungen Deut. landw. Gesell.</i> , 1910, Stück 12 | 127, 133 |
| 152. Kopeloff, N., Lint, H. C., and Coleman, D. A., "A New Method for Counting Soil Protozoa, and a Comparison of Media for their Development," <i>Centr. Bakt. Par.</i> , 1916, 45, 230-44 | 177 |
| 153. König, Alfred, "Ueber das Absorptionsvermögen humoser Medien," <i>Landw. Jahr.</i> , 1882, xi., 1-56 | 86 |
| 154. Kossowitsch, P., (a) "Untersuchungen über die Frage, ob die Algen freien Stickstoff fixieren," <i>Botan. Ztg.</i> , 1894, lii., 1., 97-116 | 125 |
| (b) "Die Tschernozem," 1912: also in <i>Internat. Mitt. f. Bodenkunde</i> , 1911, 1, 199-354 | 189 |
| 155. Kraus, Gregor, <i>Boden und Klima auf kleinstem Raum</i> , Jena, 1911 | 186 |
| 156. Krüger, W., and Schneidewind, W., "Ursache und Bedeutung der Salpeterzersetzung im Boden," <i>Landw. Jahr.</i> , 1899, xxviii., 217-52 | 170 |
| 157. Krüger, W., "Ueber die Bedeutung der Nitrification für die Kulturpflanzen," <i>ibid.</i> , 1905, xxxiv., 761-82 | 32, 33 |
| 157a. Krzemieniewski, "Untersuchungen über <i>Azotobacter chroococcum</i> ," <i>Bull. Acad. Sci. Cracovie</i> , 1908, 929-1051. (Summarised in <i>Centr. Bakt. Par.</i> , Abt. II., 1909, xxiii., 161-173) | 125 |
| 157b. Lachmann, <i>Mitt. d. landw. Lehranstalt Poppelsdorf</i> , 1858, Vol. I. | 15, 17 |
| (Reprinted in <i>Zentr. Agrik. Chem.</i> , 1891, 20, 837.) | |
| 158. Lau, Erich, "Beiträge zur Kenntnis der Zusammensetzung der im Ackerboden befindlichen Luft," <i>Inaugural-Dissertation</i> , Rostock, 1906 | 142 |
| 159. Laurent, Emile, "Les microbes du sol. Recherches expérimentales sur leur utilité pour la croissance des végétaux supérieurs," <i>Bull. Acad. Roy., Belgique</i> , 1886, (3), ii., 128-43 | 18 |
| 160. Lawes, J. B., and Gilbert, J. H., "On Agricultural Chemistry," <i>Journ. Roy. Agric. Soc.</i> , 1847, viii., 226-60 | 12, 38 |
| 161. Lawes, J. B., and Gilbert, J. H., "On Agricultural Chemistry, Especially in Relation to the Mineral Theory of Baron Liebig," <i>ibid.</i> , 1851, xii., 1-40 | 12 |
| 162. Lawes, J. B., and Gilbert, J. H., "On Some Points Connected with Agricultural Chemistry," <i>ibid.</i> , 1855, xvi., 411-502 | 12 |

- Page of text
on which
reference
is made.
163. Lawes, J. B., "Experimental Investigation into the Amount of Water given off by Plants during their Growth," *Journ. Hort. Soc.*, 1850, v., 38-64 . . . 28
164. Lawes, J. B., Gilbert, J. H., and Pugh, E., "On the Source of the Nitrogen of Vegetation, with Special Reference to the Question whether Plants Assimilate Free or Uncombined Nitrogen," *Phil. Trans.*, 1861, cli., 431-577 (see also *Phil. Trans.*, 1889, clxxx., 1-107) . . . 11, 119
165. Lawes, J. B., and Gilbert, J. H., "The Sources of the Nitrogen of our Leguminous Crops," *Journ. Roy. Agric. Soc.*, Series 3, ii., 657-702 . . . 17
166. (a) Lawes, J. B., and Gilbert, J. H., "On the Composition of the Ash of Wheat Grain and Wheat Straw Grown at Rothamsted in Different Seasons and by Different Manures," *Trans. Chem. Soc.*, 1884, xlv., 305-407 . . . 85
- (b) Lawes, J. B., Gilbert, J. H., and Warington, R., "On the Amount and Composition of the Rain and Drainage Waters Collected at Rothamsted," *Journ. Roy. Ag. Soc.*, 1881, 42, 241 and 311; 1882, 43, 1. (*Roth. Mem.*, 5, No. 18). 111
- (Lawes and Gilbert's papers are collected in ten volumes of *Rothamsted Memoirs*, and the general results of their experiments are summarised by Hall in *The Book of the Rothamsted Experiments*.)
167. Leather, J. W., (a) "Water Requirements of Crops in India," Part I., *Memoirs Dept. of Agric. India, Chemical Series*, 1910, i., 133-84 (No. 8); Part II., *ibid.*, 1911, i., 205-81 (No. 10) . . . 28, 138
- (b) "Records of Drainage in India," *ibid.*, 1912, ii., 63-140 . . . 168, 181
168. Lebedeff, A. J., "Ueber die Bildung des Stickoxyds bei dem durch Bac. Hartlebi eingeleiteten Denitrifikationsprozess," *Ber. Deut. Bot. Ges.*, 1911, xxix., 327-29 . 131
169. Lefèvre, Jules, "Sur le développement des plantes vertes à la lumière, en l'absence complète de gaz carbonique, dans un sol artificiel contenant amides," *Compt. Rend.*, 1905, clxi., 211-13 . . . 10
170. Lemmermann, O., Fischer, H., Kappen, H., and Blanck, K., "Bakteriologisch-chemische Untersuchungen," *Land. Jahrb.*, 1909, xxxviii., 339 . . . 133
171. Lemström, S., *Electricity in Agriculture and Horticulture*, London, 1904 . . . 53
172. Lesage, Pierre, *Compt. Rend.*, 1913, clvii., 784-87 . . . 53
- Lewin—See Martin.
173. Liebig, Justus, (a) *Chemistry in Its Application to Agriculture and Physiology*, 1st and 2nd editions (1840 and 1841), 3rd and 4th editions (1843 and 1847) . . . 10
- (b) *Familiar Letters on Chemistry*, 3rd edition, 1851 . . . 12
174. Liebig, Justus, *Principles of Agricultural Chemistry with Special Reference to the Late Researches Made in England*, 1855 . . . 15
175. Liebig, Justus, *Natural Laws of Husbandry*, 1863 . . . 88
176. Lipman, J. G., and Brown, Percy E., "Experiments on Ammonia and Nitrate Formation in Soils," *Centr. Bakt. Par.*, Abt. II., 1910, xxvi., 590-632 . . . 159
177. Lipman, J. G., Brown, Percy E., and Owen, Irving L., "The Availability of Nitrogenous Materials as Measured by Ammonification," *ibid.*, Abt. II., 1912, xxxi., 49-85. (See also *New Jersey Agric. Expt. Stat. Repts.*) . . . 159
178. Livingstone, Burton Edward, *The Relation of Desert Plants to Soil Moisture and Evaporation*, Carnegie Institution of Washington, No. 50, 1906 . . . 28
- "The Relation of the Osmotic Pressure of the Cell Sap in Plants to Arid Habitats," *Plant World*, 1911, xvi., 153-64 . . . 28
179. Livingstone, Burton Edward, Jensen, Breazeale, Pember, and Skinner, "Further Studies on the Properties of Unproductive Soils," *U.S. Dept. of Agric. Bureau of Soils, Bull.* 36, 1907 . . . 153
180. Loew, Oscar, "Ueber die physiologischen Functionen der Calcium und Magnesium salze im Pflanzenorganismus," *Flora*, 1892, lxxv., 368-94. (A complete list of Loew's papers on this subject is given in *Münch. med. Woch.*, 1910, No. 49) . 47
181. Loew, Oscar, "The Physiological Rôle of Mineral Nutrients," *Bull.* 18, *Div. Veg. Phys. and Path. U.S. Dept. Agric.*, 1899 . . . 42
182. Loew, Oscar, (a) "On the Treatment of Crops by Stimulating Compounds," *Bull. Coll. Agric.*, Tokyo, 1904, vi., No. 2, 161-75 . . . 48
- (b) "Bildung von Salpetrigsäure und Ammoniak aus freien Stickstoff," *Ber.*, 1890, xxiii., 1443 . . . 136
- (c) "Flora," 1911, cii., 96-112 . . . 47

- Page of text
on which
reference
is made.
183. (a) Löhnis, F., "Ueber Nitrifikation und Denitrifikation in der Ackererde," *Centr. Bakt. Par.*, Abt. II., 1904, xiii., 706-15 118
 (b) Löhnis and Parr, "Zur Methodik der bakteriologischen Bodenuntersuchung," *ibid.*, 1904, xii., 262-67; 1905, xiv., 1-9; 1907, xvii., 518-28 159
 (c) Löhnis, F., *Handbuch der landwirtschaftlichen Bakteriologie*, 1910, Berlin 158
 (d) Löhnis, F., and Pillai, N. K., "Ueber stickstofffixierende Bakterien," III., *ibid.*, 1908, xx., 781-99 124
 (e) Löhnis, F., and Sabaschnikoff, A., "Ueber die Zersetzung von Kalkstickstoff und Stickstoffkalk," *ibid.*, 1908, xx., 322-332. (See also Löhnis, "Verlesungen über Landw. Bakteriologie," 1913) 168
 (f) Löhnis, F., "Untersuchungen über den Verlauf der Stickstoffumsetzungen in der Ackererde," *Mitt. d. Landw. Instit. Univ. Leipzig*, 1905, 1-103. (Summary in *Centr. Bakt. Par.*, 1905, 15, 361-65, and 420-35.) (See also Green, *Centr. Bakt. Par.*, 1914, 41, 577-608) 158
 (g) Löhnis, F., and Green, H. H., "Methods in Soil Bacteriology," *Centr. Bakt. Par.*, 1914, 40, 457-79 158
184. Lucanus, Benno, "Versuche über die Erziehung einiger Landpflanzen in wässriger Lösung," *Landw. Versuchs-Stat.*, 1865, vii., 363-71 45
185. Lyon, T. Lyttleton, and Bizzell, James A., "The Relation of Certain Non-Leguminous Plants to the Nitrate Content of Soils," *Journ. Franklin Instit.*, Jan., 1911 180
186. Maassen, Albert, "Die Zersetzung der Nitrate und der Nitrite durch die Bakterien (Ein Beitrag zum Kreislauf des Stickstoffs in der Natur)," *Arb. Kais. Ges. Amt.*, 1901, xviii., 21-77 131
- 187 (a) McBeth, I. G., and Smith, N. R., "The Influence of Irrigation and Crop Production on Soil Nitrification," *Centr. Bakt. Par.*, 1914, 40, 24-51 182
 (b) McBeth, I. G., "Studies on the Decomposition of Cellulose in Soils," *Soil Science*, 1916, 1, 437-87 108
188. McCaughey, W. G., and William, H. F., "The Microscopic Determination of Soil-Forming Minerals," *U.S. Dept. of Agric. Bur. of Soils, Bull.* 91, 1913 59
189. Maillard, L. C., (a) "Action des acides aminés sur les sucres: formation des melanoidines par voie méthodique," *Compt. Rend.*, 1912, 154, 66-68 79
 (b) "Formation d'humus et de combustibles minéraux sans intervention de l'oxygène atmosphérique, des micro-organismes, des hautes températures, ou des fortes pressions," *ibid.*, 1912, 155, 1554-56 79
 (c) "Formation de matières humiques par action de polypeptides sur les sucres," *ibid.*, 1913, 156, 1159-60 79
190. Marchal, Emile, "Sur la production de l'Ammoniaque dans le sol par les microbes," *Bull. Acad. Roy. Belgique*, 1893, (3), xxv., 727-71 115
191. Martin, C. H., and Lewin, K. R., (a) "Some Notes on Soil Protozoa," *Phil. Trans.*, 1914, ccv. B, 77-94 176, 179
 (b) "Notes on some Methods for the Examination of Soil Protozoa," *Journ. Ag. Sci.*, 1915, 7, 106-19 176, 179
192. Maschhaupt, J. G., "Reactieverandering van den bodem ten gevolge van plantengroei en bemesting," *Verslag. Landb. Onderzoek. Rijkslandbouwproefstat.*, 1911, 10, 50-93 (Abs. in *Expt. Sta. Record*, 1912, 27, 124) 179
193. Matthaei, Gabrielle, L. C., "Experimental Researches on Vegetable Assimilation and Respiration, III. On the Effect of Temperature on Carbon Dioxide Assimilation," *Phil. Trans.*, 1905, cxcvii. B, 47-105 20
194. Mayer, Ad., "Bleisand und Ortstein," *Landw. Versuchs-Stat.*, 1903, 58, 161-92 97
195. Mayow, John, *Tractatus quinque medico physici*, 1674 [*Alembic Club Reprint*, Edinburgh, 1907] 2
196. Mazé, P., "L'assimilation de l'azote nitrique et de l'azote ammoniacal par les végétaux supérieurs," *Compt. Rend.*, 1898, cxxvii., 1031-33 32, 33
197. Mazé, P., "Recherches sur l'influence de l'azote nitrique et de l'azote ammoniacal sur le développement du maïs," *Ann. Inst. Pasteur*, 1900, xiv., 26 32, 33
198. Meusel, E., "De la putréfaction produite par les bactéries en présence des nitrates alcalins," *Compt. Rend.*, 1875, lxxxi., 533-34 131

	Page of text on which reference is made.
199. Michelet, E., and Sebelien, J., "Einige analysen natürlicher Humuskörper," <i>Chem. Zeit.</i> , 1906, 356 (also in <i>Fahresber. Agrik. Chem.</i> , 1906, 110)	75
200. Miller, N. H. J., (a) "Nitrogen and Carbon in Clays and Marls," <i>Quart. Journ. Geol. Soc.</i> , 1903, lix., 133-40	70
(b) "The Amount and Composition of the Drainage through Unmanured and Uncropped Land," Barnfield, Rothamsted, <i>Journ. Agric. Sci.</i> , 1906, i., 377-99	110
201. Mitscherlich, E. A., (a) "Das Gesetz des Minimums und das Gesetz des abnehmenden Bodenertrages," <i>Landw. Jahrb.</i> , 1909, xxxviii., 537-52	23
(b) "Ueber das Gesetz des Minimums und die sich aus diesem ergebenden Schlussfolgerungen," <i>Landw. Versuchs-Stat.</i> , lxxv., 1911, 231-63, also 1912, lxxviii., 127-30	23, 25
(c) "Eine chemische Bodenanalyse für pflanzenphysiologische Forschungen," <i>Landw. Jahrb.</i> , 1907, xxxvi., 309-69	145
(d) "Ein Beitrag zur Bestimmung der Hygroskopizität und zur Bewertung der physikalischen Bodenanalyse," <i>Internat. Mitt. f. Bodenkunde</i> , 1912, 1, 463-80	102
202. Molisch, H., <i>Das Warmbad als Mittel zum Treiben der Pflanzen</i> , 1909, Prague	53
203. Morison, C. G. T., and Sothers, D. B., "The Solution and Precipitation of Iron in the Formation of Iron Pan," <i>Journ. Ag. Sci.</i> , 1914, 6, 84-96	97, 98
204. Mulder, G. J., (a) <i>The Chemistry of Vegetable and Animal Physiology</i> , trans. by Fromberg, 1849; (b) <i>Die chemie der Ackerkrume</i> , übers. von F. Müller, 1863	70, 78
205. Müller, P. E., <i>Studien über die natürlichen Humusformen</i> , 1887, Berlin (Julius Springer)	76
206. Müntz, A., "Sur la décomposition des engrais organiques dans le sol," <i>Compt. Rend.</i> , 1890, cx., 1206-9	115
207. Müntz, A., and Coudon, H., "La fermentation ammoniacale de la terre," <i>ibid.</i> , 1893, cxvi., 395-98	115
208. Müntz, A., and Lainé, E., "Rôle de la matière organique dans la nitrification," <i>ibid.</i> , 1906, cxlii., 430-35	118
"Recherches sur la nitrification intensive et l'établissement des nitrières à hauts rendements," <i>Ann. Inst. Nat. Agronomique</i> , 1907 (ii.), vi.	
209. Müntz, A., and Lainé, E., "Études sur les eaux d'égout," <i>ibid.</i> , 1911, xx., 5-48	121
209a. Müntz, A., and Gaudechon, H., "Le reveil de la Terre," <i>Compt. Rend.</i> , 1912, cliv., 163-68	168
210. Nagaoka, M., "On the Stimulating Action of Manganese upon Rice," <i>Bull. Coll. Agric.</i> , Tokyo, 1903, iv., 467-72; 1904, vi., No. 2, 134-36	48
211. Nagaoka, M., "Effect of Nitrate of Soda on Paddy Soils," <i>ibid.</i> , vi., No. 3	132
212. Neubauer, Hugo, "Ein vereinfachtes Verfahren zur Bestimmung von Phosphorsäure, Kalium, Natrium, Calcium und Magnesium in salzsauren Bodenaus-zügen," <i>Landw. Versuchs-Stat.</i> , 1905, lxiii., 141-49	219
213. Neumann, P., "Untersuchungen über das Vorkommen von stickstoffas-similierenden Bakterien in Ackerboden," <i>ibid.</i> , 1901, lvi., 203	129
214. Niklewski, Bronislaw, "Ueber den Austritt von Calcium und Magnesium-ionen aus der Pflanzenzelle," <i>Ber. deut. bot. Ges.</i> , 1911, xxvii., 224-27	46
215. Nobbe, F., Schröder, J., and Erdmann, R., "Ueber die organische Leistung des Kalium in der Pflanze," <i>Landw. Versuchs-Stat.</i> , 1870, xlii., 321-423	43
216. Nobbe, F., and Hiltner, L., "Wodurch werden die knöllchenbesitzenden Legu-minosen befähigt, den freien atmosphärischen Stickstoff für sich zu verwerten," <i>ibid.</i> , 1893, xlii., 459-78	129
217. Nobbe, F., and Hiltner, L., (a) "Versuche über die Biologie der Knöllchenbakterien der Leguminosen, insbesondere über die Frage der Arteinheit derselben," <i>ibid.</i> , 1895, xlv., 1-27	131
(b) Nobbe, F., and Hiltner, L., "Ueber die Anpassungsfähigkeit der Knöllchen-bakterien ungleichen Ursprungs an verschiedenen Leguminosengattungen," <i>ibid.</i> , 1896, xlvii., 257-68	131
218. Oberlin, <i>Bodenmüdigkeit und Schwefelkohlenstoff</i> , Mainz, 1894	169

- Page of text
on which
reference
is made.
219. Oden, Sven, (a) *Zur Kolloidchemie der Humusstoffe* *Kolloid Zeitschr.*, 1915, 14, 123-30 95
(b) "Eine neue Methode zur mechanischen Bodenanalyse," *Internat. Mitt. Bodenkunde*, 1915, v., 251-346 222
220. Omelianski, W., (a) "Ueber die Nitrifikation des organischen Stickstoffs," *Centr. Bakt. Par.*, Abt. II., 1899, v., 473-90 119
(b) "Ueber die Isolierung der Nitrifikationsmikroben aus dem Erdboden," *ibid.*, II., 1899, v., 537-49 116, 118
(c) "Kleinere Mitteilungen über Nitrifikationsmikroben," *ibid.*, II., 1902, ix., viii., 785-87 117
221. Osterhout, W. J. V., "Die Schutzwirkung des Natriums für Pflanzen," *Jahrb. wiss. Bot.*, 1908, xlv., 121-36 46
222. Palissy, Bernard, (a) *Recepte Véritable par laquelle tous les Hommes de la France pourront apprendre à multiplier et augmenter leurs Thrésors*, 1563; (b) *Un Traité de la Merne*, 1580; (c) *Discours admirables de la Nature des Eaux et Fontaines*, etc., 1580 I
- 222a. Parkinson, S. T., "A New Method of Forcing Plants," *Journ. South-Eastern Agric. Coll.*, 1909, xix., 245-57 54
223. Peterson, W. H., "Forms of Sulphur in Plant Materials and their Variation with the Soil Supply," *J. Amer. Chem. Soc.*, 1914, xxxvi., 1290-1300 48
224. (a) Pfeiffer, Th., Franke, E., Götze, C., and Thurmann, H., "Beiträge zur Frage über die bei der Fäulnis stickstoffhaltiger organischer Substanzen eintretenden Umsetzungen," *Landw. Versuchs-Stat.*, 1897, 48, 189-245 120
(b) Pfeiffer, Th., and Franke, E., "Beitrag zur Frage der Verwertung elementaren Stickstoff durch den Senf," *ibid.*, 1896, xlv., 117 (cf. also Lemmermann, *ibid.*, 1910, lxxiii., 422) 16, 170
(c) Pfeiffer, Th., and Blanck, E., "Der Einfluss einer Zuckergabe auf die Ertragsfähigkeit des Bodens," *ibid.*, 1912, lxxviii., 375-88 127
(d) Pfeiffer, Th., and Blanck, E., "Die Säureausscheidung der Wurzeln und die Löslichkeit der Bodenährstoffe in Kohlensäurehaltigen Wasser," *ibid.*, 1912, lxxvii., 217-68 144
(e) Pfeiffer, Th., Blanck, E., and Friske, K., "Der Einfluss verschiedener Vegetationsfaktoren, namentlich des Wassers, auf die Erzielung von Maximalerträgen in Vegetationsgefässen," *ibid.*, 1913, lxxxii., 237-98 24, 31, 145
(f) Pfeiffer, Th., Blanke, E., Simmermacher, W., and Rathmann, W., "Pflanzenanalyse und Bodenanalyse zur Bestimmung der Nährstoffgehaltes des Ackerbodens," *ibid.*, 1915, 86, 339-91.
225. Pickering, Spencer U., and the Duke of Bedford, *Reports of the Woburn Experimental Fruit Farm*, London; especially 3rd Report, 1903, 13th Report, 1911, and 14th Report, 1914 151
226. Pratolongo, U., *Staz. Sper. Agr. Ital.*, 1913, 46, 219-40 141
227. Prázmowski, Adam, "Die Wurzelknöllchen der Erbse," *Landw. Versuchs-Stat.*, 1890, xxxvii., 161-258, and 1891, xxxvii., 6-63 129
228. Prianischnikow, D., "Quantitative Bestimmung der im Boden vorhandenen absorptiv gebundenen Basen," *Landw. Vers.-Stat.*, 1913, 79-80, 667-80 88
229. Priestley, Joseph, *Experiments and Observations on Different Kinds of Air*, 1775, London 5
230. Priestley, J. H., "Electricity in Relation to Horticulture," *Journ. Roy. Hort. Soc.*, 1911, xxxvii., 15-25 53
Priestley, J. H., and Jørgensen, I., "The Distribution of the Overhead Electrical Discharge Employed in Recent Agricultural Experiments," *Journ. Agric. Sci.*, 1914, vi., 337-48 53
231. Pringsheim, Hans, "Die Bedeutung stickstoffbindender Bakterien," *Biol. Centr.*, 1911, xxxd., 65-81; see also *Centr. Bakt. Par.*, Abt. II., 1909, xxiii., 300-4 127
232. Rahn, O., "Die Zersetzung des Fettes," *Centr. Bakt. Par.*, Abt. II., 1906, xv., 52-61, 422-29 135
233. Ramann, E., (a) *Bodenkunde*, Berlin, 1911 105

- (b) "Über Mineralstoffaufnahme der Pflanzen aus dem Boden," *Landw. Versuchs-Stat.*, 1916, 88, 379-95 105
234. Raumer, von, and Kellermann, (a) "Ueber die Function des Calciums im Leben der Pflanze," *Landw. Versuchs-Stat.*, 1880, xxv., 25 45
- (b) Raumer, von, "Calcium und Magnesium in der Pflanze," *ibid.*, 1883, xxix., 253-80 45
235. *Recueil de mémoires et d'observations sur la formation et sur la fabrication du salpêtre par les commissaires nommés par l'académie pour le jugement du prix du salpêtre*, Paris, 1776 118
236. Reed, H. S., "The Value of Certain Nutritive Elements to the Plant Cell," *Annals of Botany*, 1907, xxi., 501-43 42, 44
237. (a) Remy, Th., "Bodenbakteriologische Studien," *Centr. Bakt. Par.*, Abt. II., 1902, viii., 657-62 158
- (b) Remy, Th., and Rösing, G., "Über die biologische Reizwirkung natürlicher Humusstoffe," *ibid.*, 1911, xxx., 349-84 125
238. Rice, Frank E., "Studies on Soils: I. Basic Exchange," *J. Physical Chem.*, 1916, 20, 214-27 95
- 238a. Richards, E. H., "The Fixation of Nitrogen in Fæces," *Journ. Ag. Sci.*, 1917, viii. 124
239. Rindall, A., "Ueber die chemische Natur der Humussäuren," *Internat. Mitt. f. Bodenkunde*, 1911, i., 67-80 95
240. Russell, E. J., (a) "Oxidation in Soils and Its Connection with Fertility," *Journ. Agric. Sci.*, 1905, i., 261-79 108
- (b) Russell, E. J., and Darbishire, F. V., "Oxidation in Soils and Its Relation to Productiveness, Part II. The Influence of Partial Sterilisation," *ibid.*, 1907, ii., 305-26 50, 171
- (c) Russell, E. J., and Hutchinson, H. B., "The Effect of Partial Sterilisation of Soil on the Production of Plant Food," *ibid.*, 1909, iii., 111-44; Part II., *ibid.*, 1913, v., 152-221 118, 136, 159, 165, 171
- (d) Russell, E. J., and Golding J., "Sickness in Soil: I. Sewage Sickness," *ibid.*, 1912, v., 27-47 111
- (e) Russell, E. J., and Petherbridge, F. R., "Sickness in Soil: II. Glass-house Soils," *ibid.*, 1912, v., 86-111; "Partial Sterilisation of Soil for Glass-house Work," *Journ. Bd. Agric.*, 1912, xviii., 809-26; 1913, xix., 809-27; 1914, xx., 147, 178
- (f) Russell, E. J., "The Nature and Amount of the Fluctuations in Nitrate Contents of Arable Soils," *Journ. Agric. Sci.*, 1914, vi., 18-57 180
- (g) Russell, E. J., and Appleyard, A., "The Composition of the Soil Atmosphere," *ibid.*, 1915, vii., 1-48; 1917, viii. 116, 142, 165
- (h) Russell, E. J., and Prescott, J. A., "The Reaction between Dilute Acids and the Phosphorus Compounds of the Soil," *ibid.*, 1916, 8, 65-110 90
- (i) Russell, E. J., and Richards, E. H., "The Changes taking Place during the Storage of Farmyard Manure," *ibid.*, 1917, viii.
241. Russell, E. J., "The Ammonia in Soils," *ibid.*, 1910, iii., 233-45 85, 116, 218
242. Russell, E. J., and Smith, Norman, "On the Question whether Nitrites or Nitrates are Produced by Non-bacterial Processes in the Soil," *ibid.*, 1905, i., 444-53 136
243. Saussure, Théodore de, *Recherches chimiques sur la Végétation*, 1804, Paris 6
244. Schloesing, Th., and Müntz, A., "Sur la nitrification par les ferments organisés," *Compt. Rend.*, 1877, lxxiv., 301-3; 1877, lxxv., 1018-20, and 1878, lxxvi., 892-95 15
245. Schloesing, Th., "Sur la nitrification de l'ammoniaque," *ibid.*, 1889, cix., 423-28 133
- 245b. Schloesing, Th., *ibid.*, 1874, 78, 1276-79, 1438-1442; 79, 376-380, 473-477.
246. Schloesing, Th., fils, "Sur l'atmosphère confinée dans le sol," *ibid.*, 1889, cix., 618-20, 673-76 142
247. Schloesing, fils, and Laurent, Em., "Recherches sur la fixation de l'azote libre par les plantes," *Ann. de l'Institut Pasteur*, 1892, vi., 65-115 18
248. Schneider, Ph., "Studien über die Stickstoffsammlung im Ackerboden," *Landw. Jahrb.*, 1906, xxxv., and the *Ergänzungsband*, iv., 63-83 126

- | | Page of text
on which
reference
is made. |
|---|---|
| 249. Schreiner, O., and Reed, H. S., "Certain Organic Constituents of Soil in Relation to Soil Fertility," <i>U.S. Dept. of Agric. Bur. of Soils, Bull. No. 47</i> , 1907 . | 152 |
| 250. Schreiner, O., and Shorey, E. C., "Chemical Nature of Soil Organic Matter," <i>ibid.</i> , <i>Bull. No. 74</i> , 1910 . | 79 |
| 251. Schreiner, O., and Lathrop, Elbert C., "Dihydroxystearic Acid in Good and Poor Soils," <i>Four. Amer. Chem. Soc.</i> , 1911, xxxiii., 1412-17 . | 153 |
| 252. Shreiner, O., and Skinner, J. J., "Nitrogenous Soil Constituents and their bearing on Soil Fertility," <i>U.S. Dept. of Agric. Bur. of Soils, Bull. 87</i> , 1912 . | 157 |
| 253. Schübeler, F. C., <i>Die Kulturpflanzen Norwegens</i> , Christiania, 1862 . | 26 |
| 254. Schübeler, Gustav, <i>Grundsätze der Agrikulturchemie in Näherer Beziehung auf Land- und Forstwirtschaftliche Gewerbe</i> , 1838, Liepsic . | 8, 10, 139 |
| 255. Schultz-Lupitz, (a) <i>Reinverträge auf leichtem Boden</i> , <i>Landw. Jahrb.</i> , 1881 . | 192 |
| (b) <i>Die Verbilligung der landwirtschaftlichen Production</i> , 1883 (Parey). | |
| (c) <i>Die Kalidüngung auf leichtem Boden</i> , Auf. 4, 1902, Berlin (Parey). | |
| 256. Seelhorst, C. von, and Tucker, M., "Der Einfluss, welchen der Wassergehalt und der Reichtum des Bodens auf die Ausbildung der Wurzeln und der oberirdischen Organe der Haferpflanze ausüben," <i>Journ. f. Landw.</i> , 1898, xlvii., 52-63 (see also Seelhorst and J. Wilms, <i>ibid.</i> , 413-26) . | 29, 36, 37 |
| 257. Seelhorst, C. von, "Ueber den Wasserverbrauch der Haferpflanze bei verschiedenem Wassergehalt und bei verschiedener Düngung des Bodens," <i>ibid.</i> , 1899, xlvii., 369-78 . | 29 |
| 258. Seelhorst, C. von, "Neuer Beitrag zur Frage des Einflusses des Wassergehaltes des Bodens auf die Entwicklung der Pflanzen," <i>ibid.</i> , 1900, 165-77 . | 29, 30 |
| 259. Seelhorst, C. von, Georgs, R., and Fahrenholtz, F., "Einfluss des Wassergehaltes und der Düngung des Bodens auf die Produktion und die Zusammensetzung von Futterpflanzen, italienisches Raigras und Klee," <i>ibid.</i> , 265-86 . | 29 |
| 260. Seelhorst, C. von, (a) "Die Bedeutung des Wassers im Leben der Kulturpflanzen," <i>ibid.</i> , 1911, 51-83 . | 29 |
| (Contains a summary of his work on this subject.) | |
| (b) "Die Wasserbilanz und die Nährstoffverluste eines gebrachten Lehm- und Sandbodens in den Jahren, 1905-12," <i>ibid.</i> , 1913, 61, 189-216 . | 29 |
| 261. Seelhorst, C. von, and Wilms, "Untersuchungen über Drainage-Wasser von Oberamtmann Creydt-Harste," <i>ibid.</i> , 1901, xlix., 251-75 . | 69, 111 |
| 262. Senebier, Jean, <i>Mémoires Physico-chymiques</i> , Geneva, 1782 . | 6 |
| 263. Sestini, Fausto, "Bildung von salpetriger Säure und Nitrifikation als chemischer Prozess im Kulturboden," <i>Landw. Versuchs-Stat.</i> , 1904, lx., 103-12 . | 136 |
| 264. Shutt, F. T., "Some Characteristics of the Western Prairie Soils of Canada," <i>Journ. Agri. Sci.</i> , 1910, iii., 335-57 . | 31, 111, 189 |
| 265. Sibertzev, "Genetic Classification of Soils," Tulaikoff, N.M., <i>Journ. Agri. Sci.</i> , 1908, 3, 80-85 . | 184 |
| 265a. Siemens, Charles William, "On the Influence of Electric Light upon Vegetation and on Certain Physical Principles Involved," <i>Proc. Roy. Soc.</i> , 1880, xxx., 210-19, 293-95 . | 26 |
| 266. Sigmund, Wilhelm, "Ueber die Einwirkung chemischer Agentien auf die Keimung," <i>Landw. Versuchs-Stat.</i> , 1896, xlvii., 1-58 . | 52 |
| 267. Snyder, Harry, (a) <i>The Chemistry of Soils and Fertilisers</i> , Easton, Pa., 1899 . | 78 |
| (b) "Loss of Nitrogen by Continuous Wheat Cropping," <i>Minnesota Bull.</i> 53, 1897 . | 111 |
| 268. Söhngen, N. L., "Einfluss von Kolloiden auf microbiologische Prozesse," <i>Centr. Bakt. Par.</i> , 1913, 38, 621-47 . | 148 |
| 269. Sostegni, "Einige Untersuchungen über die aus Torf gewonnenen Humuskörper," <i>Landw. Versuchs-Stat.</i> , 1886, xxxii., 9 . | 78 |
| 270. Sprengel, Carl, "Ueber Pflanzenhumus, Humussäure und humussäure Salze," <i>Kastner Archiv für die gesamte Naturlehre</i> , Nürnberg, 1826 . | 70 |
| Sprengel, Carl, <i>Chemie für Landwirthe, Forstmänner und Cameralisten</i> , Göttingen, 1832 . | 10 |

271. Stevens, F. L., and Withers, W. A., "Ammonification in Soils and in Solutions," *Rept. Div. Biol. North Carolina Expt. Stn.*, 1909, xxxii., 119-28 . . . 159
272. Stevens, F. L., and Withers, W. A., "The Inhibition of Nitrification by Organic Matter Compared in Soils and in Solutions," *Centr. Bakt. Par.*, Abt. II., 1910, xxvii., 169-86 . . . 118
273. (a) Stoklasa, Julius, and Ernest, Adolf, "Ueber den Ursprung, die Menge, und die Bedeutung des Kohlendioxyds im Boden," *Centr. Bakt. Par.*, II., 1905, xiv., 723-36 . . . 108, 125, 164
(b) Stoklasa, Julius, "Methoden zur Bestimmung der Atmungsintensität der Bakterien im Boden," *Ztschr. Landw. Versuchsw. Österr.*, 1911, 14, 1243-79.
274. Stoklasa, Julius, and Ernest, Adolf, "Treten Stickstoffverluste im Boden ein bei Düngung mit Chilisalpeter," *ibid.*, 1907, xvii., 27-33 . . . 132
275. Stoklasa, Julius, and Ernest, Adolf, "Die chemische Charakter der Wurzelabscheidungen verschiedenartiger Kulturpflanzen," *Jahrb. wiss. Bot.*, 1908, xlii., 52-102 . . . 144
276. (a) Stoklasa, Julius; Ernest, Adolf; Straňák, Franz; and Vitek, Eugen, "Beitrag zur Kenntnis der chemischen Vorgänge bei der Assimilation des elementaren Stickstoff durch Azotobacter und Radiobacter," *Centr. Bakt. Par.*, Abt. II., 1908, xxi., 484-509 and 620-32 . . . 44, 124
(b) Stoklasa, J., *Biochem. Zeitsch.*, 1916, 73, 107-60.
277. Stutzer, A., "Die Bildung von Bakteroiden in Künstlichen Nährböden," *Mitt. Landw. Institute Breslau*, 1900, p. 57, and *Centr. Bakt. Par.*, II., 1901, vii., 897-912 . . . 129
278. (a) Suzuki, Shigehiro, and Aso, K., "On the Physiological Action of Iodine and Fluorine Compounds on Agricultural Plants," *Bull. Coll. Agric.*, Tokyo, 1903, v., No. 4, 473-80 . . . 48
(b) Suzuki, Shigehiro, "Ueber die Entstehung der Stickoxyde im Denitrifikationsprozess," *Centr. Bakt. Par.*, Abt. II., 1911, xxxi., 27-49 . . . 131
279. (a) Tacke, Br., *Jahresber. Agrik. Chem.*, 1904, 7, 88-93 . . . 75
(b) Tacke, Br., and Süchting, H., "Ueber Humussäuren," *Landw. Jahrb.*, 1911, 41, 717-54 . . . 75
(c) Tacke, Br., Densch, A., and Arnd, Th., "Ueber Humussäuren," *ibid.*, 1913, 45, 195-265 . . . 75
280. Tansley, A. G. (and the members of the Central Committee for the Survey and Study of British Vegetation), *Types of British Vegetation*, Cambridge, 1911 . . . 74
281. Tenant, Smithson, "On Different Sorts of Lime Used in Agriculture," *Phil. Trans.*, 1799, 305-14 . . . 52
282. Thiele, R., "Die Verarbeitung des Atmosphärischen Stickstoffs durch Mikroorganismen," *Landw. Versuchs-Stat.*, 1905, lxxiii., 161-238 . . . 128, 143
283. Thompson, H. S., "On the Absorbent Power of Soils," *Journ. Roy. Agric. Soc.*, 1850, xi., 68-74 . . . 84
284. Toulaiokoff, N., "The Transpiration Coefficients of Cultivated Plants," *Journ. Optnoi Agronomii*, 1915, 16, 36-37: Abs. in *Bull. Int. Inst. Rome*, 1915, 6, 813 . . . 29
285. Truog, E., "The Cause and Nature of Soil Acidity with special regard to Colloids and Absorption," *Journ. Phys. Chem.*, 1916, 20, 457-84 . . . 95
286. Tull, Jethro, *The Horse Hoeing Industry*, 1730, London . . . 3
287. Ville, Georges, (a) *On Artificial Manures, Their Chemical Selection and Scientific Application to Agriculture*, trans. by W. Crookes, London, 1879 . . . 13
(b) *Recherches expérimentales sur la Végétation*, 1853 and 1857 . . . 119
288. Voelcker, A., (a) "On the Chemical Properties of Soils," *Journ. Roy. Agric. Soc.*, 1860, xxi., 105-34 . . . 85
(b) "On the Absorption of Potash by Soils of Known Composition," *ibid.*, 1864, xxv., 333-52 . . . 85
289. Voelcker, A., "On the Productive Power of Soils in Relation to the Loss of Plant Food by Drainage," *Trans. Chem. Soc.*, 1871, xxiv., 276-97 . . . 69

A SELECTED BIBLIOGRAPHY

239

	Page of text on which reference is made.
290. Voelcker, J. A., "The Woburn Field and Pot Culture Experiments," <i>Annual Reports in the Journ. Roy. Agric. Soc.</i>	45, 47, 48, 49, 52
291. Wagner, P., "Die geringe Ausnutzung des Stallmiststickstoffs und ihre Ursachen," <i>Deut. Landw. Presse</i> , 1895, 92, 98	132
292. Waksman, Selman A., (a) "Bacterial Numbers in Soils at Different Depths, and in Different Seasons of the Year," <i>Soil Science</i> , 1916, 1, 363-80	168
(b) "Studies on Soil Protozoa," <i>ibid.</i> , 1916, 1, 135-52	177
293. Wallerius, Johan Gotschalk, <i>Agriculturæ Fundamenta Chemica: Akerbrukets Chemiska Grunder</i> , 1761, Upsala	3, 4
294. Ward, Marshall, "On the Tubercular Swellings on the Roots of <i>Vicia Faba</i> ," <i>Phil. Trans.</i> , 1887, clxxviii., 539-62	129
295. Warington, R., "On the Amount and Composition of the Rain and Drainage Waters collected at Rothamsted," <i>Journ. Roy. Agric. Soc.</i> , 1881, xlii., 241, 311, and 1882, xliii., 1	16
296. Warington, R., "On Nitrification," Part I., <i>Journ. Chem. Soc.</i> , 1878, xxxiii., 44-51; Part II., <i>ibid.</i> , 1879, xxxv., 429-56; Part III., <i>ibid.</i> , 1884, xlv., 637-72; Part IV., <i>ibid.</i> , 1891, lix., 484-529	16, 117, 118
297. Warington, R., "Denitrification and Farmyard Manure," <i>Journ. Roy. Agric. Soc.</i> , 1897, viii., 577-607	132
298. Way, J. T., "On the Power of Soils to Absorb Manure," <i>Journ. Roy. Agric. Soc.</i> , 1850, xi., 313-79; <i>ibid.</i> , 1852, xiii., 123-43	85, 86
299. Weber, C. A., "Die wichtigsten Humus- und Torfarten und ihre Beteiligung an dem Aufbau norddeutscher Moore," <i>Festschrift zur Feier des 25-jährigen Bestehens des Vereins zur Förderung der Moor-Kultur im Deutschen Reich</i> , Berlin, 1908	74
300. Weinhold, A., "Einwirkung von Ammoniaksalzen auf Boden," <i>Landw. Versuchs-Stat.</i> , 1863, v., 308-17	89
300a. Weir, W., "The Effect of Removing the Soluble Humus from a Soil on its Productiveness," <i>Journ. Ag. Sci.</i> , 1915, 7, 246-53	80
301. Weis, Fr., "Ueber Vorkommen und Bildung der Salpetersäure in Wald und Heideboden," <i>Centr. Bakt. Par.</i> , Abt. II., 1910, xxviii., 434-60	81
302. Westermann, "Untersuchung von typischen dänischen Böden," 1902, abstract in <i>Bied. Zent. Agric. Chem.</i> , 1903, xxxii., 155	78
303. Wheeler, H. J., <i>Rhode Is. Expt. Sta., Third Ann. Rpt.</i> , 1891, p. 53; <i>Fourth Report, et seq.</i>	96
304. Whitney, M., "Some Physical Properties of Soils in their Relation to Moisture and Crop Distribution," <i>U.S. Weather Bureau, Bull.</i> 4, 1892	104
305. Whitney, M., and Cameron, F., (a) "The Chemistry of the Soil as Related to Crop Production," <i>U.S. Dept. Agric. Bureau of Soils, Bull.</i> 22, 1903 68, 104, 153 (b) "Investigations in Soil Fertility," <i>ibid.</i> , <i>Bull.</i> 23, 1904	104
306. Whitney, M., "Soil Fertility," <i>ibid.</i> , <i>Farmers' Bull.</i> , No. 257	104, 153
307. Whitson, A. R., and Stoddart, C. W., "The Conservation of Phosphates on Wisconsin Farms," <i>Univ. of Wisconsin, Bull.</i> 174, 1909; see also <i>Bulls.</i> 202, 204 and 205, all 1911	198
307a. Wiegner, Georg, "Zum Basenaustausch in der Ackererde," <i>Journ. f. Landw.</i> , 1912, lx., 110-150; 197-222	89
308. Wilfarth, "Ueber den Nährstoffverbrauch der Zuckerrübe und die Beziehungen desselben zur Wasseraufnahme," <i>Bied. Zent. Agric. Chem.</i> , 1905, xxxiv., 167-69	30
309. Wille, N., "Ueber die Schubelerschen Anschauungen in Betreff der Veränderung der Pflanzen in nördlichen Breiten," <i>Résultats scientifiques du Congrès international de Botanique</i> , Vienna, 1905, 389-400	26
310. Willstätter, Richard, and Benz, Max, "Untersuchungen über Chlorophyll, vi., Ueber krystallisiertes Chlorophyll," <i>Liebig's Annalen</i> , 1908, cccclviii., 267-87	47
311. Winogradsky, S., "Recherches sur les organismes de la nitrification," <i>Ann. de l'Inst. Pasteur</i> , 1890, iv., 1 ^{re} Memoire, 213-31; 2 ^{de} Memoire, 257-75; 3 ^e Memoire, 760-71	16, 117

	Page of text on which reference is made.
312. Winogradsky, S., and Omelianski, "Ueber den Einfluss der organischen Substanz auf die Arbeit der nitrifizierenden Mikroben," <i>Centr. Bakt. Par.</i> , II., 1899, v., 329, 429	117
313. Winogradsky, S., "Recherches sur l'assimilation de l'azote libre de l'atmosphère par les microbes," <i>Archives des Sci. Biol.</i> , St. Petersburg, 1895, iii., 297-352	122
314. Winogradsky, S., "Clostridium Pastorianum, seine Morphologie und seine Eigenschaften als Buttersäure ferment," <i>Centr. Bakt. Par.</i> , II., 1902, ix., 43-54, 107-12	123
314a. Withers, W. A., and Fraps, <i>Amer. Chem. Soc.</i> , 1901, xxiii., 318 and 1902, xxiv., 528	158
314b. Wojtkiewicz, <i>Centr. Bakt. Par.</i> , 1914, 42, 254-61	168
315. Wolff, E., and Kieutzhage, C., "Bedeutung der Kieselsäure für die Entwicklung der Haferpflanze nach Versuchen in Wasserkultur," <i>Landw. Versuchs-Stat.</i> , 1884, xxx., 161-97	48
316. Wollny, E., "Untersuchungen über den Kohlensäuregehalt der Bodenluft," <i>ibid.</i> , 1880, xxv., 373-91	142
317. Wollny, E., "Ueber die Thätigkeit mehrerer organismen in der Ackererde," <i>Bied. Zentr. Agric. Chem.</i> , 1884, xiii., 796-814	18, 107
318. Wollny, E., "Einfluss der Pflanzendecke und Beschattung auf die physikalische Eigenschaften und Fruchtbarkeit des Bodens," <i>ibid.</i> , 125-60	28
(See also various papers by Wollny and his students in his Journal <i>Forschungen auf dem gebiete der agricultur Physik</i> , 1878 et seq. Wollny summarised his work in 319.)	
319. Wollny, E., <i>Die Zersetzung der Organischen Stoffe</i> , 1897	78, 143
320. Wood, T. B., "The Available Potash and Phosphoric Acid in Soils," <i>Trans. Chem. Soc.</i> , 1896, lxix., 287	145
321. Wood, T. B., and Berry, R. A., "Soil Analysis as a Guide to the Manurial Treatment of Poor Pasture," <i>Jour. Agric. Sci.</i> , 1905, i., 114-21	145
322. Woronin, M., "Ueber die bei der Schwarzerle (<i>Alnus glutinosa</i>) und der gewöhnlichen Garten-Lupine (<i>Lupinus mutabilis</i>) auftretenden Wurzelanschwellungen," <i>Mémoires Acad. Sci.</i> , St. Petersburg, 1866, (7), x., No. 6	17
323. Zaleski, W., "Ueber die Rolle des Lichtes bei der Eiweissbildung in dem Pflanzen," <i>Ber. Deut. Bot. Ges.</i> , 1909, xxvii., 56-62	20

INDEX.

- Absorption** of substances by soil, 84 *et seq.*
Acidity in soil, 66, 93 *et seq.*, 148.
Acids, effect on plant growth, 49.
 — — — bacterial activity in soil, 149, 163.
 — dilute, action on soil, 90 *et seq.*, 145.
Actinomyces in soil, 108, 157.
Adsorption, 84 *et seq.*
Air in soil, composition of, 141, 166.
Algæ in soils, 125, 155.
Alkali soils, 51, 146.
Alkalis, supposed production by plants, 5.
 — necessary for plant growth, 9 *et seq.*
Alumina in soil, 60, 211.
Ammonia, formation of in soil, 115, 159.
 — assimilation by micro-organisms, 133.
 — by plants, 34.
Ammonifying power, 159.
Ammonium salts and soil, reaction between, 85, 89.
Arid soils, comparison with humid, 59, 78.
Arsenic compounds, effect on plant growth, 50.
 — — — *Azotobacter*, 51.
Artificial manures, 13.
Assimilation, effect of temperature on, 20.
Availability of organic manures, 112.
Azotobacter, 123.
 — as test for acidity, 149.

BACTERIA as makers of plant food, 18, 135, 157.
Bacterial activity and nitrate production, 164.
 — — — soil productiveness, 157.
 — numbers in soils, 160, 166, 172.
Black soils, properties of, 187.

Caesium salts and plant growth, 45.
Calcifuges, 185.
Calcium carbonate, amount necessary in soil, 209.
 — — effect in soil, 51, 66, 93, 148, 185.
 — — production in soil, 135, 179.
 — — rate of removal from soil, 67.
 — oxide. See *Lime*.
 — salts and plant growth, 45.
 — in soil, 212.
 — sulphate (see *gypsum*).
Carbon cycle in soil, 107.
 — dioxide, effect of variations on plant growth, 22, 32.
 — — effect on germination, 51.
 — source of, for plants, 6, 10.
Cardiganshire, damage done by lead mines, 50.
Carr, 74.

Cellulose, decomposition in soil, 108.
Chalk soils, 185.
Chlorides and plant growth, 48.
Chlorophyll a magnesium compound, 47.
Chlorosis, 52, 185.
Clay, composition of, 59 *et seq.*
 — properties of, 63.
 — effect in soil, 64.
 — soils, 190.
Climate and crops, 31.
 — a factor in determining soil type, 184.
 — — — soil fertility, 205.
Colloids, importance in soil, 83, 103, 148.
 — estimation of, 102.
 — influence of on biochemical changes in soil, 100, 148.
Composition of soil particles, 58 *et seq.*
Compound particles in soil, 102, 184.
Cooper-Hewitt mercury lamp and plant growth, 53.
Copper salts are plant poisons, 50.

DECOMPOSITION of organic matter in soil, 135, 156.
Denitrification, 131.
Desert plants, osmotic pressure of sap, 28.
Disease organisms in soil, 155.
Dominant constituents of fertilisers, 13.
Drainage water, composition of, 69, 86.
Dried soil and productiveness, 101, 173.

EARTH-WORMS, 76, 86, 156.
Eel-worms in soil, 155.
Efficiency values of plant nutrients, 24, 37.
Electric discharge and plant growth, 53.
Energy relationships of plants, 19.
Enzymes as catalysts in plants, 19.
Eremacausis, 15.

FALLOWING, effect on nitrates in soil, 180.
 — losses during, 84, 109 *et seq.*
Farmyard manure as fertiliser, 41, 147.
 — losses during storage, 120.
Fatting fields in Romney Marsh, 195.
Fen, 74, 188.
Fine silt, composition of, 61.
 — — properties of, 64.
 — — effect in soil, 191.
Fluorides and plant growth, 48.
Folding, 192.
Food supply, 32, 144.
 — — effect of on water requirements of plants, 36.
Fractions obtained during mechanical analysis, 58.

- Frost, effect on soil bacteria, 168.
 Frosts, late, 184.
 Fungi in soils, 157.
- GERMINATION, effect of salts on, 52.
 Green manuring, 134, 192.
 Gypsum, effect on plants, 51, 85.
 — — on soil, 85.
- HORMONES, 52.
 Hot water treatment for forcing plant, 53.
 Humus. See Organic matter in soil.
 — soils, 187.
 Hygroscopic coefficient, 141.
- INJURIOUS factors, effect of, 23, 49.
 Inoculation of soil with bacteria, 131.
 Iodides and plant growth, 48.
 Iron salts and plant growth, 47, 50.
 — compounds in soil, 211.
 Irrigation, 30.
- LAMZIEKTE, 195.
 Lead mines, damage done to vegetation by, 50.
 Leguminous crops, effect on soil, 114.
 — — nitrogen fixation, 16, 128.
 Light and plant growth, 25.
 Lime as sterilising agent, 179.
 — effect on soil, 179. See also Calcium carbonate.
 — requirement of soil, 218.
 Limiting factors, 23.
 Lithium salts and plant growth, 45.
 Loams, 193.
- MAGNESIAN limestone, effect as fertiliser, 52.
 Magnesium salts and plant growth, 47, 52.
 — — in soil, 85, 212.
 Manganese salts and plant growth, 47.
 — — — nodule organisms, 130.
 Marsh gas and paddy soils, 134.
 Mechanical analysis of soil, interpretation of, 203.
 — — — fractions obtained during, 58.
 — — — methods, 220.
- Melanoids, 79.
 Methods of investigation, correlation, 63, 71.
 — — — statistical, 6, 8.
 Micro-organisms in soil, active and resting stage, 136, 154.
 — — — groups of, 155.
 — — — methods of investigation, 157.
- Mineral part of soil, 58.
 Minimum, law of, 11, 23.
 Mixed crops, 153.
 Moisture in soil, amounts of, 139.
 Molkenböden, 96.
 Moorland soils, 187.
 Mycorrhiza, 156.
- NEMATODES, free-living, 155.
 Nitrates and plant growth, 16, 33 *et seq.*
 — as plant food, 32.
 — formation in soil, 164. See also Nitrification.
 — — — effect of growing plant, 180.
 — in soil, 81, 109, 161 *et seq.*
 — — — alleged catalytic formation of, 135.
- Nitrates in soil, decomposition of, 131, 133.
 — — — removal of, 109.
 Nitrification, 15, 116 *et seq.*
 Nitrifying power, 158.
 Nitrogen cycle in soils, 109, 135.
 — fixing power, 160.
 — gaseous, supposed assimilation by plants, 16.
 — in soils, compounds present, 79, 81.
 — — — fixation of, 17, 113, 122, 128.
 — — — loss of, 109 *et seq.*, 119, 131, 197.
 — — — percentage present, 87, 110 *et seq.*, 208.
- Nitrogenous nutrients for plants, 8, 11, 12, 14, 16, 32, 156.
 Northern climates, plant growth in, 26, 27.
 Nutrient solution, effect of concentration on plant growth, 105.
 Nutrients wanted in small quantities only, 147 *et seq.*
- ORGANIC matter in soil, effect of, 71, 139, 204.
 — — — — effect on fertility, 73.
 — — — — fractionation of, 79.
 — — — — nature of, 69, 76, 79.
 — — — — properties of, 71, 77, 78.
- Oxidation in soil, 107.
 Oxygen supply, effect on seed and root, 25.
- PADDY soils, 134, 182.
 Pan formation, 76, 96, 192.
 Partial sterilisation of soil, 168 *et seq.*
 Peat, 74 *et seq.*, 187.
 Permutit, 89.
 Phosphates and plant growth, 24, 38, 214.
 — effect of bacteria on, 133.
 — effect on plants, 38.
 — in soil, 213.
 — — reaction with dilute acids, 90.
- Photosynthesis, 19.
 Physiological grouping of soil organisms, 158.
 Plant food, amount in soil, 144.
 — — available, 145.
 — — growth and various factors, 25 *et seq.*
 — — effect on soil organisms, 179.
 — — in relation to soil types, 193.
- Poisons, inorganic, effect on plant, 49 *et seq.*
 — organic, 152.
- Pore space, 140.
 Pot cultures, introduction of, 4.
 Potassium salts and plant growth, 40, 42, 96, 214.
 — — effect on plants, 43.
 — — in soil, 212.
- Potatoes, quality in, 195.
 Principle of vegetation, search for, 1.
 Protozoa in soil, 175 *et seq.*
 Putrefactive power (Remy), 159.
- RADIUM, effect on plant growth, 54.
 Rainfall and crops, effect, 31.
 — — — on soil, 111, 205.
 — — — on scheme of manuring, 213, 214.
- Rotation of crops, 3, 114, 150.
- SALTPETRE the principle of vegetation, 2.
 Sand, composition of, 59.
 — effect in soil, 65, 203.

